**Program Logic**

**IBM System/360 Operating System
FORTRAN IV (E)
Program Logic Manual
Program Number 360S-F0-092**

This publication describes the internal design of the IBM System/360 Operating System FORTRAN IV (E) compiler program. Program Logic Manuals are intended for use by IBM customer engineers involved in program maintenance, and by system programmers involved in altering the program design. Program logic information is not necessary for program operation and use; therefore, distribution of this manual is limited to persons with program maintenance or modification responsibilities.

Restricted Distribution

PREFACE

This manual is organized into three sections. Section 1 is an introduction and describes the overall structure of the compiler and its relationship to the operating system. Section 2 discusses the functions and logic of each phase of the compiler. Section 3 includes a series of flowcharts that show the relationship among the routines of each phase. Also provided in this section are phase routine directories.

Appendixes at the end of this publication provide information pertaining to: (1) source statement scan, (2) intermediate text formats, (3) table formats, (4) main storage allocation, etc.

Prerequisite to the use of this publication are:

IBM System/360 Operating System: Principles of Operation, Form A22-6821

IBM System/360 Operating System: FORTRAN IV (E) Language, Form C28-6513

IBM System/360 Operating System: Introduction to Control Program Logic, Program Logic Manual, Form Y28-6605

IBM System/360 Operating System: FORTRAN IV (E) Programmer's Guide, Form C28-6603 (sections "Job Processing" and "Cataloged Procedures")

Although not prerequisite, the following documents are related to this publication:

IBM System/360 Operating System: FORTRAN IV (E) Library Subprograms, Form C28-6596

IBM System/360 Operating System: Sequential Access Methods, Program Logic Manual, Form Y28-6604

IBM System/360 Operating System: Concepts and Facilities, Form C28-6535

IBM System/360 Operating System: Control Program Services, Form C28-6541

IBM System/360 Operating System: Linkage Editor, Program Logic Manual, Form Y28-6610

IBM System/360 Operating System: Data Management, Form C28-6537

IBM System/360 Operating System: System Generation, Form C28-6554

This compiler is similar in design to the IBM System/360 Basic Programming Support FORTRAN IV Compiler.

Third Edition (September 1966)

This is a major revision of, and obsoletes, Form Y28-6601-1. Significant changes have been made throughout the text. This edition should be reviewed in its entirety.

This revision incorporates information pertaining to: (1) compile-time and object-time processing of direct access statements, (2) dynamic text buffer chaining, (3) removal of restrictions on source modules, and (4) larger storage arrays.

This publication was prepared for production using an IBM computer to update the text and to control the page and line format. Page impressions for photo-offset printing were obtained from an IBM 1403 Printer using a special print chain.

Requests for copies of IBM publications should be made to your IBM representative or to the IBM branch office serving your locality.

A form is provided at the back of this publication for reader's comments. If the form has been removed, comments may be addressed to IBM Corporation, Programming Systems Publications, Department D58, PO Box 390, Poughkeepsie, N. Y. 12602

SECTION 1: INTRODUCTION	9	Phase 7 (IEJFEAA0)	29
The Compiler and Operating System/360.	9	Initializing the Overflow Table and	
The Interface Module.	9	the Dictionary	30
System Macro-Instructions	9	Overflow Table Index	30
Compiler Organization.	9	Dictionary Index and Reserved	
Communication Among Compiler Phases.	10	Word Portion.	30
The Communication Area.	10	Initializing the Communication Area	30
Intermediate Text	10	Deleting Phase 5 if Loaded.	31
Resident Tables	10	Phase 8 (IEJFFAA0)	31
Compiler Input/Output Flow	10	Eliminating Embedded Blanks	32
Overall Compiler Operation	11	Adding Special Characters	32
Initialization (Phases 1, 5, and 7)	12	Inserting Meaningful Blanks	32
Source Statement Adjustment if		Phase 10D (IEJFGAA0)	32
Required (Phase 8)	12	Creating Intermediate Text for	
Source Statement Scanning (Phases		Declarative Statements	34
10D and 10E)	12	Constructing Dictionary and	
Translation of the Source Module		Overflow Table Entries	34
(Phases 10D, 10E, 14, 15, and 20).	13	Phase 10E (IEJFJAA0)	34
Intermediate Text Generation		Creating Intermediate Text for	
(Phases 10D and 10E).	13	Statement Functions, Executable	
Intermediate Text Modification		Statements, and Format Statements.	35
(Phases 14, 15, and 20)	13	Constructing Dictionary and	
Object Module Generation (Phases		Overflow Table Entries	36
12, 14, 20, 25, and 30).	13	Phase 12 (IEJFLAA0).	36
Storage Map Generation (Phases 12,		Address Assignment.	37
20, and 25).	14	Equivalence Statement Processing.	38
Diagnostic Message Generation		Branch List Table Preparation	38
(Phase 30)	14	Card Image Preparation.	39
SECTION 2: DISCUSSION OF COMPILER		Phase 14 (IEJFNAA0).	39
PHASES.	20	Format Statement Processing	40
Phase 1 (IEJFAAA0/IEJFAAB0).	20	READ/WRITE/FIND Statement	
Initial Entry	20	Processing	40
Loading the Interface Module	20	Replacing Dictionary Pointers	41
Processing Compiler Options and		Miscellaneous Statement Processing.	41
New DDNAMES	22	Phase 15 (IEJFPAA0).	42
Loading the Source Symbol Module	22	Reordering Intermediate Text.	42
Loading the Performance Module	22	For Arithmetic Expressions	42
Opening Required Data Control		For DEFINE FILE Statements	43
Blocks.	23	Modifying Intermediate Text	43
Loading Phase 5.	24	Assigning Registers	44
Subsequent Entries.	24	Creating Argument Lists	44
Initiating a New Compilation	24	Checking for Statement Errors	45
Terminating the Compilation.	24	Phase 20 (IEJFRAA0).	45
Phase 5 (IEJFCAA0)	25	Processing of Statements That	
Obtaining Main Storage.	25	Require Subscript Optimization	46
Allocating Main Storage	25	Processing of Statements That	
For SPACE Compilations	25	Affect, But Do Not Require,	
For PRFRM Compilations	26	Subscript Optimization	47
Constructing Text Buffer Chains for		DO and READ Statements	47
PRFRM Compilations	26	Referenced Statement Numbers	47
Constructing Resident Tables	29	Subprogram Argument.	47
SEGMAL	29	Creating the Argument List Table.	48
Patch Table.	29	Phase 25 (IEJFVAA0).	48
Blocking Table and BLDL Table.	29		

Generation of Object Module		General Subscript Form . . . . .	.125
Instructions	48	Array Displacement . . . . .	.125
Completion of Object Module Tables.	49	APPENDIX H: RESIDENT TABLES . . . . .	.126
Branch List Table for Statement		The Dictionary. . . . .	.126
Numbers	50	Phase 7 Processing . . . . .	.126
Branch List Table for SF		Phases 10D and 10E Processing. . . . .	.126
Expansions and DO Statements.	50	Phase 12 Processing. . . . .	.128
Base Value Table	50	Phase 14 Processing. . . . .	.128
Phase 30 (IEJFXAA0).	51	Dictionary Entry Format. . . . .	.129
Producing Error and Warning		The Overflow Table. . . . .	.131
Messages	51	Organization of the Overflow	
Processing the END Statement.	51	Table . . . . .	.131
SECTION 3: CHARTS AND ROUTINE		Construction of the Overflow	
DIRECTORIES	53	Table . . . . .	.131
APPENDIX A: MAIN STORAGE ALLOCATION	89	Use of the Overflow Table. . . . .	.132
For Space Compilations.	89	Overflow Table Entry . . . . .	.132
For PRFRM Compilations.	91	SEGMAL. . . . .	.134
APPENDIX B: COMMUNICATION AREA		Phase 1 Use. . . . .	.134
(FCOMM)	92	Phase 5 Use. . . . .	.134
APPENDIX C: LINKAGES TO THE INTERFACE		Phase 7 Use. . . . .	.134
MODULE AND THE PERFORMANCE MODULE	95	Phases 10D, 10E, and 14 Use. . . . .	.134
Linkage to the Interface Module	95	Format of SEGMAL . . . . .	.134
Input/Output Request Linkage	95	Patch Table . . . . .	.135
End-Of-Phase/Interlude Request		Blocking Table. . . . .	.136
Linkage	96	BLDL Table. . . . .	.136
Patch Requests	96	Reset Table (RESETABL). . . . .	.136
Print Control Operations	96	APPENDIX I: TABLES USED BY PHASE LOAD	
Linkage to the Performance Module	97	MODULES . . . . .	.138
Input/Output Request Linkage	97	Allocation Table. . . . .	.138
End-Of-Phase Request Linkage	97	Routine Displacement Tables . . . . .	.138
APPENDIX D: DATA CONTROL BLOCK		Equivalence Table . . . . .	.140
MANIPULATION.	98	Forcing Value Table . . . . .	.140
For SPACE Compilations.	98	Operations Table. . . . .	.141
For PRFRM Compilations.	98	Subscript Table . . . . .	.141
APPENDIX E: SOURCE STATEMENT SCAN . . . . .	.101	Index Mapping Table . . . . .	.142
Preliminary Scan. . . . .	.101	Epilog Table. . . . .	.142
Classification Scan . . . . .	.101	Message Length Table. . . . .	.142
Reserved Word or Arithmetic Scan. . . . .	.102	Message Address Table . . . . .	.142
APPENDIX F: INTERMEDIATE TEXT . . . . .	.105	Message Text Table. . . . .	.143
An Entry in Intermediate Text . . . . .	.105	APPENDIX J: TABLES USED BY THE OBJECT	
Adjective Code Field . . . . .	.105	MODULE. . . . .	.144
Mode/Type Field. . . . .	.107	Branch List Table for Referenced	
Pointer Field. . . . .	.107	Statement Numbers. . . . .	.144
An Example of Intermediate Text . . . . .	.107	Branch List Table for SF Expansions	
Unique Forms of Intermediate Text . . . . .	.108	and DO Statements. . . . .	.144
FORMAT Statements. . . . .	.108	Argument List Table for Subprogram	
Subscripted Variable . . . . .	.108	and SF Calls . . . . .	.145
COMMON Statements. . . . .	.109	Base Value Table. . . . .	.145
EQUIVALENCE Intermediate Text. . . . .	.110	APPENDIX K: DIAGNOSTIC MESSAGES AND	
READ/WRITE and FIND Statements . . . . .	.111	STATEMENT/EXPRESSION PROCESSING . . . . .	.146
Modifying Intermediate Text . . . . .	.115	Diagnostic Messages . . . . .	.146
Phase 14 . . . . .	.115	Informative Messages . . . . .	.146
Phase 15 . . . . .	.117	Error/Warning Messages . . . . .	.146
Phase 20 . . . . .	.121	Statement/Expression Processing . . . . .	.148
APPENDIX G: ARRAY DISPLACEMENT		APPENDIX L: OBJECT-TIME LIBRARY	
COMPUTATION . . . . .	.123	SUBPROGRAMS . . . . .	.151
One Dimension . . . . .	.123	IHCFCOME . . . . .	.151
Two Dimensions. . . . .	.123	Operation of IHCFCOME Routines. . . . .	.152
Three Dimensions. . . . .	.124	Read/Write Routines. . . . .	.152
		Examples of IHCFCOME READ/WRITE	
		Statement Processing. . . . .	.156
		I/O Device Manipulation Routines . . . . .	.159

Write-to-Operator Routines . . . . .	.159	Blocks and Table Used . . . . .	.165
Utility Routines . . . . .	.159	Unit Blocks. . . . .	.166
IHCFIOSH . . . . .	.160	Unit Assignment Table. . . . .	.167
Blocks and Table Used . . . . .	.160	Buffering . . . . .	.168
Unit Blocks. . . . .	.160	Communication With the Control	
Unit Assignment Table. . . . .	.161	Program. . . . .	.168
Buffering . . . . .	.162	Operation . . . . .	.168
Communication With the Control		File Definition Section. . . . .	.168
Program. . . . .	.162	File Initialization Section. . . . .	.168
Operation . . . . .	.163	Read Section . . . . .	.169
Initialization . . . . .	.163	Write Section. . . . .	.170
Read . . . . .	.164	Termination Section. . . . .	.170
Write. . . . .	.164	IHCIBERR . . . . .	.171
Device Manipulation. . . . .	.165	GLOSSARY . . . . .	.183
Closing. . . . .	.165	INDEX. . . . .	.186
IHCADIOSE . . . . .	.165		

CHARTS

Chart 00. Overall Compiler Control		Chart 90. Phase 15 (IEJFPAA0) Overall	
Flow. . . . .	.15	Logic . . . . .	.76
Chart 10. Phase 1 (IEJFAAA0/IEJFAAB0)		Chart A0. Phase 20 (IEJFRAA0) Overall	
Overall Logic . . . . .	.54	Logic . . . . .	.81
Chart 11. Interface Module (IEJFAGA0)		Chart B0. Phase 25 (IEJFVAA0) Overall	
Routines. . . . .	.56	Logic . . . . .	.84
Chart 12. Performance Module		Chart C0. Phase 30 (IEJFXAA0) Overall	
(IEJFAPA0) I/O Routine. . . . .	.57	Logic . . . . .	.87
Chart 13. Performance Module		Chart D0. READ Statement Scan Logic .	.104
(IEJFAPA0) End-of-Phase Routine . . . .	.58	Chart E0. IHCFCOME Overall Logic and	
Chart 20. Phase 5 (IEJFCAA0) Overall		Utility Routines. . . . .	.172
Logic . . . . .	.59	Chart E1. Implementation of	
Chart 30. Phase 7 (IEJFEAA0) Overall		READ/WRITE/FIND Source Statements . .	.173
Logic . . . . .	.61	Chart E2. Device Manipulation and	
Chart 40. Phase 8 (IEJFFAA0) Overall		Write-to-Operator Routines. . . . .	.174
Logic . . . . .	.62	Chart E3. IHCFIOSH Overall Logic. . . .	.176
Chart 50. Phase 10D (IEJFGAA0)		Chart E4. Execution-Time I/O Recovery	
Overall Logic . . . . .	.64	Procedure . . . . .	.177
Chart 60. Phase 10E (IEJFJAA0)		Chart E5. IHCDIOSE Overall Logic -	
Overall Logic . . . . .	.67	File Definition Section . . . . .	.178
Chart 70. Phase 12 (IEJFLAA0) Overall		Chart E6. IHCDIOSE Overall Logic -	
Logic . . . . .	.70	File Initialization, Read, Write and	
Chart 80. Phase 14 (IEJFNAA0) Overall		Termination Sections. . . . .	.179
Logic . . . . .	.72	Chart E7. IHCIBERR Overall Logic. . . .	.181

FIGURES

Figure 1. Compiler Input/Output Structure	11	Figure 37. Intermediate Text Created for General I/O Statement . . . . .	.112
Figure 2. Compiler Input/Output Flow.	17	Figure 38. Intermediate Text Created for READ (I,10) (A(N),N=1,10),B . . . . .	.113
Figure 3. Text Buffer Chain Format.	27	Figure 39. Intermediate Text Created for WRITE (5'I(J), 10) (A(N),N=1,10), B . . . . .	.114
Figure 4. Text Buffer Chain Use	28	Figure 40. Intermediate Text Created for FIND (3'5). . . . .	.114
Figure 5. Relative Main Storage Locations Occupied by Dictionary and Overflow Table Elements, and SEGMAI	30	Figure 41. Replacement of Dictionary Pointers by Phase 14. . . . .	.115
Figure 6. Phase 8 Data Flow	31	Figure 42. Example of Input to Phase 14. . . . .	.116
Figure 7. Phase 10D Data Flow	33	Figure 43. Example of Output from Phase 14. . . . .	.116
Figure 8. Phase 10E Data Flow	35	Figure 44. Intermediate Text Input to Phase 14 for a Computed GO TO Statement . . . . .	.117
Figure 9. Phase 12 Data Flow.	37	Figure 45. Intermediate Text Output From Phase 14 for a Computed GO TO Statement . . . . .	.117
Figure 10. Phase 14 Data Flow	40	Figure 46. Intermediate Text Input to Phase 15 for an Arithmetic Statement. . . . .	.118
Figure 11. Phase 15 Data Flow	42	Figure 47. Intermediate Text Output From Phase 15 for an Arithmetic Statement . . . . .	.118
Figure 12. Phase 20 Data Flow	46	Figure 48. Assignment of Registers by Phase 15. . . . .	.119
Figure 13. Phase 25 Data Flow	49	Figure 49. Unordered Intermediate Text for an Arithmetic Statement. . . . .	.120
Figure 14. Sample Base Value Table Values.	50	Figure 50. Reordered Intermediate Text for an Arithmetic Statement. . . . .	.120
Figure 15. Phase 30 Data Flow	51	Figure 51. Intermediate Text Input to Phase 15 for a DEFINE FILE Statement. . . . .	.120
Figure 16. Main Storage at the End of Phase 1 (initial entry)	89	Figure 52. Intermediate Text Output From Phase 15 for a DEFINE FILE Statement . . . . .	.121
Figure 17. Main Storage at the End of Phase 1 (subsequent entries).	89	Figure 53. Subscript Intermediate Text Input Format . . . . .	.121
Figure 18. Main Storage at the End of Phase 5	89	Figure 54. Subscript Intermediate Text Output From Phase 20 -- SAOP Adjective Code. . . . .	.122
Figure 19. Main Storage at the End of Phases 7, 8, 10D, and 10E; and Interlude 10E	90	Figure 55. Subscript Intermediate Text Output from Phase 20 -- XOP Adjective Code. . . . .	.122
Figure 20. Main Storage at the End of Phases 12 and 14, and Interlude 14.	90	Figure 56. Subscript Intermediate Text Output from Phase 20 -- AOP Adjective Code. . . . .	.122
Figure 21. Main Storage at the End of Phases 15 and Interlude 15.	90	Figure 57. Referencing a Specified Element in an Array . . . . .	.124
Figure 22. Main Storage at the End of Phases 20, 25, and 30 (on entry to Phase 1).	90	Figure 58. The Dictionary as Constructed by Phase 7. . . . .	.127
Figure 23. Main Storage Allocation for a PRFRM Compilation	91	Figure 59. Removing an Entry From the End of a Dictionary Chain . . . . .	.128
Figure 24. Data Control Block Manipulation for SPACE Compilations	99	Figure 60. Removing an Entry From the Middle of a Dictionary Chain. . . . .	.128
Figure 25. Data Control Block Manipulation for PRFRM Compilations	100	Figure 61. General Format of a Dictionary Entry. . . . .	.129
Figure 26. Intermediate Text Word Format.	105	Figure 62. Function of Each Subfield in the Dictionary Usage Field . . . . .	.129
Figure 27. Intermediate Text Adjective Codes	106	Figure 63. The Various Mode/Type Combinations. . . . .	.130
Figure 28. Example of Intermediate Text for an IF Statement.	107		
Figure 29. FORMAT Statement Intermediate Text	108		
Figure 30. Subscripted Variable Intermediate Text - (First Word).	108		
Figure 31. Subscripted Variable Intermediate Text - (Second Word)	108		
Figure 32. Example of Subscripted Variable Intermediate Text.	109		
Figure 33. COMMON Intermediate Text	109		
Figure 34. Example of COMMON Intermediate Text	109		
Figure 35. EQUIVALENCE Intermediate Text.	110		
Figure 36. Example of EQUIVALENCE Intermediate Text	111		

Figure 64. Phases That Enter Information Into Specific Fields of a Dictionary Entry. . . . .	.130	Figure 80. Index Mapping Table Entry Format. . . . .	.142
Figure 65. The Overflow Table Index as Constructed by Phase 7 . . . . .	.131	Figure 81. Epilog Table Entry Format. . . . .	.142
Figure 66. Format of Dimension Information in the Overflow Table . . . . .	.132	Figure 82. Message Length Table Format. . . . .	.142
Figure 67. Format of Subscript Information in the Overflow Table . . . . .	.133	Figure 83. Message Address Table Format. . . . .	.143
Figure 68. Format of Statement Number Information in the Overflow Table . . . . .	.133	Figure 84. Message Text Table Format. . . . .	.143
Figure 69. Statement Number Entry Usage Field Bit Functions . . . . .	.133	Figure 85. Format of Branch List Table for Referenced Statement Numbers . . . . .	.144
Figure 70. Format of SEGMAL . . . . .	.134	Figure 86. Format of Branch List Table for SF Expansions and DO Loops. . . . .	.144
Figure 71. Format of the Patch Table. . . . .	.135	Figure 87. Format of Argument List Table for Subprogram and SF Calls . . . . .	.145
Figure 72. Blocking Table Entry Format. . . . .	.136	Figure 88. Format of Base Value Table . . . . .	.145
Figure 73. BLDL Table Format. . . . .	.137	Figure 89. Relationship Between IHCFCOME and I/O Data Management Interfaces. . . . .	.152
Figure 74. Phase 10D Routine Displacement Table Format . . . . .	.139	Figure 90. Format of a Unit Block for a Sequential Access Data Set. . . . .	.160
Figure 75. Phase 10E Routine Displacement Table Format . . . . .	.139	Figure 91. Unit Assignment Table Format. . . . .	.162
Figure 76. Locating the DO Reserved Word Routine. . . . .	.140	Figure 92. CTLBLK Format. . . . .	.163
Figure 77. Forcing Value Table. . . . .	.141	Figure 93. Format of a Unit Block for a Direct Access Data Set. . . . .	.166
Figure 78. Operations Table Entry Format. . . . .	.141	Figure 94. Unit Assignment Table Entry for a Direct Access Data Set. . . . .	.167
Figure 79. Subscript Table Entry Format. . . . .	.141		

TABLES

Table 1. Compiler Components and Their Major Functions	18	Table 18. Phase 20 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory.	83
Table 2. Phase 1 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory.	55	Table 19. Phase 25 Statement and Adjective Code Processing	85
Table 3. Phase 5 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory.	60	Table 20. Phase 25 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory.	86
Table 4. Phase 8 Routine/Subroutine Directory	63	Table 21. Phase 30 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory.	88
Table 5. Phase 10D Statement Processing.	65	Table 22. Communication Area.	92
Table 6. Phase 10D Main Routine/Subroutine Directory.	66	Table 23. Operation Field Bit Meanings.	95
Table 7. Phase 10E Statement Processing.	68	Table 24. Data Set Disposition Field Bit Meanings.	96
Table 8. Phase 10E Main Routine/Subroutine Directory.	69	Table 25. Symbolic and Actual Names of Compiler Components.	97
Table 9. Phase 12 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory.	71	Table 26. Array Size Maximums	125
Table 10. Phase 14 Statement Processing (FORMAT Statements Excluded)	73	Table 27. Allocation Table.	138
Table 11. Phase 14 FORMAT Statement Processing.	74	Table 28. Informative Messages.	146
Table 12. Phase 14 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory.	74	Table 29. Error/Warning Messages.	146
Table 13. Phase 15 Nonarithmetic Statement Processing.	77	Table 30. Statement/Expression Processing.	149
Table 14. Phase 15 Arithmetic Operator Processing	78	Table 31. IHCFCOME FORMAT Code Processing.	154
Table 15. Phase 15 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory.	79	Table 32. IHCFCOME Processing for a READ Requiring a Format	157
Table 16. Phase 20 Nonsubscript Optimization Processing	82	Table 33. IHCFCOME Processing for a WRITE Requiring a Format.	157
Table 17. Phase 20 Subscript Optimization Processing	82	Table 34. IHCFCOME Processing for a READ Not Requiring a Format	158
		Table 35. IHCFCOME Processing for a WRITE Not Requiring a Format.	158
		Table 36. IHCFCOME Routine/Subroutine Directory	175
		Table 37. IHCFIOSH Routine Directory.	180
		Table 38. IHCDIOSE Routine Directory.	180

This publication describes the internal logic of the FORTRAN IV (E) compiler, which translates source modules written in the FORTRAN IV (E) language into machine-language object modules. The object modules are used as an input to the linkage editor program, which produces load modules for execution on the IBM System/360. If the compiler detects errors in the source modules, appropriate error messages are produced.

THE COMPILER AND OPERATING SYSTEM/360

The FORTRAN IV (E) compiler is a processing program of the operating system and, as such, communicates with the following parts of the operating system control program:

- Job management routines that analyze job control language statements.
- Task management routines that allocate main storage for use by the compiler.
- Data management routines that read data from and write data onto input/output devices.

The execution of the compiler (i.e., a single compilation, or a batch of compilations) is introduced as a job step under the control of the operating system via the job statement (JOB), the execute statement (EXEC), and data definition statements (DD) for the input/output data sets. To keep these statements at a minimum in the job stream, cataloged procedures are provided. A discussion of the execution of the compiler as a job step and of the available cataloged procedures is given in the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: FORTRAN IV (E) Programmer's Guide.

In addition, any job step may invoke the compiler via the LINK or ATTACH macro-instruction.

The compiler initially receives control from the calling program via a supervisor-assisted linkage. Once the compiler receives control, it maintains communication with the operating system through:

- The interface module.
- System macro-instructions.

THE INTERFACE MODULE

The interface module, a component of the FORTRAN IV (E) compiler, resides on the operating system library (SYS1.LINKLIB). This module is loaded, via the LOAD macro-instruction, into main storage and remains in main storage until control is returned to the calling program. The interface module processes all read/write requests of the compiler using the BSAM (basic sequential access method) read/write routines. A description of BSAM and the corresponding read/write routines is given in the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: Sequential Access Methods, Program Logic Manual.

SYSTEM MACRO-INSTRUCTIONS

Whenever the XCTL, LOAD, DELETE, OPEN, OPEN (type=J), CLOSE, CLOSE (type=T), READ, WRITE, CHECK, RDJFCB, GETMAIN, FREEMAIN, BLDL, SPIE, or TIME macro-instruction is issued, control is given directly to the operating system to execute the requested service.

When the execution of the compiler is terminated, control is returned to the calling program via the RETURN macro-instruction.

For a description of these macro-instructions, refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: Control Program Services.

COMPILER ORGANIZATION

The FORTRAN IV (E) compiler consists of several components, each of which exists as a separate load module on the operating system library (SYS1.LINKLIB). The components are:

- Phases (1, 5, 7, 8, 10D, 10E, 12, 14, 15, 20, 25, and 30).
- Interludes (10E, 14, and 15).
- Interface module.
- Performance module.
- Source symbol module.
- Object listing module.

The compiler components, their symbolic names, and their major functions are summarized in the discussion of overall compiler operation (refer to Table 1).

COMMUNICATION AMONG COMPILER PHASES

Communication among the phases of the FORTRAN IV (E) compiler is implemented via:

- The communication area.
- Intermediate text.
- Resident tables.

THE COMMUNICATION AREA

The communication area is a central gathering area (a portion of the interface module) for information common to the phases. It is used to communicate this information, when necessary, among the phases.

INTERMEDIATE TEXT

Source module statements (both executable and nonexecutable) are converted into intermediate text. This intermediate text, once it is created, is used as input to the subsequent phases of the compiler. The intermediate text for the executable statements is eventually transformed into machine-language instructions.

RESIDENT TABLES

The resident tables contain information that remains in main storage throughout the compilation process. The resident tables are the dictionary, the overflow table, the segment address list (SEGMAL), the patch table, the blocking table, the BIDL table, and the reset table. The dictionary is a reference area containing information about variables, arrays, constants, and data set

reference numbers used in the source module. (For SPACE compilations, the dictionary resides in main storage only through the execution of Phase 14.) The overflow table contains all dimension, subscript, and statement number information within the source module. SEGMAL is used for main storage allocation within the compiler. The patch table contains information to be used to modify compiler components. The blocking table contains information necessary for deblocking compiler input and blocking compiler output for PRFRM compilations. The BIDL table provides the information necessary for transferring control from one component to the next for PRFRM compilations. The reset table is used to determine which, if any, of the record counts for the SYSUT1 and SYSUT2 data sets must be reset. (The blocking table, the BIDL table, and the reset table reside in main storage only for PRFRM compilations.)

COMPILER INPUT/OUTPUT FLOW

The initial input (source modules) to the compiler is provided in the form of cards or card images on intermediate storage, and is read into main storage from the SYSIN data set. The compiler uses SYSUT1 and SYSUT2 as intermediate text work data sets. If the buffers to be used for reading from and writing onto these work data sets are large enough to contain the intermediate text representation of the source module, then this text is retained in main storage.

The output of the compiler is placed onto the SYSPRINT, SYSLIN, and SYSPUNCH data sets as specified by the user. SYS-PRINT is always used. SYSLIN is used only if the LOAD option is in effect. SYSPUNCH is used only if the DECK option is in effect.

Figure 1 shows the various compiler options that are available for obtaining compiler output.

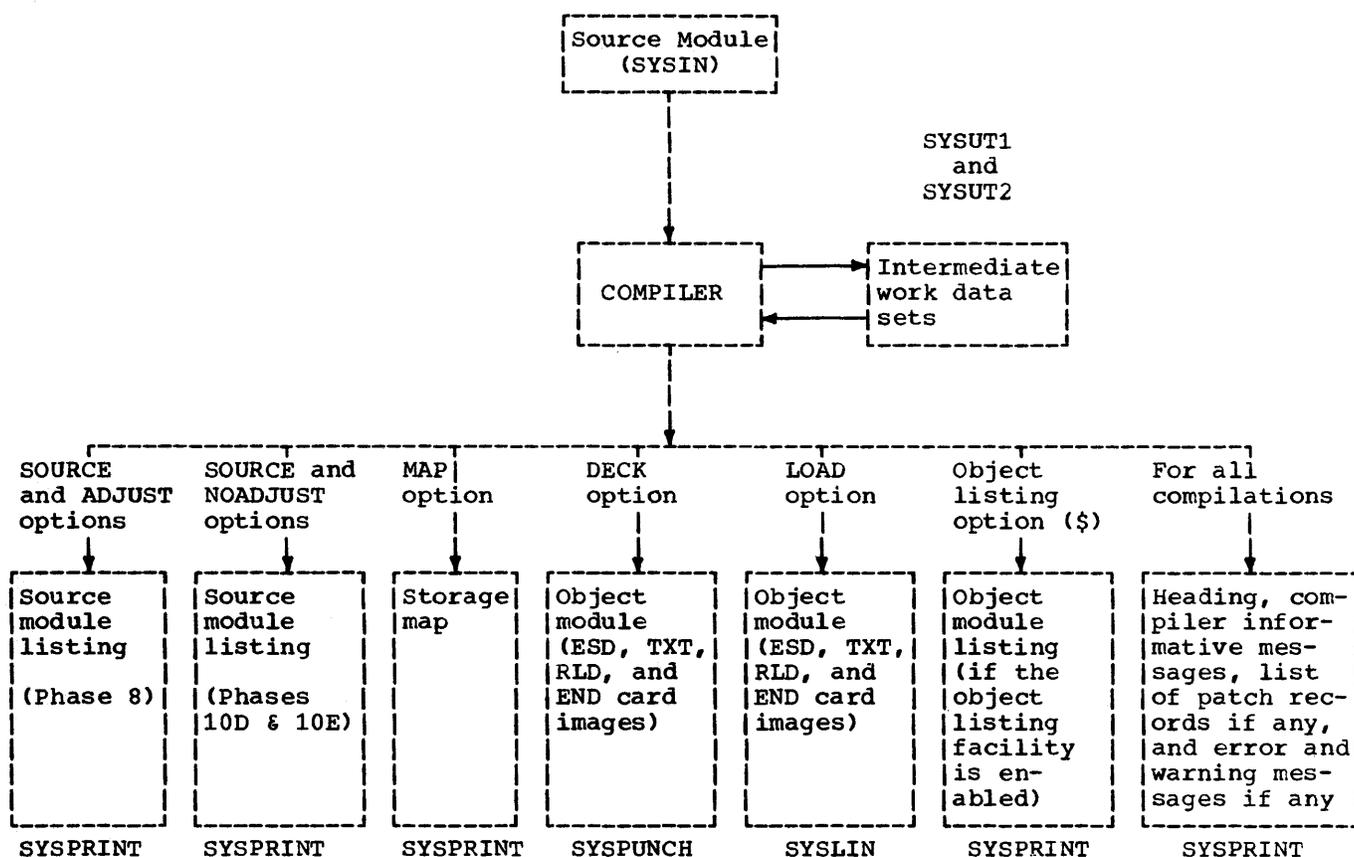


Figure 1. Compiler Input/Output Structure

OVERALL COMPILER OPERATION

The overall operation of the compiler involves the following general functions:

- Initialization (Phases 1, 5, and 7).
- Source statement adjustment if required (Phase 8).
- Source statement scanning (Phases 10D and 10E).
- Translation of the source module (Phases 10D, 10E, 14, 15, and 20).
 1. Intermediate text generation (Phases 10D and 10E).
 2. Intermediate text modification (Phases 14, 15, and 20).
- Object module generation (Phases 12, 14, 20, 25, and 30).
- Storage map generation (Phases 12, 20, and 25).
- Diagnostic message generation (Phase 30).

The manner in which control is transferred among the compiler components depends on whether the SPACE or PRFRM option is specified by the user. The SPACE option is chosen if the amount of main storage that is available for compilation is limited. The PRFRM option is chosen if the user desires maximum compiler efficiency and if the amount of available main storage is not a limitation.

If the SPACE option is specified, control is transferred among the compiler components via the interface module. After each component has been executed, that component branches to the interface module with the name of the component to be executed next. The interface module then transfers control to the next component via the XCTL macro-instruction.

If the PRFRM option is specified, control is transferred among the compiler components via the performance module. After each component has been executed, that component branches to the interface module with the name of the component to be executed next. The interface module, in turn, branches to the performance module.

If the next component is an interlude, the performance module bypasses the execution of the interlude and transfers control, via the XCTL macro-instruction, to the next phase of the compiler. If the next component is a phase, the performance module immediately transfers control to the next phase.

Figure 2 illustrates the overall compiler input/output flow and includes intermediate input to and from the various phases of the compiler.

Chart 00 shows the overall compiler control flow. Table 1 summarizes the major functions performed by each component of the compiler.

INITIALIZATION (PHASES 1, 5, AND 7)

Certain initialization steps must be performed prior to any source module processing. The steps that are performed depend on whether the first compilation or a subsequent compilation in a batch is being initialized.

For the first compilation in a batch, initialization consists of the following functions:

- Loading the interface module into main storage (Phase 1).
- Processing compiler options (Phase 1).
- Loading the source symbol module into main storage if the object listing option is in effect and if the object listing facility of the compiler has been enabled (Phase 1).
- Loading the performance module into main storage if the PRFRM option is in effect and if the SIZE option is at least 18,504 (Phase 1).
- Opening required data control blocks for the data sets used by the compiler (Phase 1).
- Loading Phase 5 into main storage (Phase 1).
- Obtaining and allocating main storage for use by the compiler (Phase 5).
- Constructing text buffer chains for the SYSUT1 and SYSUT2 data sets if the PRFRM option is in effect (Phase 5).
- Resident table initialization (Phases 5 and 7).

- Communication area initialization (Phases 1, 5, and 7).

For a subsequent compilation in a batch, the initialization steps depend on whether the SPACE or the PRFRM option is in effect.

If the SPACE option is in effect, subsequent compilations in a batch are initialized in the following manner:

- All the remaining main storage, originally obtained and allocated to the compiler by Phase 5 is freed (Phase 1).
- All the data control blocks for the compiler data sets are closed (Phase 1).
- The remaining initialization steps performed for a subsequent compilation in a batch SPACE run are the same as those described for the first compilation in a batch starting with the opening of the data control blocks.

If the PRFRM option is in effect, only the dictionary and overflow table (in Phase 7), and the communication area (in Phases 1 and 7) are initialized.

SOURCE STATEMENT ADJUSTMENT IF REQUIRED (PHASE 8)

Any source statements written with embedded blanks and keywords used as variables, arrays, or external names are adjusted by the compiler (if the ADJUST option is in effect) into a format that is acceptable as input to Phases 10D and 10E. Phase 8 eliminates embedded blanks; adds a special character to keywords that are used as variables, arrays, or external names; and inserts a meaningful blank between successive words in a FORTRAN statement. In addition, if the SOURCE option is in effect, Phase 8 produces a listing of the unadjusted source module.

SOURCE STATEMENT SCANNING (PHASES 10D AND 10E)

The main purpose of source statement scanning is to convert each source statement into a form (intermediate text) that is usable as input to subsequent phases of the compiler. If the SOURCE and NOADJUST options are in effect, Phases 10D and 10E produce a listing of the source module. In addition, as source statements are scanned, they are checked for validity and any errors that are detected are indicated by

developing special intermediate text. (Phase 30 produces diagnostic messages from this intermediate text that explain the errors that are detected.)

TRANSLATION OF THE SOURCE MODULE (PHASES 10D, 10E, 14, 15, AND 20)

Translation of the source module involves: (1) generating intermediate text for the statements in the source module, and (2) modifying that intermediate text to a form that facilitates the generation of the object module.

Intermediate Text Generation (Phases 10D and 10E)

Intermediate text is an internal representation of the source statements from which the machine-language instructions of the object module are produced. In general, intermediate text is generated by scanning the source statements from left-to-right and by constructing one-word intermediate text entries for the source text contained in those statements. (Special intermediate text is generated for: (1) COMMON, EQUIVALENCE, FORMAT, READ, WRITE, and FIND statements; and (2) subscripted variables.)

As intermediate text is generated, entries are made in the dictionary and/or overflow table for the variables, constants, arrays, statement numbers, subscripts, etc., that appear in the source statements. The information contained in the dictionary and overflow table entries supplements the intermediate text in the generation of machine-language instructions. The intermediate text entries are associated with the dictionary and overflow table entries by pointers that reside in the text entries.

Intermediate Text Modification (Phases 14, 15, and 20)

Phases 14, 15, and 20 modify the intermediate text produced by Phases 10D and 10E. The main purpose of this modification is to transform the intermediate text to a format that facilitates the generation of machine-language instructions by Phase 25.

Phase 14: (1) replaces the pointers to the dictionary in the intermediate text entries with information contained in the dictionary entries (e.g., the relative addresses that are assigned by Phase 12);

and (2) modifies the intermediate text entries for I/O statements, computed GO TO statements, and RETURN statements.

Phase 15 primarily transforms the intermediate text entries for arithmetic expressions into approximate machine code. That is, Phase 15 allows Phase 25 to easily generate machine-language instructions for arithmetic expressions.

Phase 20 optimizes the intermediate text for subscript expressions. This optimization process increases the efficiency of the object module by decreasing the amount of computation associated with subscript expressions.

OBJECT MODULE GENERATION (PHASES 12, 14, 20, 25, AND 30)

An object module consists of control dictionaries (external symbol dictionary and relocation dictionary), text, and an END statement. The external symbol dictionary (ESD) contains the external symbols that are defined or referred to in the module. The relocation dictionary (RLD) contains information about address constants in the object module. (An address constant designates the relative storage address into which the address of a routine, library subprogram, or symbol is to be relocated.) The text (TXT) contains the instructions and data of the object module. The END statement indicates the end of the object module.

The object module is not constructed in its entirety by any one phase; it is constructed throughout the compilation and is placed onto the SYSLIN and/or SYS PUNCH data sets. Figure 2, the overall compiler input/output flow, indicates what each phase contributes to the generation of the object module.

Several tables are used by the object module during the execution of the instructions generated by Phase 25. They are:

- The branch list table for referenced statement numbers (constructed by Phases 12, 25, and 30).
- The branch list table for statement function expansions and DO statements (constructed by Phases 14, 20, 25, and 30).
- The base value table (constructed throughout the compilation as new base registers are required).
- The argument list table (constructed by Phase 20).

Note: The linkage editor must combine certain FORTRAN library subprograms with the object module in order to form an executable load module. Each library subprogram that is externally referenced by the object module is included in the load module by the linkage editor. Among the library subprograms that may be so referenced are:

- IHCFCOME
- IHCFIOSH
- IHCDIOSE

IHCFCOME performs object-time implementation of the following FORTRAN statements.

- READ, WRITE, and FIND
- BACKSPACE, REWIND, and ENDFILE
- STOP and PAUSE

In addition, IHCFCOME converts input and output data into the formats indicated in the FORMAT statements. IHCFCOME also processes object-time errors and arithmetic-type program interruptions and terminates the execution of the load module when appropriate.

IHCFCOME does not actually perform the reading from and writing onto data sets; it submits requests for such operations to the appropriate FORTRAN I/O data management interface (IHCFIOSH for sequential access

I/O, or IHCDIOSE for direct access I/O). The FORTRAN I/O interface interprets these requests and, in turn, submits them to the appropriate BSAM or BDAM routines for execution.

STORAGE MAP GENERATION (PHASES 12, 20, AND 25)

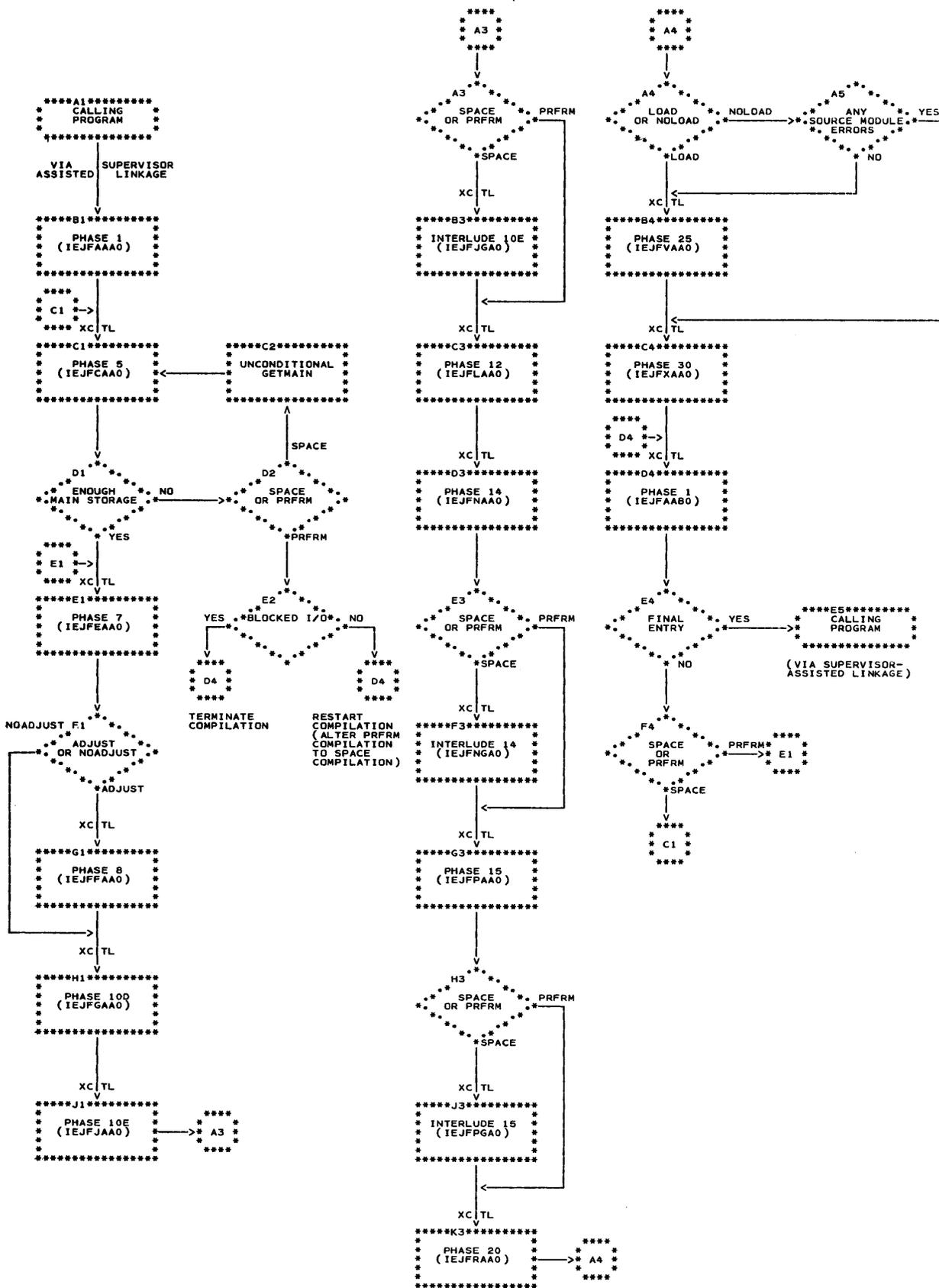
If the MAP option is in effect, the compiler generates a storage map on the SYSPRINT data set. The storage map is generated by Phases 12, 20, and 25.

Phase 12 produces a map of all the relative addresses that it assigns. Phase 20 produces a map of the literals it generates and the external references made by the source module. Phase 25 produces a map of all referenced statement numbers within the source module.

DIAGNOSTIC MESSAGE GENERATION (PHASE 30)

The various phases of the compiler may detect errors in the source module. These errors are indicated in the form of special intermediate text entries. These text entries are examined by Phase 30 and the corresponding error messages are generated.

Chart 00. Overall Compiler Control Flow



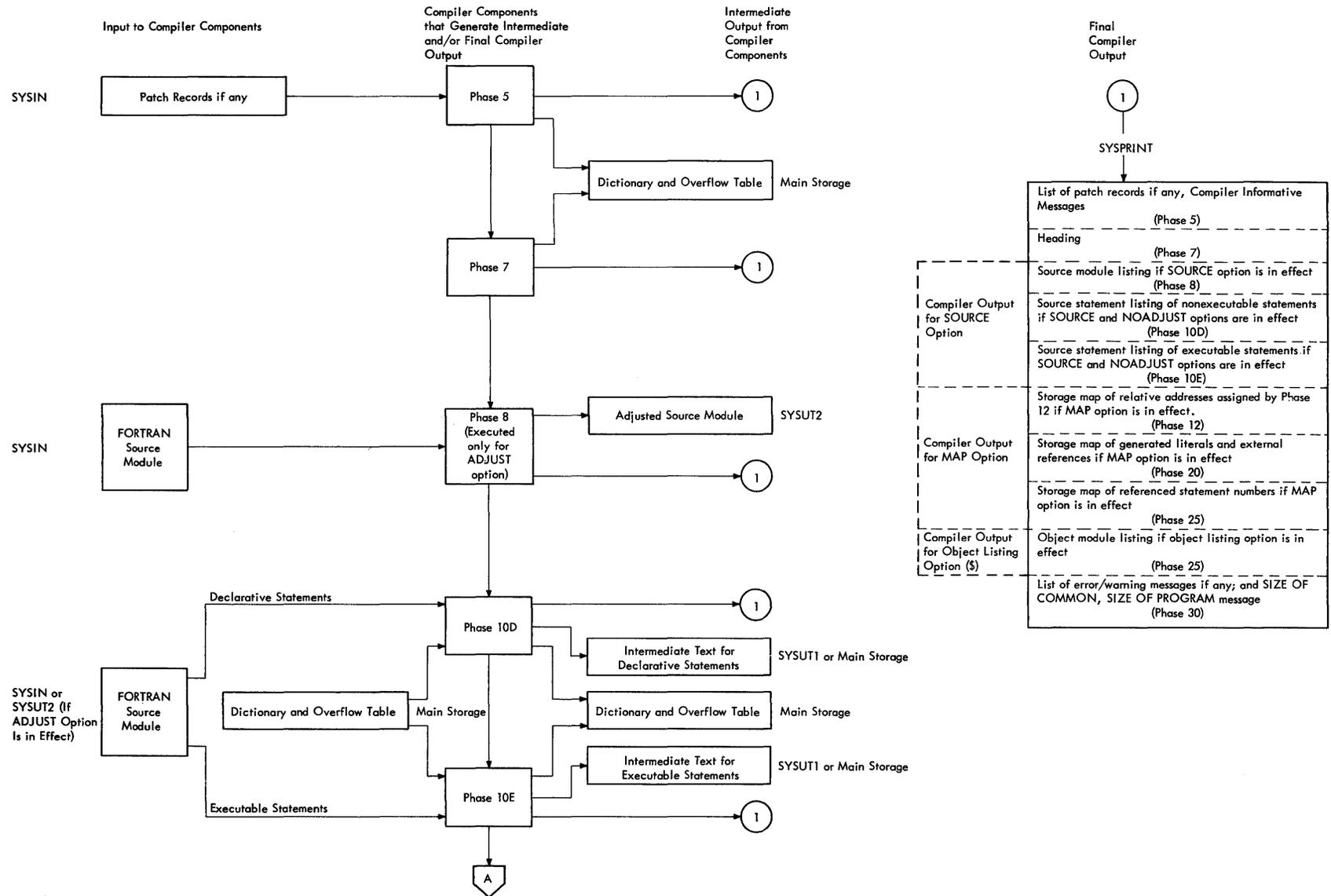


Figure 2. Compiler Input/Output Flow

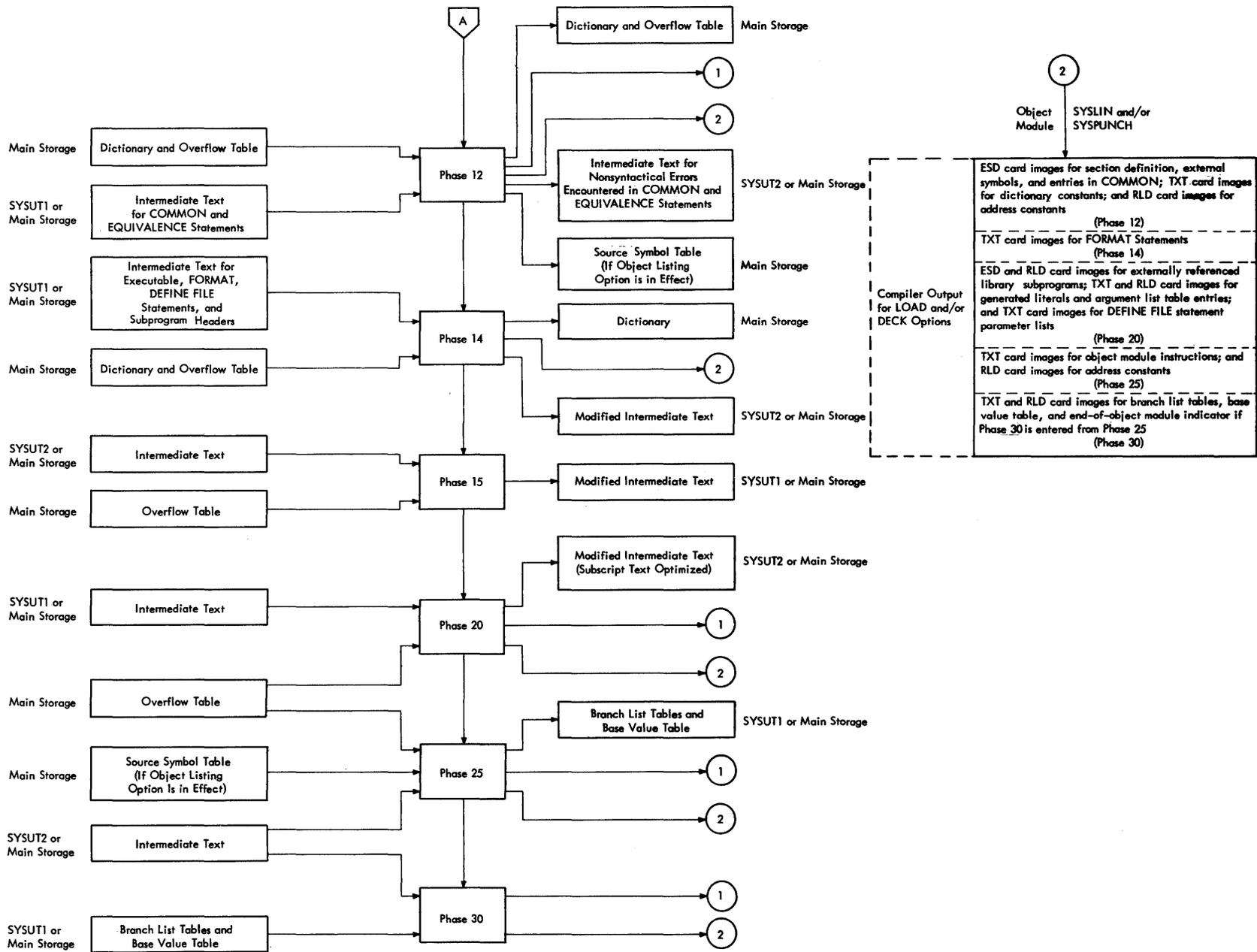


Figure 2. Compiler Input/Output Flow (Continued)

Table 1. Compiler Components and Their Major Functions

Component and Symbolic Name	Major Functions
Phase 1 initial entry (IEJFAAA0)	Processes compiler options, and initiates first compilation.
Phase 1 subsequent entries (IEJFAAB0)	Initiates next compilation in the case of a batch of compilations, restarts a compilation, or terminates execution of the compiler.
Interface module (IEJFAGA0)	Processes compiler I/O requests, patch requests, and print control operations for all compilations, and end-of-phase/interlude requests for SPACE compilations; and contains communication area, DCBs and DECBs for the compiler data sets, and two I/O buffers that are used for the SYSIN and SYSPRINT data sets.
Performance module (IEJFAPA0)	Reduces compilation time; deblocks compiler input and blocks compiler output if blocking is specified; manipulates text buffer chains for SYSUT1 and SYSUT2, processes end-of-phase requests for PRFRM compilations; and contains blocking table, BLDL table, and reset table.
Phase 5 (IEJFCAA0)	Obtains and allocates main storage for resident tables and internal text buffers, allocates main storage to special I/O buffers to be used by the block/deblock routine of the performance module, constructs text buffer chains for SYSUT1 and SYSUT2 if the PRFRM option is in effect, constructs SEGMAL and the patch table, and enters information into the blocking table and the BLDL table.
Phase 7 (IEJFEAA0)	Initializes the communication area and those portions of the dictionary and overflow table that are independent of the source module being compiled, prints heading, and, if necessary, deletes Phase 5 from main storage.
Phase 8 (IEJFFAA0)	Converts source modules written with embedded blanks and keywords used as variables, arrays, or external names into a format that is acceptable as input to Phases 10D and 10E.
Phase 10D (IEJFGAA0)	Converts COMMON, EQUIVALENCE, FORMAT, DEFINE FILE, SUBROUTINE, FUNCTION, and specification statements into intermediate text; and creates dictionary and overflow table entries.
Phase 10E (IEJFJAA0)	Converts statement function definitions, executable statements, and interspersed FORMAT statements into intermediate text; and creates dictionary and overflow table entries.
Interlude 10E (IEJFJGA0)	Closes all open data control blocks, and then opens only those for the data sets that are required by Phases 12 and 14.
Phase 12 (IEJFLAA0)	Assigns relative address to variables and arrays in COMMON, variables and arrays not in COMMON, equated variables, variables in subscript expressions, and constants; allocates storage for the branch list table for referenced statement numbers; and generates part of the object module.
Phase 14 (IEJFNAA0)	Replaces pointers to dictionary entries with information obtained from the dictionary; processes intermediate text for FORMAT, READ, WRITE, and FIND statements, assigns a relative position in the branch list table for statement function expansions and DO statements for each statement function encountered; generates part of the object module; and frees the main storage occupied by the dictionary if the SPACE option is in effect.

(Continued)

Table 1. Compiler Components and Their Major Functions (Continued)

Component and Symbolic Name	Major Functions
Interlude 14 (IEJFNGA0)	Closes all open data control blocks and then opens only those for the data sets that are required by Phase 15, thereby providing additional main storage for Phase 15.
Phase 15 (IEJFPAA0)	Transforms arithmetic expressions into approximate machine code, reorders intermediate text for DEFINE FILE statements, and assigns registers when required.
Interlude 15 (IEJFPGA0)	Closes all open data control blocks and then opens only those required by the compiler for the remainder of this compilation.
Phase 20 (IEJFRAA0)	Optimizes subscript expressions, creates argument list table, and generates part of the object module.
Phase 25 (IEJFVAA0)	Transforms intermediate text into machine-language instructions (part of the object module); and completes the assembly of the branch list table for referenced statement numbers, the branch list table for statement function expansions and DO statements, and the base value table.
Source symbol module (IEJFAXA0)	Used by Phase 12 to contain the names of all variables and constants used in the source module and their corresponding relative addresses.
Object listing module (IEJFVCA0)	Used by Phase 25 in conjunction with the source symbol module to generate the object listing module.
Phase 30 (IEJFXAA0)	Generates error and warning messages if any from intermediate text, processes the END statement, and generates the final part of the object module.

SECTION 2: DISCUSSION OF COMPILER PHASES

Section 2 describes the logic and functions of each phase of the compiler.

PHASE 1 (IEJFAAA0/IEJFAAB0)

Phase 1 is both the first and last phase to be executed for each compilation. The phase is initially entered from the calling program via a supervisor-assisted linkage; subsequent entries are made from either Phase 5 if a PRFRM compilation is altered to a SPACE compilation (restart condition), or from Phase 30 -- the last processing phase of the compiler. In addition, if a permanent I/O error occurs, Phase 1 is entered from the phase that requested the I/O operation. If an I/O error has occurred, Phase 1 returns control to the calling program and the compilation is terminated.

At the initial entry (IEJFAAA0), Phase 1 initiates the first compilation and then transfers control to Phase 5.

At subsequent entries (IEJFAAB0), Phase 1 either initiates the next compilation if other source modules are to be compiled, or terminates the compilation (i.e., if no more source modules are present, or if a permanent I/O error has occurred). If a new compilation is initiated, Phase 1 transfers control to the next phase (Phase 5 for SPACE compilations, or Phase 7 for PRFRM compilations). If the compilation is terminated, Phase 1 returns control to the calling program with the appropriate return code.

Chart 10 illustrates the overall logic and the relationship among the routines used in Phase 1. Table 2, the routine directory, lists the routines used in the phase and their functions.

INITIAL ENTRY

At the initial entry, Phase 1 initiates the first compilation. This entails:

- Loading the interface module.
- Processing compiler options and new DDNAMES.
- Loading the source symbol module if the object listing option is in effect.

- Loading the performance module if the PRFRM option is in effect and if the SIZE option is at least 18504.
- Opening required data control blocks.
- Loading Phase 5.

Loading the Interface Module

When Phase 1 receives control from the calling program, it loads the interface module (IEJFAGA0) into main storage via the LOAD macro-instruction. The interface module contains:

- The communication area (FCOMM).
- DCBs (data control blocks) and DECBS (data event control blocks).
- Interface routines.
- Two I/O buffers.

COMMUNICATION AREA: The communication area contains the following type of information:

- User-specified options and parameters (e.g., DECK).
- Default values for compiler options. The interface module is assembled, and processed by the linkage editor during system generation. This allows the user to specify default values for compiler options (refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: System Generation). These default values will be assumed if the corresponding values in the PARM field of the EXEC statement are not included by the user. (Refer to Appendix B for the options for which default values may be specified during the system generation process.)
- Information required for communication between the compiler and the operating system, such as:
 1. Branch instructions to specific routines in the interface module. (For PRFRM compilations, these branch instructions are, in effect, replaced by branch instructions to routines in the performance module.)
 2. A pointer to DCBs (data control blocks) and the DECBS (data event control blocks) needed for input/output operations during the compilation.

- Compilation information, such as:
 1. Type of program/subprogram being compiled (i.e., main program, FUNCTION subprogram, or SUBROUTINE subprogram).
 2. Sizes of the internal text buffers.
 3. Addresses of internal text buffers, table indexes, and work areas. If the PRFRM option is in effect, the communication area contains the address of the first text buffer in each of the text buffer chains that are constructed by Phase 5.
 4. Indicators (e.g., indicators of any errors encountered during the compilation).
- Object-time information, such as:
 1. Size of COMMON to be used with the object module, and of the tables required for the object module execution.
 2. The location counter used, throughout the compilation, for the assignment of object-time addresses.

DCBS AND DECBS: The DCBs and DECBS for the data sets used during the compilation are assembled into the interface module in skeletal form. (For a description of the DCBs and DECBS refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: Introduction to Control Program Logic, Program Logic Manual.) Some fields of the DCBs are filled in by the control program when the data control blocks are opened (refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: Concepts and Facilities). However, the DCB block size fields for data sets SYSUT1 and SYSUT2 are overlaid with values computed by the compiler. In addition, if the DCB block sizes for the other data sets are not specified in DD statements, standard default values are assumed. They are:

- 80 for SYSIN, SYSLIN, and SYSPUNCH.
- 121 for SYSPRINT.

INTERFACE ROUTINES: The interface module contains four interface routines: an I/O routine, an end-of-phase routine, a print control operations routine, and a patch routine (refer to Chart 11).

The I/O routine (SIORTN) processes I/O requests of the compiler. For SPACE compilations, the I/O requests are initiated via a linkage to this routine. (Refer to Appendix C for a description of this lin-

kage to the interface module.) For PRFRM compilations, the I/O requests are initiated via a linkage to the PIORTN routine in the performance module. The PIORTN, in turn, links to the SIORTN routine in the interface module. The SIORTN routine:

- Analyzes the linkage parameters passed to it by either the component of the compiler requesting I/O, or by other interface routines. These parameters indicate: (1) the type of request (read, write, or check), (2) the address of the I/O buffer for the operation, and (3) what data set is to be used for the operation.
- Fulfills the request by issuing the appropriate macro-instruction (READ, WRITE, and/or CHECK).

The compile-time I/O error recovery procedure is illustrated in Chart 11.

The end-of-phase routine (SNEXT) is used to pass control from one component of the compiler to the next for SPACE compilations. The transferring of control between compiler components is initiated via a linkage to this routine. (Refer to Appendix C for a description of this linkage to the interface module.) The end-of-phase routine:

- Analyzes the linkage parameters passed to it by the component of the compiler relinquishing control. These parameters indicate the name of the next component to be executed and the disposition of various data sets.
- Logically repositions the data sets indicated in the linkage parameters via the CLOSE, type=T, macro-instruction.
- Transfers control to the next component via the XCTL macro-instruction.

The print control operations (PRTCTRL) routine allows the use of immediate-type control operations for the SYSPRINT data set. If the data set is being placed onto an intermediate storage device before being printed, the printer control codes remain as part of the data set (thereby retaining device independence).

The patch routine (PATCH) allows temporary modification of the compiler modules. (A module is modified for the duration of a batch compilation.) Each compiler module unconditionally branches to the patch routine to check whether the module being executed is to be modified. (Refer to Appendix C for a description of this linkage to the interface module.) If it is, the patch routine overlays the

instructions or data of the module to be modified with patch information for that module. This information is placed in the patch table (a 100-byte portion of the patch routine) by Phase 5. If there is no patch information, control is immediately returned to the module being executed.

I/O BUFFERS: The two I/O buffers are used for the SYSIN and SYSPRINT data sets. SYSIN uses the I/O buffers during source statement adjustment (if required), or source statement scanning. The card images of the source module to be compiled are alternately read into one of the two buffers. The double-buffer scheme allows for overlapping the processing of a card image in one buffer with the reading of the next card image of the source module into the other buffer.

SYSPRINT uses the I/O buffers for: (1) writing patch records and compiler information messages, (2) listing the source module, and (3) generating the storage map.

Processing Compiler Options and New DDNAMES

Options may be chosen by the user to tailor the output of the compiler to his specifications. This information is specified in the EXEC statement and is entered into an area designated by the calling program. The contents of this area are obtained by Phase 1 via an address in general register 1. They are then encoded and entered in the communication area. For a description of the options and their use, refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: FORTRAN IV (E) Programmer's Guide.

If the compiler is invoked via the LINK or ATTACH macro-instruction, the user may change the DDNAMES of the compiler data sets. The substitute DDNAMES are obtained by Phase 1 via an address in general register 1.

Loading the Source Symbol Module

If the object listing facility of the compiler has been enabled, Phase 1 checks whether the object listing option (a \$ in the PARM field of the EXEC statement) is specified. (The object listing facility is enabled by reassembling Phase 1 with the branch instruction that disables the facility either removed or replaced with a no-op instruction.) If the option is specified, Phase 1: (1) sets the appropriate indicator in the communication area, and (2) loads

the source symbol load module (SORSYM) into main storage. SORSYM, a SYS1.LINKLIB load module (IEJFAXA0), reserves an area in main storage. The names of all variables and constants used in the source module and their corresponding relative addresses are placed into this area by Phase 12. When the area (3,200 bytes) is full, all subsequent variables and constants are omitted from the object module listing.

If the object listing option is specified, but the object listing facility has not been enabled, Phase 1 indicates an invalid compiler option, by setting the invalid option bit in the communication area.

Loading the Performance Module

Phase 1 examines the PRFRM bit in the communication area to determine if the PRFRM option is in effect. If the PRFRM option is specified, and if the SIZE option is at least 18504, Phase 1 loads the performance module (IEJFAPA0) into main storage. The performance module allows more efficient I/O operations (via fewer OPENS, blocking, and chaining), and reduces phase-to-phase transition processing thereby decreasing compilation time. The performance module is composed of two routines and three tables.

PERFORMANCE MODULE ROUTINES: The performance module contains an I/O routine, and an end-of-phase routine (refer to Charts 12 and 13).

The I/O routine (PIORTN) is used to deblock compiler input on SYSIN; and to block compiler output on SYSLIN, SYSPRINT, and SYSPUNCH, as required by the block sizes specified for the above data sets. In addition, if the ADJUST option is in effect, the I/O routine is used to block the output of Phase 8 on the SYSUT2 data set. The I/O routine also manipulates the text buffer chains for the SYSUT1 and SYSUT2 data sets (refer to the Phase 5 section "Constructing Text Buffer Chains for PRFRM Compilations").

I/O requests for a PRFRM compilation are initiated via a linkage to this routine. (Refer to Appendix C for a description of this linkage to the performance module.) The I/O routine:

- Analyzes the linkage parameters passed to it by the calling phase. These parameters indicate: (1) the type of request (read, write, check, or flush),

(2) the address of the area into which, or from which the logical record is to be moved, and (3) the data set to be used for the operation. (A flush request forces the contents of the current output buffer to be written out.)

- Deblocks compiler input from SYSIN if a blocking factor greater than 1 is specified. The PIORTN routine reads (via a linkage to the SIORTN routine in the interface module) a block from the SYSIN data set into an I/O buffer only when an entire block has been deblocked and moved into the area requested by the calling phase. This reduces the number of READ macro-instructions issued for a compilation and thus decreases compilation time.
- Blocks compiler output on the output data sets if their corresponding blocking factors are greater than 1. (Each blocking factor is determined from the BLKSIZE (block size) field in the DCB parameter of the associated DD statement.) In general, the PIORTN writes (via a linkage to the SIORTN routine in the interface module) a block onto an output data set only when the I/O buffer containing that block has been filled. (However, when a flush operation is requested, the PIORTN will force a truncated buffer to be written if the buffer is partially filled.) This reduces the number of WRITE macro-instructions issued for a compilation and thus decreases compilation time.

The end-of-phase routine (PNEXT) is used to pass control from one component of the compiler to the next for PRFRM compilations. The transferring of control between compiler components is initiated via a linkage to this routine. (Refer to Appendix C for a description of this linkage to the performance module.) The end-of-phase routine:

- Analyzes the linkage parameters passed to it by the component of the compiler relinquishing control. These parameters indicate the name of the next component to be executed, and the disposition of the various data sets.
- Logically repositions the data sets indicated in the linkage parameters via the CLOSE, type=T, macro-instruction. Various pointers and indicators in the communication area, the performance module, and the blocking table are also reset at this time for the repositioned data sets (refer to the Phase 5 section "Constructing Text Buffer Chains for PRFRM Compilations").

- Transfers control to the next component via the XCTL macro-instruction. (If the next component is an interlude, the performance module bypasses the execution of the interlude and transfers control to the next phase of the compiler.)

PERFORMANCE MODULE TABLES: The performance module contains three tables: the blocking table, the BLDL table, and the reset table.

Phase 5 constructs a blocking table entry for each of the data control blocks that are opened by Phase 1. The blocking table provides the PIORTN routine with the information necessary to deblock compiler input, and to block compiler output. (Refer to Appendix H for the format of the blocking table.)

Phase 5 constructs the BLDL table via the BLDL macro-instruction. The BLDL table provides the PNEXT routine with the information necessary to transfer control from one component of the compiler to the next with more efficiency than is possible on a SPACE run. (Refer to Appendix H for the format of the BLDL table.)

The reset table (RESETABL) is used by the PNEXT routine to determine which, if any, of the record counts for the chained-buffer data sets (SYSUT1 and SYSUT2) must be reset. The record count of the data set that is to be used for output by the next phase is always reset. Resetting the record count is necessary in order to determine whether actual READs are required for that data set when it is used as input by a subsequent phase. (Refer to Appendix H for a description of the format and use of the reset table.)

Opening Required Data Control Blocks

The data control blocks that are opened by Phase 1 depends upon the options specified by the user.

If the SPACE option is in effect, or if the SIZE option is less than 18504, Phase 1 opens, via the OPEN macro-instruction, only the data control blocks for the data sets used by Phases 5, 7, 10D, and 10E (SYSIN, SYSUT1, and SYSPRINT). (In addition, if the ADJUST option is in effect, Phase 1 opens the data control block for SYSUT2. SYSUT2 is used to contain the output of Phase 8.) The main storage that is saved

at this time by not opening the data control blocks for SYSLIN SYSPUNCH, and SYSUT2 (if the ADJUST option is not in effect) is necessary for the execution of Phases 10D and 10E. (The SYSLIN and SYSPUNCH data sets are not needed by the compiler until the execution of Phase 12. Therefore, their corresponding data control blocks are not opened until the execution of Interlude 10E.)

If the PRFRM option is in effect, and if the SIZE option is at least 18504, Phase 1 opens (via the OPEN macro-instruction) the data control blocks for all the data sets required by the compiler. Because all the required data control blocks are opened initially, the compiler can bypass the execution of Interludes 10E, 14, and 15; and can avoid repeated closing and re-opening of data control blocks. Bypassing the execution of the interludes reduces phase-to-phase transition time and thus decreases compilation time.

The manipulation of data control blocks by subsequent components of the compiler for SPACE compilations as well as for PRFRM compilations is illustrated in Appendix D.

Loading Phase 5

Phase 5 (IEJFCAA0) is loaded into main storage by Phase 1, using the LOAD macro-instruction. This is not the normal condition; normally, the XCTL macro-instruction in the end-of-phase routine is used to call a phase into main storage.

Phase 1 loads Phase 5 into the highest area of available main storage, relative to location zero. (The XCTL macro-instruction would load Phase 5 into the lowest area of available main storage.) This special loading by Phase 1 permits Phase 5 to set up the resident tables in the lowest area of available main storage. The physical locations occupied by the various compiler components and resident tables are illustrated in Appendix A.

SUBSEQUENT ENTRIES

At subsequent entries, Phase 1 either:

- Initiates a new compilation, or
- Terminates the compilation.

Initiating a New Compilation

If a new compilation is to be initiated, Phase 1 first determines if a PRFRM or a SPACE compilation is to be performed. If a PRFRM compilation is to be performed, Phase 1 immediately transfers control to Phase 7.

If a SPACE compilation is to be performed, Phase 1 determines if a restart condition exists. That is, if a PRFRM compilation was requested and Phase 5 determined that the required main storage for the PRFRM compilation was not available, Phase 5 then alters the PRFRM compilation to a SPACE compilation and returns control to Phase 1.

If a restart condition exists, Phase 1: (1) deletes (via the DELETE macro-instruction) the performance module and Phase 5 from main storage, (2) closes (via the CLOSE macro-instruction) the data control blocks for all required compiler data sets (opened by Phase 1 for the PRFRM option), and (3) reopens (via the OPEN macro-instruction) only the data control blocks for the data sets required for Phases 7, 8 (if the ADJUST option is in effect), 10D, and 10E. Phase 1 then loads (via the LOAD macro-instruction) Phase 5 into main storage and transfers control to Phase 5.

If a restart condition does not exist and if the SPACE option is in effect, Phase 1 first frees (via the FREEMAIN macro-instruction) the main storage that was previously allocated to the compiler during execution of Phase 5 for the internal text buffers and the overflow table. Subsequent Phase 1 processing except for the deletion of the performance module and Phase 5 is the same as that described for the restart condition.

Terminating the Compilation

If the last source module on the SYSIN data set has been compiled, Phase 1 first requests a flush operation for the SYSLIN, SYSPUNCH, and SYSPRINT data sets. A flush request forces the current output buffer being used for a blocked data set to be written. This insures that all compiler output for blocked data sets is written. In the case of an unblocked data set, the flush request for that data set is ignored. Phase 1 next closes (via the CLOSE macro-instruction) the data control blocks for all the data sets used by the compiler. Phase 1 then: (1) frees (via the FREEMAIN macro-instruction) all the main storage that was allocated to the compiler during

execution of Phase 5, and (2) deletes (via the DELETE macro-instruction) the interface module, the performance module for a PRFRM compilation, and the source symbol module if the object listing option is in effect. Control is then returned to the calling program with the proper return code.

If internal errors (e.g., permanent I/O errors) occur at any time, the current compilation is immediately terminated by calling Phase 1. Phase 1 then performs the above processing and returns control to the calling program with a return code of 16.

PHASE 5 (IEJFCAA0)

Phase 5, the second phase of the compiler, is entered after the completion of Phase 1. It is executed for each source module in a batch SPACE compilation but only for the first source module in a batch PRFRM compilation. The functions of the phase are:

- Obtaining main storage for the compiler.
- Allocating main storage to the compiler.
- Constructing SYSUT1 and SYSUT2 text buffer chains if the PRFRM option is in effect.
- Constructing some of the resident tables that are used by the compiler.

Chart 20 illustrates the overall logic and the relationship among the routines of Phase 5. Table 3, the routine directory, lists the routines used in the phase and their functions.

At the conclusion of Phase 5 processing, control is passed either to Phase 1 (to restart or terminate the compilation), or to Phase 7.

OBTAINING MAIN STORAGE

The amount of main storage required by the compiler depends on whether a SPACE or a PRFRM compilation is being performed. For a SPACE compilation, a minimum of 15,360 bytes is required. For a PRFRM compilation, a minimum of approximately 19,500 bytes is required. (The exact amount depends on the device configuration of the user. That is, different I/O devices require different access method routines and different control blocks.)

The process of obtaining main storage is actually started in Phase 1. Phase 1 has already obtained main storage for:

- The interface module.
- The performance module if loaded.
- BSAM routines.
- Phase 5.

Phase 5, upon receiving control from Phase 1, calculates the total amount of main storage obtained by Phase 1, and subtracts this amount from the value of the SIZE option. (If the SIZE option was not specified by the user, the minimum amount required for a SPACE compilation is assumed as a default value for the SIZE option.) The result of this calculation is the amount of main storage that Phase 5 attempts to obtain via the GETMAIN macro-instruction. If more than this amount is obtained, Phase 5 frees the excess via the FREEMAIN macro-instruction.

If less than the minimum amount required for a SPACE compilation is obtained, a GETMAIN (mode=U) macro-instruction is issued to obtain the minimum amount.

If less than the minimum amount required for a PRFRM compilation is obtained, the compilation is either terminated if blocking was requested, or restarted (altered to a SPACE compilation) if blocking was not requested.

ALLOCATING MAIN STORAGE

The procedure used by Phase 5 for allocating main storage depends on whether a SPACE or a PRFRM compilation has been initiated. Appendix A illustrates the main storage allocated to the compiler for both SPACE and PRFRM compilations.

For SPACE Compilations

For a SPACE compilation, the main storage obtained by Phase 5 is allocated, via the storage allocation table, among a transient work area required by the control program (952 bytes for SPACE runs; 1800 bytes for PRFRM runs), the dictionary, the overflow table, four internal text buffers, and padding for Phase 10E. The storage allocation table (refer to Appendix I) indicates the amount of main storage to be allocated to the internal text buffers, and the dictionary and overflow table.

The main storage allocated to the dictionary and overflow table, except for the reserved word portion of the dictionary, may be segmented. That is, the dictionary and overflow table may occupy more than one segment of main storage. The location of the segments allocated to the dictionary and overflow table are recorded

(sequentially by address) in a segment address list (SEGMAL). SEGMAL resides at the beginning of the first segment. The FOVFLNDX field in the communication area is initialized to point to the beginning location of the overflow index, which is also the location immediately following the last entry in SEGMAL. (Phase 5 initializes FOVFLNDX although the actual loading into main storage of the overflow index occurs in Phase 7.)

The dictionary portions reside in the highest storage segment(s) relative to location 0 and the overflow table portions reside in the lowest storage segment(s). This ensures that the dictionary resides "above" the overflow table. The dictionary must reside above the overflow table because the storage allocated to the dictionary is freed (via the FREEMAIN macro-instruction) for SPACE compilations at the conclusion of Phase 14 processing. This additional main storage is required for the execution of subsequent phases, primarily for Phase 15 (refer to Appendix A). (For PRFRM compilations, the main storage allocated to the dictionary is not freed until compilation is terminated by Phase 1.)

The main storage allocated to the internal text buffers may be segmented. However, the main storage for each buffer itself must be contiguous. The location of the segment assigned to each buffer is indicated in the communication area.

For PRFRM Compilations

For a PRFRM compilation, the main storage allocation algorithm must determine if blocked I/O is specified by the user.

BLOCKED I/O: If any blocked I/O is specified, portions of the obtained main storage must be allocated to special I/O buffers required for blocking and deblocking. Phase 5 allocates main storage for two I/O buffers for each data set for which blocking is requested. The size of each buffer is determined by the BLKSIZE field in the DCB parameter of the associated DD statement. If the BLKSIZE fields are not specified, the compiler assumes the following default values for the compiler data sets:

- SYSPRINT -- 121.
- SYSIN, SYSLIN, and SYSPUNCH -- 80.
- The block sizes for SYSUT1 and SYSUT2 are determined dynamically by the compiler.

After allocating main storage for the special I/O buffers, Phase 5 determines if sufficient storage remains for the tran-

sient work area, the dictionary and overflow table, the four internal text buffers, and padding for Phase 15. If there is sufficient storage, subsequent main storage allocation for a PRFRM compilation with blocked I/O is the same as that described for a SPACE compilation except for the construction of internal text buffer chains.

If the remaining main storage is not sufficient, the compilation is terminated and control is transferred to Phase 1. Phase 1, in turn, passes control to the calling program to terminate the compilation.

UNBLOCKED I/O: If all I/O is unblocked, Phase 5 determines if the amount of main storage obtained is sufficient for the transient work area, the dictionary and overflow table, and the four internal text buffers. If there is sufficient storage, subsequent main storage allocation for a PRFRM compilation with unblocked I/O is the same as that described for a SPACE compilation except for the construction of internal text buffer chains.

If the amount of main storage obtained is not sufficient, Phase 5 first frees (via the FREEMAIN macro-instruction) all the main storage it obtained. Phase 5 then alters the PRFRM compilation to a SPACE compilation (restart condition) and transfers control to Phase 1. Phase 1 then initializes the compiler for a SPACE compilation.

CONSTRUCTING TEXT BUFFER CHAINS FOR PRFRM COMPILATIONS

After main storage has been allocated to the transient work area, the dictionary and the overflow table, the four internal text buffers, and any required I/O buffers for blocking, Phase 5 uses as much of the remaining main storage as possible (up to the value of the SIZE option) by constructing text buffer chains.

The text buffer chains are used when reading from or writing onto the intermediate text work data sets (SYSUT1 and SYSUT2). Two text buffer chains are constructed for both the SYSUT1 and SYSUT2 data sets. One of the four internal text buffers, already allocated by Phase 5, (referred to as the I/O text buffers) is then chained in as the last buffer in each of the text buffer chains. Only the I/O text buffers are ever read into or written from. The intermediate text in the remaining buffers (referred to as non-I/O text buffers) is retained in main storage.

The maximum number of buffers in each chain is a function of the number of segments into which the remaining main storage is divided. The minimum size of each I/O buffer is 96 bytes; the maximum size is 1,696 bytes. The minimum size of each non-I/O buffer is 16 bytes; the maximum size is 32,760 bytes.

Each buffer in a chain (including the I/O text buffer) is preceded by an eight-byte control area. Each control area contains: (1) a chain address field (four bytes), and (2) a length field (four bytes).

Figure 3 illustrates a text buffer chain that contains N buffers.

Because only the last buffer in each of the two chains associated with a particular data set is used as an I/O buffer, a portion of the SYSUT1 or SYSUT2 data sets

resides in main storage. For example, consider the case in which SYSUT1 is used to contain the intermediate text input to a phase and SYSUT2 is used to contain the intermediate text output of a phase. Since part of the SYSUT1 data set resides in main storage (i.e., buffers 1 through N-1 in the two chains constructed for SYSUT1, where each chain contains N buffers), the phase being executed requires fewer read operations.

In addition, a portion of the output data set (SYSUT2) will reside in main storage (i.e., buffers 1 through N-1 in the two chains constructed for SYSUT2, where each chain contains N buffers). Therefore, the phase being executed requires fewer write operations. As a result of retaining portions of SYSUT1 and SYSUT2 in main storage, overall compiler efficiency is increased because of a decrease in I/O activity.

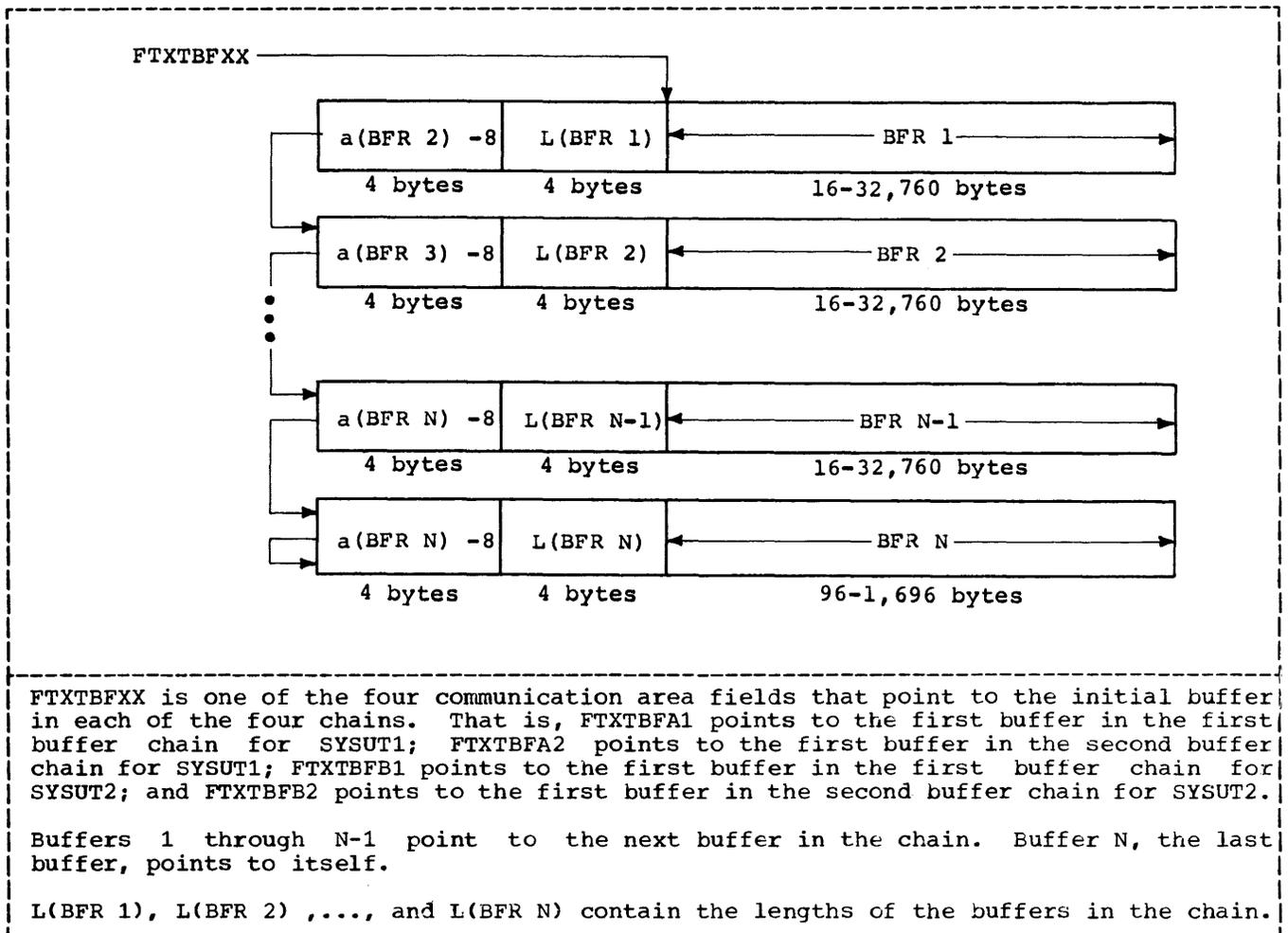


Figure 3. Text Buffer Chain Format

The buffers in each of the two chains constructed for a particular data set are used alternately. That is, buffer 1 in chain 1, buffer 1 in chain 2, buffer 2 in chain 1, buffer 2 in chain 2, etc. For example, consider the case in which SYSUT1 is being used as the output data set. Assume that each of the two chains constructed for SYSUT1 contain three buffers. Figure 4 shows the order in which the buffers are used. (The numbers to the right of each buffer indicate the order.)

FTXTBFA1 is initialized to point to the first buffer in chain 1; FTXTBFA2 is initialized to point to the first buffer in chain 2.

The contents of the first two buffers in each chain remain in main storage. That is, when the phase in control links to the PIORTN routine for an output operation involving those buffers, the PIORTN routine recognizes that neither of these buffers is the last buffer in the respective chain. The PIORTN routine does not initiate a write from these buffers; it inserts the address of the next buffer (in the current chain) into the FTXTBFA1 field and its size into the FTXBFSZA field in the communication area, and then returns control to the phase.

The phase then switches the contents of the FTXTBFA1 and FTXTBFA2 fields. This enables the alternate filling of the buffers in both chains because the phase always requests a write from the address of the buffer in the FTXTBFA1 field.

When the phase requests a write either from the last buffer in chain 1, or from

the last buffer in chain 2, the PIORTN routine actually initiates a write operation. Because the I/O buffers are also used alternately, all write operations from this point on are overlapped. (Similarly, all read operations are overlapped when the first N-1 buffers in both chains have been used.) After execution of the phase in question is completed, control is passed to the PNEXT routine in the performance module. The PNEXT routine reinitializes: (1) the contents of the FTXTBFA1, FTXTBFA2, FTXTBFB1, and FTXTBFB2 fields in the communication area so that they point to the first buffer in each chain, and (2) the PINITBFS field in the performance module. (The FINITBFS field in the communication area contains these pointers.) In addition, the last two 1-byte fields are reinitialized in the blocking table entry for each data set that is TCLOSED by the PNEXT routine.

Note 1: A count is kept of the number of records actually written on the intermediate text output data set (SYSUT1 or SYSUT2) during the execution of each phase. If this count is not greater than two, the next phase that uses the output data set as input does not read any records because all the intermediate text input is in main storage.

Note 2: For a PRFRM and ADJUST compilation, the output from Phase 8 is automatically blocked on SYSUT2. The I/O text buffers (the last buffer in each of the buffer chains constructed for SYSUT2) are used as the special blocking buffers for SYSUT2. The blocking factor for SYSUT2

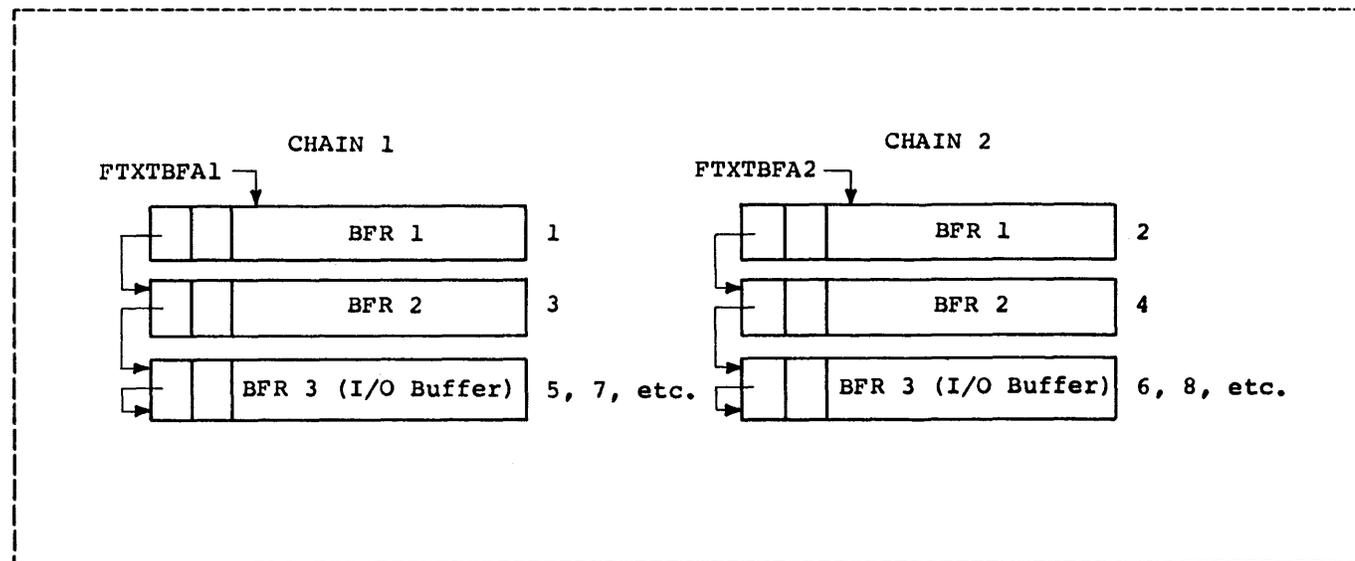


Figure 4. Text Buffer Chain Use

(computed by Phase 5) is the largest integral multiple of 80 based on the size of the I/O text buffers. Phase 5 inserts the blocking factor and the addresses of the buffers into the performance module blocking table entry for SYSUT2.

(100 bytes) in the interface module. Posting consists of: (1) converting the contents of a patch record into a format that is usable to the patch routine, and (2) moving the converted patch record to the patch table. When the patch table is full, any further patches are ignored and are not placed on the SYSPRINT data set.

CONSTRUCTING RESIDENT TABLES

The following resident tables of the compiler (described in Appendix H) are constructed by Phase 5:

- The segment address list (SEGMAL).
- The patch table.
- The blocking table and the BLDL table (resident only for PRFRM compilations).

SEGMAL is constructed as main storage segments are allocated to the dictionary and the overflow table. The patch table, a portion of the interface module, is constructed only if the patch facility has been enabled and if patch records precede the source statements of the source module(s) being compiled. The blocking table and the BLDL table, portions of the performance module, are constructed only for PRFRM compilations.

SEGMAL

SEGMAL contains the starting and ending addresses of each main storage segment allocated to the dictionary and the overflow table. The starting address and the length of each segment is obtained as a result of the GETMAIN macro-instruction. Phase 5 then computes the ending address of each segment, and enters both the starting and ending address for each segment into SEGMAL. This sequence of addresses constitutes SEGMAL.

Patch Table

If the patch facility of the compiler has been enabled, Phase 5 determines if the first record read from SYSIN is a patch record. (The patch facility is enabled by reassembling Phase 5 with the branch instruction that disables the patch facility either removed or replaced with a no-op instruction.) If the first record is a patch record, it is first listed on SYSPRINT and then posted in the patch table

Blocking Table and BLDL Table

Phase 5 constructs the blocking table and the BLDL table only for PRFRM compilations. The performance module contains the main storage required for these tables.

Phase 5 constructs a blocking table entry for each of the data control blocks that were opened by Phase 1. Phase 5 places information into the blocking table that is required for deblocking compiler input and blocking compiler output. This information includes such things as: logical record length, blocking factor, pointers to the special buffers allocated by Phase 5, etc.

Phase 5 constructs the BLDL table via the BLDL macro-instruction. (For a description of the BLDL macro-instruction, refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: Data Management.) The BLDL table contains the information necessary to transfer control, more efficiently than for a SPACE compilation, from one component of the compiler to the next. The construction of the BLDL table reduces phase-to-phase transition time and thereby decreases compilation time.

PHASE 7 (IEJFEEA0)

Phase 7 is entered either after the completion of Phase 1 for PRFRM compilations other than the first compilation in a batch compilation, or after the completion of Phase 5 for all other compilations. The functions of Phase 7 are:

- Initializing the dictionary and the overflow table.
- Initializing the communication area.
- Deleting Phase 5 if loaded.

In addition, Phase 7 prints the heading for each compilation on the SYSPRINT data set.

At the conclusion of Phase 7 processing, control is passed to Phase 8 if the ADJUST option is specified, or to Phase 10D if the NOADJUST option is specified.

Chart 30 illustrates the overall logic of Phase 7.

INITIALIZING THE OVERFLOW TABLE AND THE DICTIONARY

Phase 7 constructs only those portions of the dictionary and the overflow table that are independent of the source module being compiled. In the dictionary, the dictionary index and the reserved word portion are constructed. In the overflow table, the overflow table index is constructed. Refer to Appendix H for a discussion of the dictionary and the overflow table.

The index for the dictionary and the index for the overflow table are used by the compiler to enter information into and obtain information from the respective table. The reserved word portion of the dictionary contains all the reserved words of the FORTRAN IV (E) language. Both indexes and the reserved word portion of the dictionary are assembled as a part of the Phase 7 load module.

Overflow Table Index

Phase 7 obtains the starting location of the overflow table index from the FOVFLNDX field in the communication area. The overflow table index is then moved from the Phase 7 load module into the appropriate location in main storage.

Dictionary Index and Reserved Word Portion

Phase 7 examines SEGMAL and determines the main storage locations into which the dictionary index and the reserved word portion of the dictionary are to be placed. The dictionary index is placed into the highest portion of the last segment allocated to the dictionary. The reserved word portion is placed immediately below the start of the dictionary index.

Figure 5 shows the relative main storage locations occupied by the dictionary index, the reserved word portion of the dictionary, the dictionary itself, the overflow table, the overflow table index, and SEGMAL.

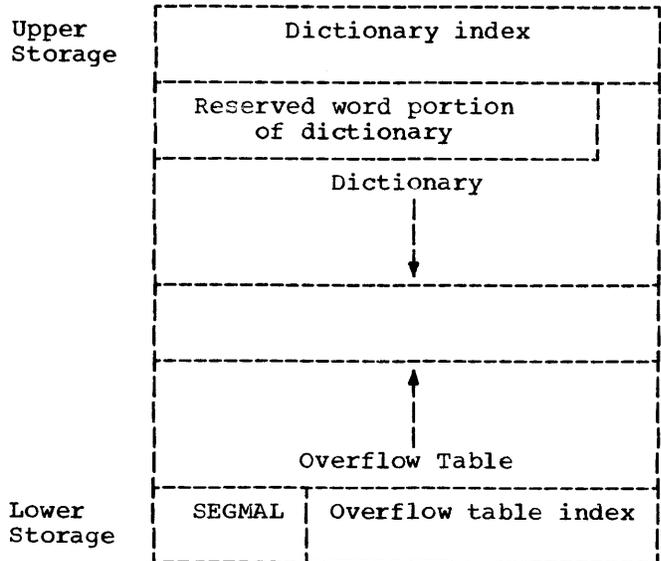


Figure 5. Relative Main Storage Locations Occupied by Dictionary and Overflow Table Elements, and SEGMAL

Note: The dictionary is built from upper storage to lower storage; the overflow table is built from lower storage to upper storage. If the dictionary and overflow table overlap, a message is issued; no new entries are made; and compilation continues.

INITIALIZING THE COMMUNICATION AREA

While Phase 7 is initializing the dictionary and overflow table, various fields in the communication area are filled in. The fields are:

- FOVFLNXT
- FOVFLBLK
- FDICTNDX
- FDICTNXT
- FDICTBLK

FOVFLNXT is initialized to contain the starting address of the overflow table.

FOVFLBLK is initialized to contain a pointer to the location within SEGMAL that contains the ending address of the main storage segment currently being used for the overflow table. (This address is used to determine the end of the current overflow table segment.)

FDICTNDX is initialized to contain the starting address of the dictionary index.

FDICTNXT is used to contain the starting address of the dictionary (that is, the reserved word portion of the dictionary).

FDICTBLK is initialized to contain a pointer to the location within SEGMA1 that contains the starting address of the main storage segment currently being used for the dictionary. (Since the dictionary is built from upper storage to lower storage, the starting address of each main storage segment used for the dictionary is used to determine the end of the current segment.)

DELETING PHASE 5 IF LOADED

Before Phase 7 transfers control to the next phase to be executed, it first writes the heading line on the SYSPRINT data set and then determines whether Phase 5 was loaded into main storage by Phase 1. Phase 1 loads Phase 5 into main storage if: (1) a SPACE compilation is being performed, or (2) the first source module in a batch PRFRM compilation is being compiled. If Phase 5 is in main storage, Phase 7 deletes Phase 5 from storage (via the DELETE macro-instruction), and then transfers control to the next phase (Phase 8 or Phase 10D).

PHASE 8 (IEJFFAAO)

Phase 8 is only loaded into main storage and executed if the ADJUST option is in effect. Phase 8 is entered after the completion of Phase 7 processing. The functions of the phase are:

- Eliminating embedded blanks in FORTRAN statements.
- Adding a special character to all FORTRAN keywords in a source module that are used as variables, arrays, or external names.
- Inserting meaningful blanks between successive words in FORTRAN statements.

Phase 8 converts source statements written in the FORTRAN IV (E) language into a format that is acceptable to Phases 10D and 10E. Phases 10D and 10E require that: (1) keywords be reserved for compiler use, (2) none of the names used in the source module contain embedded blanks, and (3) successive names within any statement be separated by blanks.

In addition Phase 8 prepares a source module listing if the SOURCE option is specified by the user.

Upon completion of Phase 8 processing, control is passed to Phase 10D.

Figure 6 illustrates the data flow within Phase 8.

Chart 40 illustrates the overall logic and the relationship among the routines of Phase 8. Table 4, the routine directory, lists the routines used in the phase and their functions.

Note: All input and output operations are double buffered. This increases overall Phase 8 efficiency by overlapping normal processing with I/O operations. In addition, for a PRFRM and ADJUST compilation, the output from Phase 8 is automatically blocked on SYSUT2. The blocking factor is determined internally by Phase 5 and is inserted into the DCB skeleton for SYSUT2.

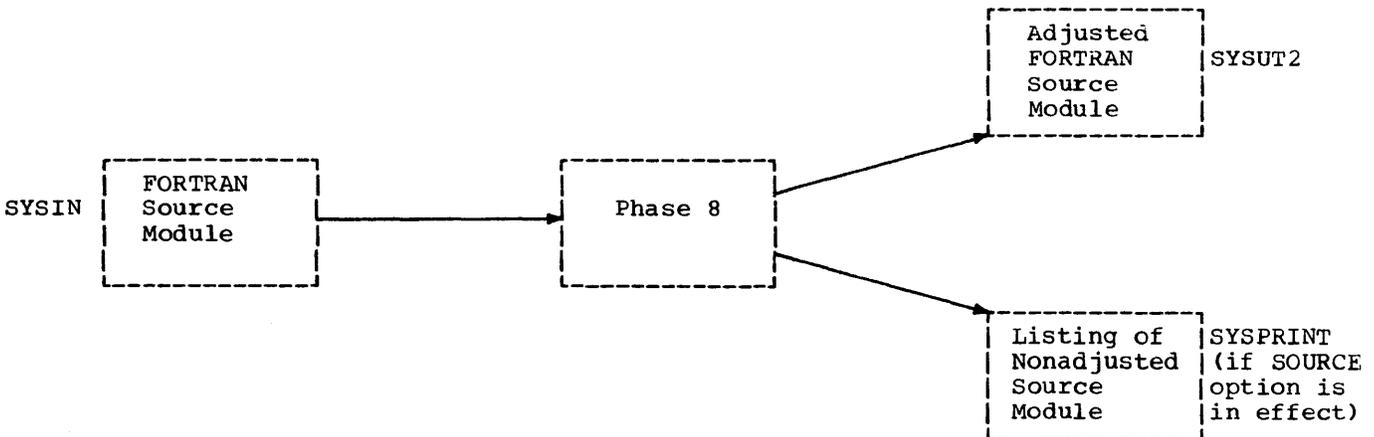


Figure 6. Phase 8 Data Flow

ELIMINATING EMBEDDED BLANKS

Each source statement consists of one or more card images. To eliminate the embedded blanks in those statements, each card image is first read into one of the two I/O buffers in the interface module. The card image is then moved to a primary work area where it is scanned for names and delimiters via the translate and test (TRT) instruction. (If the SOURCE option is specified by the user, each card image is written from the input buffer onto the SYSPRINT data set after that card image has been moved to the primary work area.)

If a statement number defines the statement in question, it is packed and then moved from the primary work area to the current output buffer. The portion of the card image up to and including the delimiter that terminates the execution of the TRT instruction is packed (i.e., blanks are eliminated) and is then moved to an intermediate work area. The process of packing successive segments of each card image is repeated for all the card images on the SYSIN data set for the source module currently being compiled. When the END statement is encountered, Phase 8 writes on the SYSUT2 data set, either the first statement of the next subprogram to be compiled, or an end-of-file (EOF) if no more input is present.

Note: A special switch is set if the statement in question is a FORMAT statement so that any blanks in the H and quote fields are not eliminated.

For example, consider the following statement as it appears as input to Phase 8.

```
1 F O R M A T (1 H , I 10)
```

The output from Phase 8 for this statement is:

```
1 FORMAT(1H ,I10)
```

The process of adding a special character to all keywords that are used as variables occurs at the same time that blanks are being eliminated.

ADDING SPECIAL CHARACTERS

After each packed segment of a card image is moved to the intermediate work area, Phase 8 checks to see if that segment contains a keyword. A keyword may be a word that begins any permissible FORTRAN (IV) E source statement (e.g., READ) other

than an arithmetic statement or a statement function. A keyword may also be contained in an arithmetic statement or an arithmetic expression. (For example, in the statement A=FLOAT(1), FLOAT is a keyword.)

Phase 8 assumes that all FORTRAN statements are arithmetic statements until determined otherwise. Therefore, whenever a FORTRAN keyword is encountered, a special unprintable character is added to it to indicate to Phases 10D and 10E that the keyword is possibly being used as a variable, array, or external name. This is done by inserting the special character between the last character of the keyword and the next delimiter in the packed segment.

Further examination of the statement indicates whether the keyword is being used as a variable, array or external name, or as a normal keyword. If the keyword is not being used as a variable, array, or external name, the special character is removed so that Phase 10D or Phase 10E recognizes the normal use as a keyword. The special characters are removed prior to moving the statement to the current output buffer.

INSERTING MEANINGFUL BLANKS

When an entire card image has been packed and placed into the intermediate work area, it is prepared for output. Phases 10D and 10E do not allow blanks to be omitted between successive words of a statement. Phase 8, prior to writing out the packed card image inserts a blank between any such words in a source statement.

For example, consider the following statement after it has been packed by Phase 8:

```
DIMENSIONABC(10)
```

Prior to moving the statement to the current output buffer, a blank is inserted so that the statement is written out as:

```
DIMENSION ABC(10)
```

PHASE 10D (IEJFGAAO)

Phase 10D is entered either after the completion of Phase 7 if the NOADJUST option is in effect, or after the completion of Phase 8 if the ADJUST option is in effect. Phase 10D processes the declarative statements of the source module, which are COMMON, DIMENSION, EQUIVALENCE,

INTEGER, REAL, DOUBLE PRECISION, EXTERNAL, FORMAT, DEFINE FILE, and SUBROUTINE or FUNCTION (if a subprogram is being compiled).

If the NOADJUST option is specified, the input to Phase 10D resides on the SYSIN data set. If the ADJUST option is specified, the input to Phase 10D resides on the SYSUT2 data set.

Declarative statements, other than the FORMAT statement, must precede the statement function definitions and the executable statements. The executable statements are all FORTRAN IV (E) statements other than those listed above and statement function definitions.

In processing the declarative statements, Phase 10D performs the following functions:

- Prepares intermediate text.
- Constructs dictionary and overflow table entries.
- Prepares the first part of the source statement listing if the SOURCE and NOADJUST options are in effect.

Phase 10D and Phase 10E (the next phase to be executed) convert each FORTRAN source statement into usable input to subsequent

phases of the compiler. Phase 10D converts the declarative statements; Phase 10E converts the statement function definitions and the executable statements. The result of this conversion is intermediate text (an internal representation of the source statements), and the dictionary and overflow table that contain detailed information about specific portions of the statements.

The information in the dictionary and overflow table supplements the intermediate text in the generation of code by subsequent phases. This information is associated with the intermediate text entries via pointers that reside in the text entries.

When a statement function definition or an executable statement is encountered in the input stream, control is passed to Phase 10E.

Figure 7 illustrates the data flow within the phase.

Chart 50 indicates the overall logic and the relationship among the routines of Phase 10D. Table 6, the routine directory, lists the routines used in the phase and their functions.

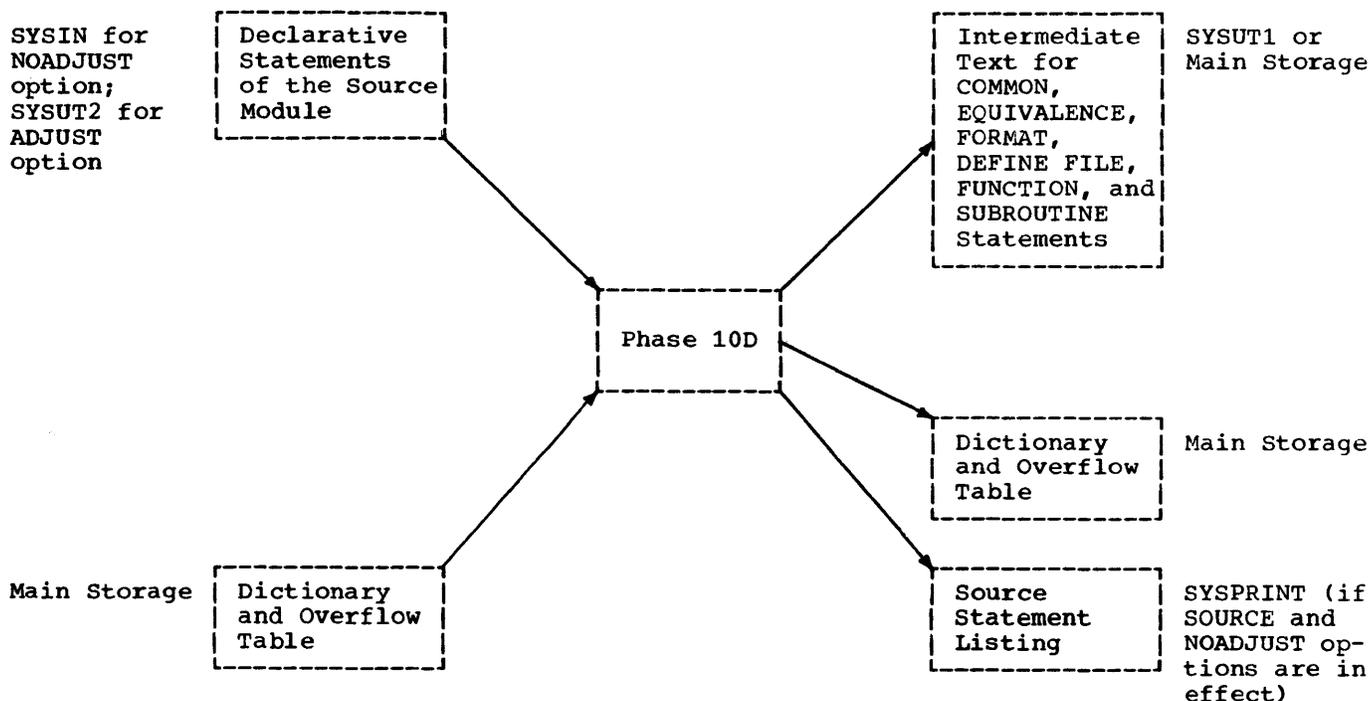


Figure 7. Phase 10D Data Flow

CREATING INTERMEDIATE TEXT FOR DECLARATIVE STATEMENTS

Phase 10D produces intermediate text, which is the form in which information is transmitted from the source module to the processing phases. (Refer to Appendix E for a description of the source statement scan required for intermediate text preparation.)

Intermediate text is prepared for FORMAT, DEFINE FILE, FUNCTION, and SUBROUTINE declarative statements. (Refer to Appendix F for the intermediate text format.) This text is used to transmit these statements to Phases 14, 15, 20, and 25.

In addition to creating intermediate text for DEFINE FILE statements, Phase 10D makes the following validity checks for the statements.

- To see that the unit numbers (i.e., data set reference numbers) defined in the statements do not exceed 99, and that the unit numbers are not multiply defined.
- To see that the maximum number of records per defined unit does not exceed 2^{24} .
- To see that the associated variable for each unit is a nonsubscripted integer variable.

Phase 10D also accumulates the number of direct access data sets in DEFINE FILE statements in the DEFILCT field of the communication area. This field is examined by Phase 25 to determine if a DEFINE FILE statement was included in the source module. (If a DEFINE FILE statement was included in the source module, Phase 25 generates, as a part of the object module, a calling sequence to the file definition section of IHCDIOSE -- the direct access I/O data management interface.)

For COMMON and EQUIVALENCE statements, a special form of intermediate text is created. (Refer to Appendix F for the format.) These special forms of text transmit the corresponding statements to Phase 12.

Note: The input to Phase 12 is COMMON and EQUIVALENCE text mixed with regular intermediate text. If all COMMON and EQUIVALENCE text precedes all other intermediate text, Phase 12, at its conclusion, does not reposition the SYSUT1 data set to its beginning. (That is, Phase 14 can start reading SYSUT1 from where it is positioned.) In either case, Phase 14 deletes COMMON and EQUIVALENCE text when it is encountered.

CONSTRUCTING DICTIONARY AND OVERFLOW TABLE ENTRIES

Dictionary and overflow table entries are made during Phase 10D for:

- Symbols appearing within declarative statements.
- Statement numbers associated with declarative statements.

Entries are made to the dictionary (refer to Appendix H) for symbols appearing in all declarative statements except the FORMAT statements. If any symbol is already entered in the dictionary, that entry is modified, if necessary, to reflect any new information about the symbol under consideration. For example, if the symbol is in COMMON, an indicator in the dictionary is set on.

Entries are made to the overflow table (refer to Appendix H) for:

- Statement numbers.
- Dimension information.

PHASE 10E (IEJFJAA0)

Phase 10E is entered after the completion of Phase 10D. The functions of the phase are:

- Creation of intermediate text.
- Construction of dictionary and overflow table entries.
- Completion of the preparation of the source statement listing if the SOURCE and NOADJUST options are in effect.

If the NOADJUST option is specified, the input to Phase 10E resides on the SYSIN data set. If the ADJUST option is specified, the input to Phase 10E resides on the SYSUT2 data set.

Phase 10E processes SFs (statement functions), the executable statements of the source module, and any FORMAT statements interspersed among them. As each SF, executable, or FORMAT statement appears in the input stream, intermediate text is prepared and corresponding entries are made to the dictionary and the overflow table. The intermediate text prepared by Phase 10E

represents the executable source module statements. The dictionary and overflow table entries complement intermediate text. (For the formats of the intermediate text and the dictionary and overflow table, refer to Appendixes F and H, respectively.) If any syntactical errors are encountered during the processing of an SF, executable, or FORMAT statement, error intermediate text entries are made immediately following the intermediate text entries for the statement in which the error was detected.

When the END statement or an end-of-file (EOF) is encountered, Phase 10E passes control either to Interlude 10E (IEJFJGA0) for SPACE compilations, or to Phase 12 for PRFRM compilations.

Note: When the END statement is encountered, Phase 10E determines, by reading the next record of the input data set, if a new compilation, after the current one, is to be initiated. If an end-of-file is encountered, Phase 10E indicates to Phase 1, by setting a bit in the communication area, that the current compilation is the last compilation. If another record exists, Phase 1 initiates a new compilation at the end of the current one.

Figure 8 illustrates the data flow within the phase. The input data set (SYSIN or SYSUT2), and the output data sets (SYSUT1 and SYSPRINT) are not repositioned after Phase 10D. Therefore, Phase 10E can continue to read from SYSIN or SYSUT2 and to write onto SYSUT1 and SYSPRINT.

Chart 60 illustrates the overall logic and the relationship among the routines of Phase 10E. Table 8, the routine directory, lists the routines used in the phase and their functions.

CREATING INTERMEDIATE TEXT FOR STATEMENT FUNCTIONS, EXECUTABLE STATEMENTS, AND FORMAT STATEMENTS

Phase 10E produces intermediate text for each SF and executable statement, and for any FORMAT statements among them. (Refer to Appendix E for a description of the source statement scan required for intermediate text preparation.)

For a subscripted expression appearing within a statement, a unique intermediate text entry of two words is made (refer to Appendix F). The offset of the subscripted expression (for which a field in this unique text entry is reserved) is computed by Phase 10E. For a discussion of this aspect of subscripted expressions, refer to Appendix G.

Note: Phase 10E performs a special check for the READ, WRITE, and FIND direct access I/O statements. (The direct access FIND statement is treated, at compile-time, as a direct access READ statement without format and list.) A check is performed to see if the parameter indicating the relative position, within the data set, of the record to be read or written involves an arithmetic expression other than a constant or single nonsubscripted variable. If the parameter involves such an expression, Phase 10E generates the intermediate text, in the form of an arithmetic expression, that is required to evaluate the expression. Phase 10E then sets a switch (FDATEMP) in the communication area. This switch indicates to Phase 15 that main storage for a special work area must be allocated. The special work area is used, at object-time, to contain the value of the expression.

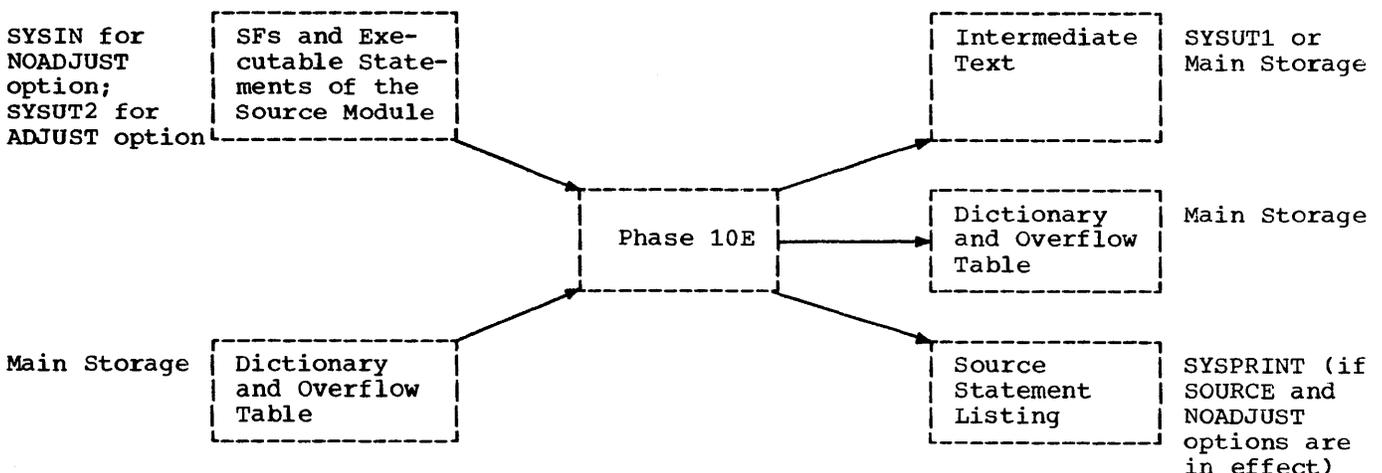


Figure 8. Phase 10E Data Flow

CONSTRUCTING DICTIONARY AND OVERFLOW TABLE ENTRIES

Phase 10E makes entries to the dictionary for:

- Variables.
- Constants.
- Subprograms.
- Data set reference numbers.

(Refer to Appendix H for the format and content of these entries.)

Phase 10E makes entries to the overflow table for:

- Subscripted expressions appearing in the executable statements.
- Statement numbers associated with FOR-MAT statements or executable statements.

(Refer to Appendix H for the format and content of these entries.)

PHASE 12 (IEJFLAAO)

Phase 12 is entered either after the completion of Interlude 10E for SPACE compilations, or after the completion of Phase 10E for PRFRM compilations. The functions of the phase are:

- Address assignment.
- EQUIVALENCE statement processing.
- Branch list table preparation.
- Card image preparation.
- Preparation of a storage map if the MAP option is specified (a minor function).

Address assignment is the allocation of relative storage locations to:

- Variables and arrays in COMMON.
- Variables and arrays not in COMMON.
- Equated variables.
- Variables in subscripted expressions.
- Double-precision constants.
- Real and integer constants.

Addresses are assigned in the order in which they are listed.

If the object listing facility of the compiler has been enabled and if the object listing option is specified, Phase 12 places the names of all variables and constants used in the source module and their corresponding relative addresses into the SORSYM load module. (SORSYM was previously loaded into main storage by Phase 1.)

When the SORSYM module is full, all subsequent variables and constants are ignored and do not appear on the object module listing.

Processing of the EQUIVALENCE text occurs after the assignment of addresses to variables and arrays in COMMON but before the assignment of addresses to other dictionary entries.

EQUIVALENCE text processing assigns relative positions to the variables specified in the EQUIVALENCE statements. These relative positions are indicated in a table, which is created and used to assign relative addresses to the variables according to their position in the table.

After the assignment of addresses to real and integer constants, Phase 12 prepares a branch list table, which is used to control branching within the object module.

During the assignment of addresses by Phase 12, ESD, TXT, and RLD card images are generated for section definitions, literals, and external references.

In addition to the preceding functions, Phase 12 prepares a storage map to indicate all address assignments made during the phase.

After the completion of Phase 12 processing, control is passed to Phase 14.

Figure 9 illustrates the data flow within the phase.

Chart 70 illustrates the overall logic of Phase 12 and the relationship among its routines. Table 9, the routine directory, lists the routines used in the phase and their functions.

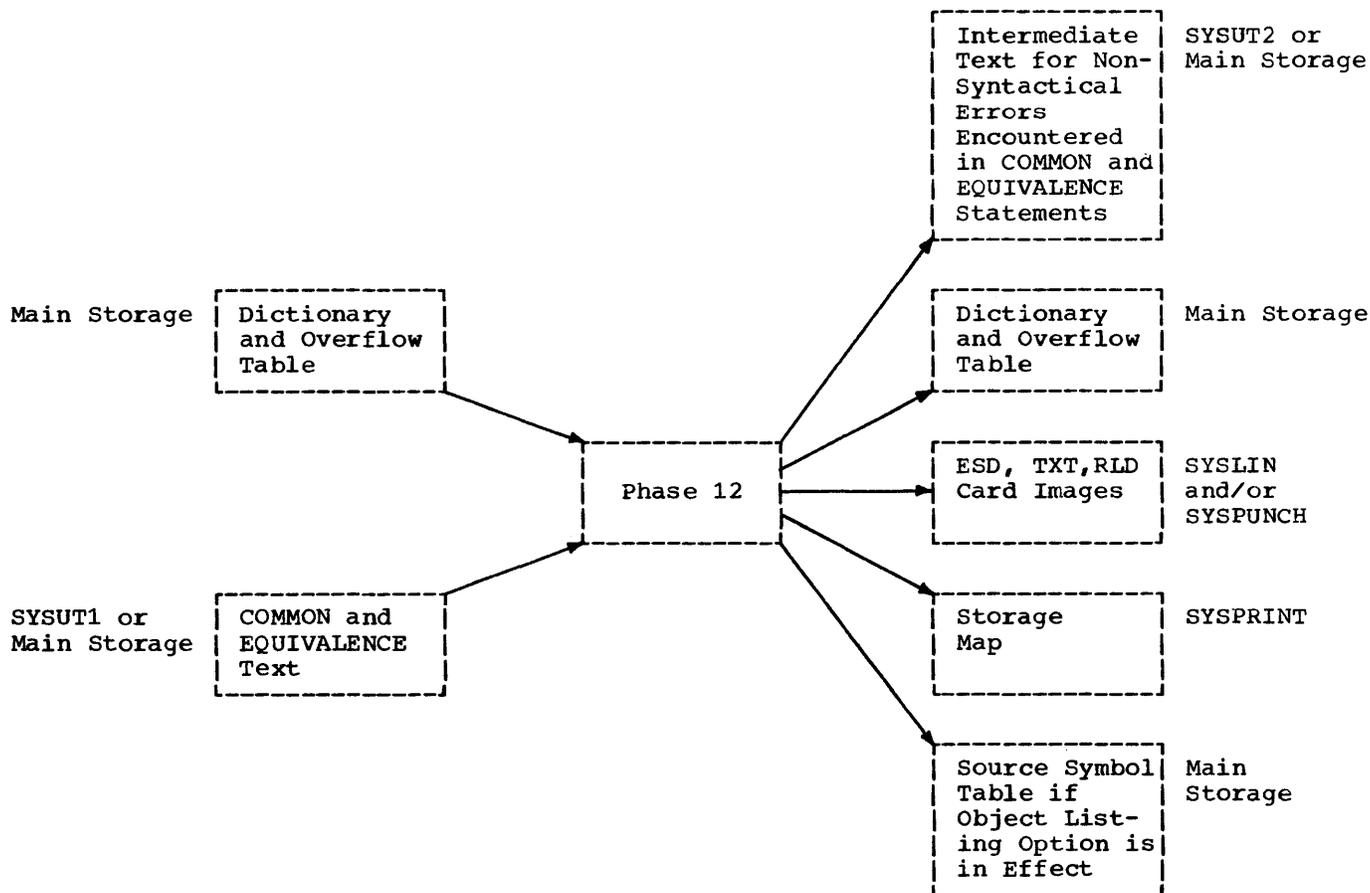


Figure 9. Phase 12 Data Flow

ADDRESS ASSIGNMENT

An effective address in IBM System/360 Operating System (a base-displacement address) is the displacement in an instruction added to the value in a base register. This yields a two-byte address wherein the first six bits represent a general register used as a base register and the last ten bits represent the displacement. All symbols in the object module generated by the compiler are referenced by this two-byte address.

The base-displacement address is assigned through the use of a location counter, which is initialized and then incremented by the number of words needed in main storage to contain the variable, array, constant, address constant, or equated variable assigned an address. If more than 4096 bytes are needed, a new base register is assigned.

There are only two instances in which the location counter may be incremented when no address is assigned:

- The first occurs after the variables in COMMON are assigned addresses. A new base register is assigned to the location counter so that variables not in COMMON have different base registers than variables in COMMON.
- The second may occur before the assignment of addresses to double-precision constants that are not in COMMON. The location counter is adjusted to a double-word boundary in order to accommodate double-precision constants.

When a variable is assigned an address, that address is placed in the chain field of the dictionary or overflow table entry for the variable.

FORMAT statements are assigned addresses during the execution of Phase 14. All phases after Phase 12 assign addresses whenever a constant or work area is defined.

EQUIVALENCE STATEMENT PROCESSING

The EQUIVALENCE text is processed by Phase 12 so that equated variables are assigned to the same address.

The following terms are used in the description of EQUIVALENCE processing:

- EQUIVALENCE group -- the variable and/or array names between a left and right parenthesis in an EQUIVALENCE statement.
- EQUIVALENCE class -- two or more EQUIVALENCE groups that have the following characteristic. If any EQUIVALENCE groups contain the same element, these groups form an EQUIVALENCE class. Further, if any other group contains an element in this class, the other group is part of this class, etc.
- Root -- the member of an EQUIVALENCE group or class from which all other variables in that group or class are referenced by means of a positive displacement.
- Displacement -- the distance, in bytes, between a variable and its root.

The root of an EQUIVALENCE group is assigned an address, and all other variables in the group are assigned addresses relative to that root.

To determine the root and the displacement of the other elements in the group from the root, the first element in the EQUIVALENCE group is established initially as the root. The displacement for the other elements (in relation to the root) is calculated by subtracting the offset of the root from the offset of the variable whose displacement is being calculated. (The offset for subscripted variables is contained in the EQUIVALENCE text created by Phase 10D. The offset for nonsubscripted variables is zero.)

If the resulting displacement is negative, the root is changed. The new root is the variable whose displacement was being calculated. Whenever a new root is assigned to an EQUIVALENCE group, the previously calculated displacements must be recalculated.

The root and the displacements in each group are entered in an EQUIVALENCE table, which is used by the storage assignment routines of Phase 12 to assign addresses to equated variables. (Refer to Appendix I for the table format.)

Note: Phase 12 generates intermediate text for nonsyntactical errors encountered in COMMON and EQUIVALENCE statements during relative address assignment. (The internal statement number for the error messages that are generated from this intermediate text by Phase 30 is 0000.) The amount of intermediate text for such errors depends on whether the SPACE or the PRFRM option is in effect.

If the SPACE option is in effect, the amount of error text is limited by the size of the first internal text buffer for the SYSUT2 data set. Phase 12 does not write any of the error text onto the SYSUT2 data set; it places the text into the above buffer. (The contents of the buffer are written onto SYSUT2 by Phase 14.) If the buffer is filled before COMMON and EQUIVALENCE processing is completed, Phase 12 continues such processing, but does not generate additional error text. If the buffer is not filled before COMMON and EQUIVALENCE processing is completed, Phase 12 places the displacement of the next available location within the buffer into the FTXTPTRB field in the communication area. Phase 14 starts placing its intermediate text output at the location indicated by this field.

If the PRFRM option is in effect, there is no limitation on the amount of intermediate text generated by Phase 12 for COMMON and EQUIVALENCE statement errors. Phase 12 starts placing the error text into the first text buffer in the first text buffer chain for the SYSUT2 data set. When that buffer is full, the next buffer in the chain is used, etc. When all of the COMMON and EQUIVALENCE text is processed, the displacement of the next available location within the current buffer is placed into the FTXTPTRB field in the communication area. Phase 14 starts placing its intermediate text output at the location indicated by this field.

BRANCH LIST TABLE PREPARATION

The branch list table is initialized by Phase 12 (and is completed by Phase 25). This table is used by the object module to control the branching process. (Refer to Appendix J for the table format.) Each statement number referenced in a control statement is assigned a position relative to the start of the branch table. This position is indicated to Phase 25 by a relative number, which replaces the chain field of the corresponding statement number entry in the overflow table.

In the assignment process, the statement number chains in the overflow table are scanned sequentially. Each time an entry for a statement number indicates a referenced statement other than the statement number of a FORMAT or specification statement, a counter associated with the branch list table is incremented by 4. (Four bytes are required for the referenced statement number and the address that will be assigned to the number by Phase 25.) The current contents of that counter are then placed in the chain field of the corresponding overflow table entry.

This counter is initialized to 0. Therefore, the first statement number in the first chain is assigned the number 0, the second statement number is assigned the relative number 4, the third statement number is assigned the relative number 8, and so on. After all statement numbers are assigned, the location counter is incremented by an amount equal to the size of the branch list table (in bytes).

CARD IMAGE PREPARATION

Several card images are prepared during the execution of Phase 12. This involves setting up the proper formats for the card images and inserting the pertinent information into those formats. The card images prepared are indicated below, along with their functions. For a more complete discussion of the use and format of these cards, refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: Linkage Editor, Program Logic Manual.

The cards generated by Phase 12 are:

- ESD-0 This is the section definition card for the source module being compiled.
- ESD-2 This card is produced for external subprogram names. There may be several such cards.
- ESD-5 This is the section definition card for COMMON (if a COMMON statement exists in the source module being compiled).
- TXT This card is produced for constants that have been entered in the dictionary. There may be several such cards.

- RLD This card contains the address of the location at which the address of each external subprogram will be loaded at object time. There may be several such cards.

PHASE 14 (IEJFNAA0)

Phase 14 is entered after the completion of Phase 12. The functions of the phase are:

- FORMAT statement processing.
- READ/WRITE/FIND statement processing.
- Replacing dictionary pointers.
- Miscellaneous statement processing.

The FORMAT statement processing converts the intermediate text for FORMAT statements into a form acceptable to IHCFCOME and creates TXT card images. These card images are used by IHCFCOME to set up the format of the list items for the I/O operations of the compiled source module. For a discussion of IHCFCOME, refer to Appendix L.

The processing for READ/WRITE/FIND statements consists of checking the components of the statements for validity, processing implied DOs within the statements, and rearranging the intermediate text for the statements.

Phase 14 replaces dictionary pointers in the intermediate text with the appropriate address assigned by Phase 12, a data set reference number, or a statement function number. (For SPACE compilations, the main storage occupied by the dictionary is freed by Phase 14.)

Upon completion of the Phase 14 processing, control is passed either to Interlude 14 (IEJFNAA0) for SPACE compilations, or to Phase 15 for PRFRM compilations.

Figure 10 illustrates the data flow within the phase.

Chart 80 illustrates the overall logic of Phase 14 and the relationship among its routines. Table 12, the routine directory, lists the routines used in the phase and their functions.

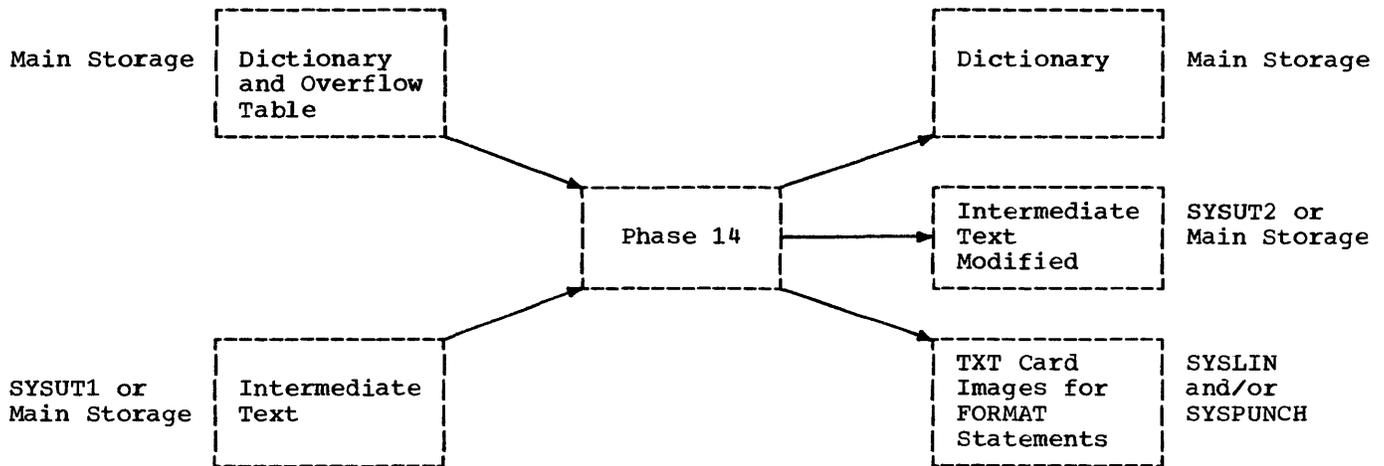


Figure 10. Phase 14 Data Flow

FORMAT STATEMENT PROCESSING

A FORMAT statement is composed of one or more format specifications that define an I/O format. For a discussion of the physical structure of a FORMAT statement refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: FORTRAN IV (E) Language.

Each FORMAT statement is examined beginning with the first FORMAT code. For each FORMAT code obtained, a specific processing routine is called (refer to Table 11). The processing of each routine consists of entering the required information for the FORMAT code into TXT card images. These images are composed of 1-byte units containing 2 hexadecimal digits. Each byte contains one of the following:

- An adjective code, which indicates to IHCFCOME the format conversion (H,I,F,P,X, etc.), a group or field count, or the end of a FORMAT statement.
- A number that represents the actual field count, field length, group count, or decimal length.

One of the following is entered into a TXT card image:

- Adjective Code and Number. (Entered for FORMAT specifications P,I,T,A, and X, and for entries made to indicate a field or group count.)
- Adjective Code. (Entered for a slash, the right parenthesis that ends a

group, or the right parenthesis that ends a FORMAT statement.)

- Adjective Code, Field Length, and Decimal Length. (Entered for FORMAT specifications D, E, and F.)
- Adjective Code, Field Length, and Literal. (Entered for FORMAT specifications H and apostrophe.)

As the specific information is entered into TXT card images, addresses are assigned by incrementing the location counter (according to the amount of storage required to contain the contents of a TXT card image).

During the processing of a FORMAT statement, various accumulators are used to determine the record length. That length is compared to the user-specified length (indicated by the LINELNG option). If the record length is greater than the specified length, a warning indicator is placed in intermediate text. If the user has not specified a record length, the standard length is used.

READ/WRITE/FIND STATEMENT PROCESSING

READ/WRITE/FIND statement processing involves four operations. The first is a check for the validity of the symbol used as the data set reference number. An indicator for the end of the READ/WRITE/FIND statement is made by entering an end-of-statement indicator in the

intermediate text before any entries for the I/O list. This allows Phase 20 to handle the I/O list as a separate statement in intermediate text.

The second operation is the replacement of dictionary pointers in intermediate text (for the symbols in the I/O list) with addresses assigned by Phase 12. This includes a check for the validity of the symbols in the I/O list. When an invalid symbol (a symbol other than a variable or array name) is encountered, an error condition is noted in the intermediate text and the remainder of the I/O list is deleted.

The third operation is to check for and process implied DOs, which are recognized by a left parenthesis within a READ/WRITE statement. For each encounter, an implied DO adjective code is inserted in the intermediate text for the READ/WRITE statement. When the end of an implied DO is recognized (right parenthesis), an end DO adjective code is inserted in the intermediate text.

The fourth operation is to rearrange the READ/WRITE statement entries so that later phases can process the statement correctly. The implied DO variable and parameters are placed ahead of any subscripted variables (whose intermediate text is also rearranged).

REPLACING DICTIONARY POINTERS

In the intermediate text entries, except for the END and FORMAT statements, dictionary pointers are replaced by:

- The address assigned and placed in the dictionary chain field by Phase 12 if the pointer refers to an entry for a variable, constant, array, or external function. (The assigned addresses are obtained from the chain address fields of the affected entries in the dictionary.)
- A data set reference number if the pointer refers to a data set reference number.
- A statement function number if the pointer refers to a statement function.

MISCELLANEOUS STATEMENT PROCESSING

Statement function (SF) definition statements are assigned a unique SF number by Phase 14. This number is used to reference the SF within an associated branch list table in the compiled source module (refer to Phase 25). This unique number is assigned, in sequence beginning with 01, to each SF in the program and is moved to the dictionary entry for the name of that SF. This number also replaces the pointer field of the intermediate text entry for the SF.

The text for RETURN, DO, GO TO, IF, PAUSE, and STOP statements is examined to determine if the statement in question ends a DO loop. If it does, an error condition is noted in the intermediate text. In addition to this error check, if the adjective code for a RETURN statement appears within a main program, that adjective code is changed to the adjective code that represents a STOP statement.

A statement number entry in the intermediate text, other than a FORMAT statement number, is moved unchanged from the input buffer to the output buffer. A FORMAT statement number is treated as follows:

- If the number is not referenced, a warning condition is noted in the intermediate text.
- If the number is associated with a FORMAT statement that ends a DO loop, an error condition is noted in the intermediate text.
- The contents of the location counter are entered in the chain address field of the associated overflow table entry.

BACKSPACE, REWIND, and END FILE statements are examined to verify that the data set reference number is a valid symbol.

Intermediate text for computed GO TO statements is rearranged, putting the variable and the number of statement numbers before the statement numbers themselves.

Any intermediate text for COMMON and EQUIVALENCE statements is deleted by Phase 14 since that text is no longer used.

PHASE 15 (IEJFPAAO)

Phase 15 is entered either after the completion of Interlude 14 for SPACE compilations, or after the completion of Phase 14 for PRFRM compilations. The functions of the phase are:

- Reordering intermediate text.
- Modifying intermediate text.
- Assigning registers.
- Creating argument lists.
- Checking for statement errors.

All of the above functions are performed for the processing of statements that can contain arithmetic expressions; only the error checking function is performed for the remaining statements.

Phase 15 reorders the sequence of intermediate text words within: (1) statements that can contain arithmetic expressions (arithmetic, arithmetic IF, CALL, and statement functions), and (2) DEFINE FILE statements. As intermediate text words are being reordered, they are modified, depending on the operators and operands, to a form closely resembling an instruction format. When the intermediate text words are modified, registers are assigned, when necessary, to the operands of all arithmetic operators. Argument lists for subprogram and statement function references are created, and in-line function references are processed by generating the appropriate instruction format intermediate text or intermediate text word for an in-line function call. During the input text processing, errors pertaining to DO loops, arithmetic IF statements, statement numbers, function arguments, and operand usage and form are recognized, and the appropriate error messages are given.

Upon completion of Phase 15 processing, control is passed either to Interlude 15 (IEJFPGA0) for SPACE compilations, or to Phase 20 for PRFRM compilations.

Figure 11 illustrates the data flow within Phase 15.

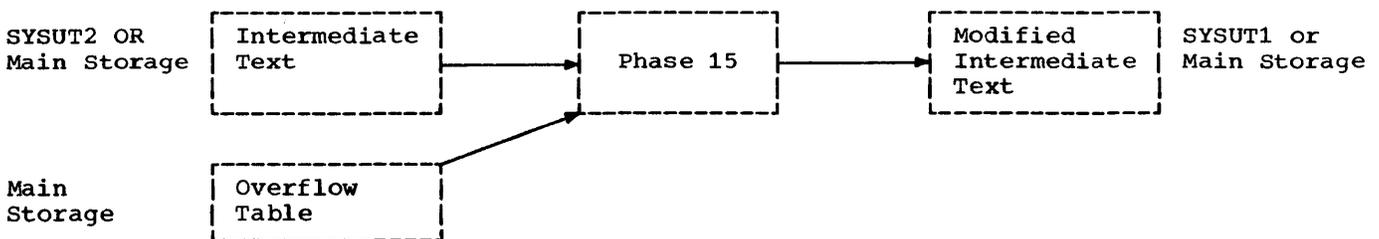


Figure 11. Phase 15 Data Flow

Chart 90 illustrates the overall logic of Phase 15 and the relationship among its routines. Table 15, the routine directory, lists the routines of the phase and their functions.

REORDERING INTERMEDIATE TEXT

For Arithmetic Expressions

Phase 15 reorders the sequence of intermediate text words within arithmetic expressions so that the resulting code generated by Phase 25 will cause evaluation of arithmetic expressions according to a hierarchy of operators. The desired order is defined by a hierarchy of the specific operations as represented by adjective codes and is determined by a comparison of forcing values (a forcing value indicates an operator's priority in the hierarchy of operators). (Refer to Appendix I, Figure 77, for a list of the various operators and their corresponding forcing values.) Depending on the operator in an intermediate text word and its relative position in the hierarchy of operators, that intermediate text word is either:

- Processed (this consists of modifying the intermediate text word by replacing the adjective code field and the mode/type field, when necessary, with a machine operation code and a register number, respectively), or
- Stored in an operations table or subscript table (refer to Appendix I, Figures 78 and 79).

The operations and subscript tables function as pushdown tables in which the top entry in the table is the most recently entered item. (This process is known as LIFO: last in, first out.)

The actual reordering of intermediate text words is controlled by a routine (FOSCAN) that scans the input intermediate

text words. This routine compares the forcing values of the various adjective codes under consideration to determine their disposition. Each adjective code has a left and a right forcing value. The right forcing value applies to the adjective code within the current input intermediate text word. The left forcing value applies to the adjective code within the top entry in the operations table. The adjective code of the first intermediate text word of an arithmetic statement has the highest left forcing value of any adjective code except for the end-of-statement indicator.

The first intermediate text word of any arithmetic statement is first written on the output data set and then entered in the operations table. The next word of the input intermediate text for this statement is then obtained and examined. If it is subscript intermediate text, it is entered in the subscript table. The following word is then obtained and examined. When the word (in the operations table) containing the subscripted variable is processed, the related subscript intermediate text is obtained from the subscript table. The related subscript intermediate text is always the top entry in the subscript table.

If the word obtained from the input intermediate text is not a subscript intermediate text word, the right forcing value of that word is compared to the left forcing value of the top entry in the operations table. If the right forcing value is greater than or equal to the left forcing value, the top entry of the operations table is forced out, processed, and written on the output data set. If the right forcing value is less than the left forcing value, the current word of the input intermediate text is entered into the operations table. The next input intermediate text word is then obtained. This comparison process continues until the first entry (for the statement under consideration) made in the operations table is forced out (by the end mark) and processed. In this way, the input data set is reordered when it leaves Phase 15 as the output data set.

If an attempt is made to enter information in the operations or subscript table when they are full, an error condition is recognized. An error intermediate text word, which indicates that the statement is too long and should be subdivided, is generated and placed at the end of the intermediate text words for the statement containing the error.

For DEFINE FILE Statements

Phase 15 reorders the intermediate text, created by Phase 10D, for DEFINE FILE statements to facilitate the generation of TXT card images for the parameter lists included in those statements (refer to Appendix F). (The parameter lists are required at object-time by IHCDIOSE, the direct access I/O data management interface.)

Each parameter list is reordered into a three-argument format that contains the parameters which define the corresponding direct access data set. Phase 15 generates an intermediate text word containing a constant of three, and places this text word prior to each of the parameter lists. The constant three indicates that a parameter list occupies the next three intermediate text words.

In addition, Phase 15 generates an intermediate text word containing an end mark, and places this text word after each parameter list. The end mark indicates the end of a parameter list. The text word containing the end mark that is generated for the last parameter list also contains the internal statement number (ISN) that Phase 10D assigned to the DEFINE FILE statement.

MODIFYING INTERMEDIATE TEXT

As intermediate text words for an arithmetic expression are being reordered, they are modified, depending on the operators and operands, to a form closely resembling an instruction format. The contents of the adjective code field for arithmetic operators (unary minus (\bar{u}), +, -, *, and /) are replaced by the appropriate machine operation code. The contents of the mode field are replaced by a register number when the operator and operands require a register assignment.

Note: Phase 15 allocates main storage for a special work area if the FDATEMP field in the communication area is nonzero. Phase 10E makes the FDATEMP field nonzero if it encounters a direct access I/O statement in which the parameter that indicates the relative position within the data set of the record to be read or written involves a subscripted expression. Phase 10E also generates the intermediate text, in the form of an arithmetic expression, that is required to evaluate the subscript expression.

Phase 15 inserts the address of the work area back into the FDATEMP field. Phase 25 obtains the address and inserts it into the store instruction that places the value of the expression into the work area. In addition, Phase 25 includes the address of the work area as a part of the calling sequence to IHCFCOME that is generated for the I/O statement. At object-time, IHCFCOME passes the address to IHCDIOSE (the direct access data management I/O interface). IHCDIOSE needs the contents of that address in order to determine which record is to be read or written.

ASSIGNING REGISTERS

Registers are assigned by Phase 15 according to the adjective code encountered and the mode of the operands. There are eight registers (general registers 0, 1, 2, and 3; floating-point registers 0, 2, 4, and 6) that may be assigned by Phase 15. When a register is required for a particular operation and one is not available, the contents of the required register are transferred to a work area. That register acquires "available" status and is then used for the operation.

Register assignments are made by Phase 15 according to the following rules:

- The instruction generated for the add operator and the floating-point multiply operator requires that one of its operands be in a register. The instruction generated for the multiply operator for integer quantities requires that the multiplicand (left operand) be in an odd register. The even register that precedes the multiplicand must be made available, unless it already contains the multiplier.
- The instruction generated for the subtract operator and the divide operator for real quantities requires that its left operand be in a register.
- For integer division, the dividend must be in an even-odd register pair.
- A work register is assigned to each subscript expression to aid in the computation of subscript expressions by Phase 20.
- Exponentiation requires library subprograms; therefore, a specific register is required to contain the result of the subprogram execution.
- Registers are assigned to single and double in-line functions, as follows:

There are eight single-argument, in-line functions: IFIX, FLOAT, DFLOAT, SNGL, DBLE, ABS, IABS, and DABS. Instructions are generated to perform the functions of the SNGL and DBLE in-line functions. For the remaining single-argument, in-line functions, a word in the following format is generated:

in-line function adjective code	R2	R1	code number for the in-line function
1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes	

Depending upon the specific in-line function, up to three registers are assigned by Phase 15. For ABS, IABS, and DABS, only an argument register is required. This register is indicated in the R1 field; the R2 field is made zero. For IFIX, FLOAT, and DFLOAT, three registers are required: an argument register, a result register, and a work register. The argument register is indicated in the R1 field, the result register in R2. The work register is the register preceding R1.

For in-line functions with two arguments, an in-line call word is generated with the same format as for single-argument, in-line functions. Phase 15 assigns a register to each argument in a double-argument, in-line function. The first argument register is indicated in the R1 field; the second argument register is indicated in the R2 field. R1 is used as the result register.

CREATING ARGUMENT LISTS

To assist Phase 25 in the generation of the object module instructions, a list of arguments is created when an adjective code is encountered that represents a call to a subprogram or to a statement function. The argument list is preceded by an intermediate text word that defines the specific function call. The first word of the argument list contains the number of arguments in the list, and is followed by an intermediate text word for each argument. The total number of arguments in all lists created by Phase 15 is kept in the communication area to be used by Phase 20 processing.

CHECKING FOR STATEMENT ERRORS

As each statement is processed, Phase 15 checks for specific error conditions. General format errors as well as specific errors connected with DO statements, arithmetic IF statements, statement numbers, and argument lists are noted. Following are the error checks performed by Phase 15:

- DO loops are examined to determine if the DO variable is redefined, or if a DO loop is nested to a depth greater than 25.
- Arithmetic IF statements are examined to determine if the arithmetic expressions contain valid symbols. They are also examined to determine if more or fewer than three statement numbers have been specified.
- Statement numbers are examined to ensure that they are uniquely defined and do not indicate transfers to non-executable statements.
- If a FUNCTION subprogram is being compiled, a check is made to determine whether the subprogram name is defined.
- The members of an argument list are examined to determine whether they are valid. If a particular list has a required length, that list is examined to determine if it is of the required length.

If any of the designated error conditions are encountered, an intermediate text word, which contains an adjective code indicating an error and a number representing the specific error, is generated and placed at the end of the intermediate text words for the statement in which the error was detected.

PHASE 20 (IEJFRAAO)

Phase 20 is entered either after the completion of Interlude 15 for SPACE compilations, or after the completion of Phase 15 for PRFRM compilations. The major functions of the phase are:

- Processing of statements that require subscript optimization.
- Processing of statements that affect, but do not require, subscript optimization.
- Creating the argument list table.

Phase 20 increases the efficiency of the object module by decreasing the amount of computation associated with subscript expressions. A subscript expression can recur frequently in a FORTRAN program. Recomputation at each occurrence is time-consuming and results in an inefficient object module. Therefore, Phase 20 performs the initial computation of any given subscript expression and assigns a register which, at object time, contains the result of this computation. Phase 20 then modifies (that is, optimizes) the intermediate text for subsequent occurrences of this subscript expression. This intermediate text optimization consists essentially of replacing the computation of the subscript expression, at each recurrence, with a reference to its initial value (that is, to the register that contains the result of the initial computation). The subscript intermediate text for each subsequent occurrence of the subscript expression can be optimized in this manner as long as the values of the integer variables in the expression remain unchanged.

In addition, the following functions are performed by Phase 20:

1. Generation of ESD card images for:
 - a. Implied external references to any required library exponentiation subprograms. For example, IHCFRXPI (i.e., FRXPI#), IHCFRXPR (i.e., FRXPR#), IHCFIXPI (i.e., FIXPI#), IHCFDXPI (i.e., FDXPI#), and IHCDFDXPD (i.e., FDXPD#).
 - b. Implied external references to IHCFCOME (i.e., IBCOM#), IHCFIOSH (i.e., FIOCS#), and IHCDIOSE (i.e., DIOCS#).
 - c. Implied external references to IHCCGOTO (i.e., CGOTO#). IHCCGOTO is an implicitly called library subprogram that aids in the execution of computed GO TO statements by supplying the object-time branch addresses.
2. Generation of TXT and RLD card images for literals generated by Phase 20 and argument list table entries.
3. Generation of TXT card images for each three-word parameter list associated with the unit numbers that are defined in DEFINE FILE statements. (The first TXT card image contains the relative address at which the first parameter list resides at object-time.)
4. Generation of calling sequences to IHCIBERR (that is, IBERR#) when source statement errors are encountered.

(Refer to Appendix L for a description of the IHCIBERR object-time library subprogram.)

5. Printing of a storage map for all literals generated by Phase 20, and for all implied external references made by the source module being compiled, if the MAP option is specified.
6. Allocation of storage for the branch list table for SF expansions and DO statements.

Upon completion of Phase 20 processing, control is passed either to Phase 30 (if the NOLOAD option was specified and source module errors were detected), or to Phase 25.

Figure 12 illustrates the data flow within Phase 20.

Chart A0 illustrates the overall logic and the relationship among the routines of Phase 20. Table 18, the routine directory, lists the routines used in the phase and their functions.

PROCESSING OF STATEMENTS THAT REQUIRE SUBSCRIPT OPTIMIZATION

Phase 20 scans the input text for statements that may require subscript optimization. Subscript expressions may occur in the following statements:

- Arithmetic.
- CALL.
- Arithmetic IF.
- Input/output lists (input/output lists are treated as statements by Phase 20).

When Phase 20 encounters one of these statements containing a subscripted variable, the subscript optimization process begins.

An index mapping table (refer to Appendix I, Figure 80), containing all information pertinent to a subscript expression, is used to aid subscript processing. When the index mapping table indicates the first occurrence of the current subscript expression, a register is assigned and a corresponding entry is made in the index mapping table. When a register is not available, the register that is currently assigned to the subscript expression of least dimension

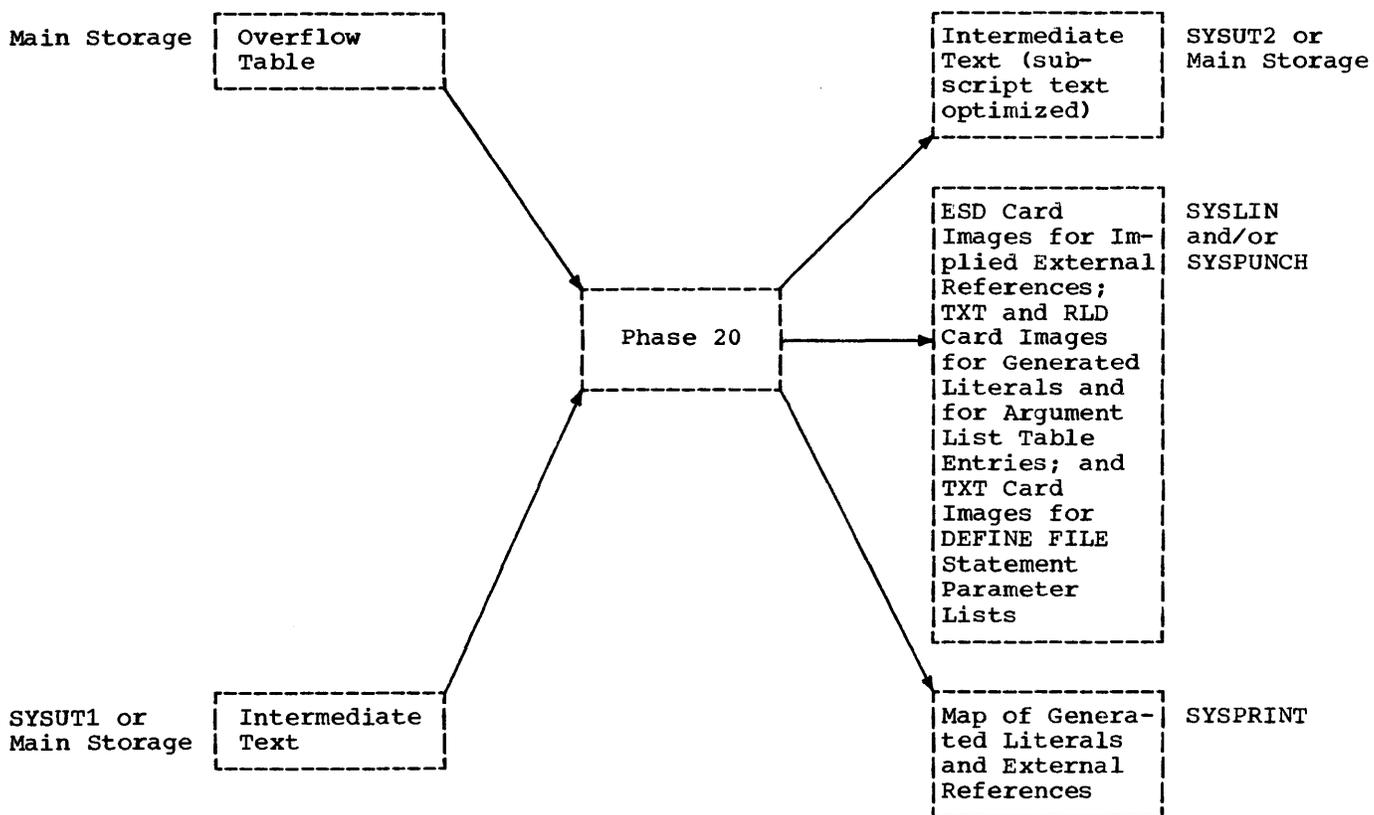


Figure 12. Phase 20 Data Flow

is reassigned to the current subscript expression.

If the current subscript expression has been encountered previously, the intermediate text for its computation can be replaced effectively by a reference to the register assigned at the first encounter. However, redefinition of any integer variable in the expression invalidates the previous computation and prohibits the assignment of the same register to the current subscript expression. In this case, recomputation is necessary and another register must be assigned for the subscript expression.

During the subscript optimization process, Phase 20 may be required to generate literals connected with the array displacement associated with any given subscript expression. (Refer to Appendix G for a discussion of the calculation of an array displacement. This explanation includes a description of the offset and CDL (constant, dimension, and length) portions of an array displacement.) Literals are generated by Phase 20 under the following conditions:

- When the optimization routine encounters a value outside the addressable range of 0 through 4095 bytes as a result of adding the offset (calculated in Phase 10E) to the displacement of the array variable (calculated in Phase 15), an offset literal is generated. The generation of an offset literal allows Phase 25 to produce instructions involving these subscripted variables without having to assign a new base register.
- Phase 20 generates a literal for each component of the CDL portion of the array displacement associated with a subscript expression except for the first component if it is a power of 2. In this case, that power, instead of the address for the literal $C1*L$, is placed in the subscript text.

The preceding discussion of subscript optimization applies to subscript expressions that are neither constant nor associated with a dummy subscripted variable. These two conditions are discussed in the following paragraphs.

Phase 20 does not assign a register to a constant subscript expression which, when added to the offset portion of the array displacement, lies within the addressable range of 0 through 4095 bytes. However, if this computation lies outside the above range, a register is assigned for this constant and an entry is made in the index mapping table.

In addition to normal optimization, a base register is assigned to any dummy variable so that the variable may be addressed during execution of the object module. This assignment is entered in the index mapping table.

PROCESSING OF STATEMENTS THAT AFFECT, BUT DO NOT REQUIRE, SUBSCRIPT OPTIMIZATION

In addition to previously mentioned statements that require subscript optimization, various other statements that can affect the subscript optimization process are processed by Phase 20.

DO and READ Statements

The DO and READ statements sometimes cause the redefinition of the integer variable(s) in a subscript expression. Any integer variable that is redefined becomes a bound variable. Any encounter of a bound variable causes Phase 20 to examine the subscript expressions that are assigned registers in the index mapping table. A bound variable in a subscript expression invalidates any previous computation for that expression and causes a new register to be assigned for that expression.

Referenced Statement Numbers

When a statement number is referred to in other statements (for example, a GO TO statement), Phase 20 does not know if the values of previously encountered integer variables can still be used by subscript expressions containing these variables. Because any given variable may now be a bound variable, Phase 20 deletes all register assignments (in the index mapping table) for subscript expressions involving that variable.

Subprogram Argument

Any subprogram argument that is an integer variable causes redefinition of that variable and, therefore, invalidates any previous computations of subscript expressions containing that variable. All register assignments (in the index mapping table) for subscript expressions involving that variable are deleted.

CREATING THE ARGUMENT LIST TABLE

A count of the number of arguments contained in the source module for subprogram and SF (statement function) calls is passed to Phase 20 via the communication area. This number is used by Phase 20 to allocate storage for the argument list table. Phase 20 allocates a word (4 bytes) for each argument, and inserts the relative address of each argument in the argument list table.

If an argument is a subscripted variable, its address is not known at this time. Instructions are generated to load the address of this argument into the argument list table at object-time.

The table is used at object-time to provide the addresses of argument lists to the subprograms and SFs being called. Refer to Appendix J, Figure 87, for the format of the argument list table.

For each subprogram name or SF name encountered, Phase 20 generates the appropriate calling sequence. A register is used to supply the referenced subprogram or SF with the address of its argument list. Phase 20 also generates RLD and TXT card images for each entry in the argument list table.

PHASE 25 (IEJFVAA0)

Phase 25 is entered after the completion of Phase 20. The main functions of the phase are:

- Generation of object module instructions.
- Completion of object module tables.

Phase 25 creates the object coding for the FORTRAN source module from the intermediate text entries and the overflow table (refer to Appendix H). TXT card images for instructions are generated and then written on the SYSLIN data set (if the LOAD option is specified) and/or the SYSPUNCH data set (if the DECK option is specified).

Phase 25 also generates, as a part of the object module, a calling sequence to the file definition section of IHCDIOSE (the direct access data management I/O interface) if the FDEFILCT field in the communication area is nonzero. That is, if a DEFINE FILE statement is included in the source module being compiled.

Several tables (branch list table for statement numbers, branch list table for SF expansions and DO statements, and base value table) are used by the object module during execution of the instructions generated by Phase 25. These tables are assembled in their final form by Phase 25.

In addition to the above functions, Phase 25 generates: (1) a listing of referenced statement numbers if the MAP option is specified, and (2) an object module listing if the object listing option is specified and if the object listing facility of the compiler has been enabled. The object module listing contains the machine language instructions generated by Phase 25 and their equivalent assembly language instructions. The equivalent assembly language instructions are generated by an object listing module (IEJFVCA0) that Phase 25 loads (via the LOAD macro-instruction) into main storage. The object listing module is deleted (via the DELETE macro-instruction) before control is passed to the next phase.

Upon completion of Phase 25 processing, control is passed to Phase 30 (to generate error/warning messages and to process the END statement).

Figure 13 illustrates the data flow within Phase 25.

Chart B0 illustrates the overall logic and the relationship among the routines of Phase 25. Table 20, the routine directory, lists the routines used in the phase and their functions.

GENERATION OF OBJECT MODULE INSTRUCTIONS

Phase 25 creates the object module instructions from the intermediate text entries and the overflow table. These instructions are in the RR, RX, and RS formats of the System/360 instructions.

The control routine (PRESCN) for Phase 25 obtains each intermediate text entry and examines its adjective code. The adjective code determines which Phase 25 subroutine is to process the current entry or the next series of entries. The processing subroutine generates the required object coding.

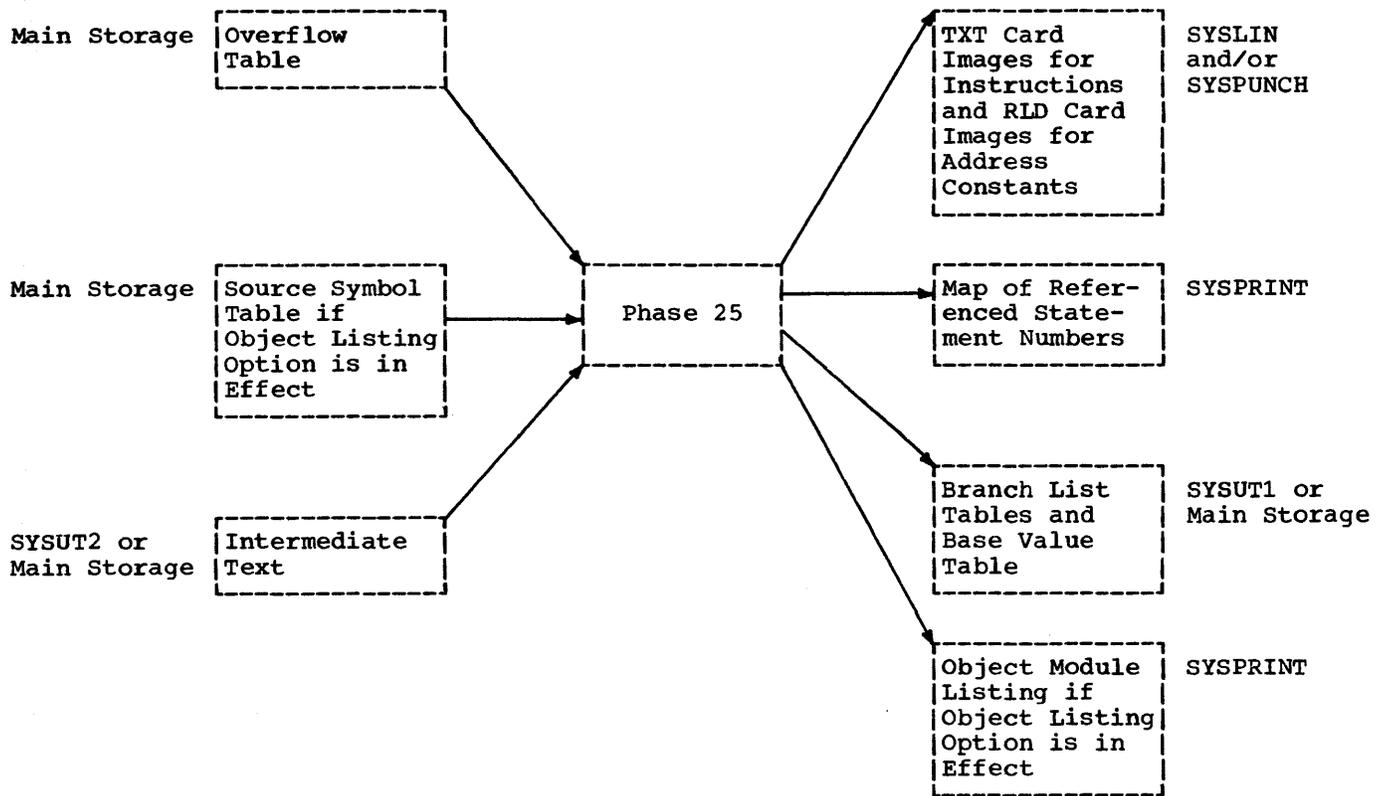


Figure 13. Phase 25 Data Flow

Intermediate text entries for operations within arithmetic expressions are almost in a final instruction format as a result of Phase 15 processing. The intermediate text words generated by Phase 15, for arithmetic expressions, contain all the elements required for the RX format instruction: operation code, result register, base register, and displacement. When Phase 25 encounters an adjective code indicating an arithmetic expression, control is passed to the routine (RXGEN) that generates RX format instructions.

Other intermediate text entries still resemble the output generated by Phase 14. An adjective code identifies the type of entry and possibly several entries that follow it. Various Phase 25 subroutines analyze these entries and generate the appropriate instructions.

If a subprogram is being compiled, Phase 25 generates an epilog table when the FUNCTION or SUBROUTINE adjective code is encountered. The epilog table provides Phase 25 (when it encounters the RETURN statement) with the information necessary for the generation of instructions that

return the new values of variables, used as parameters, to the calling program. This information consists of the following:

- Length and address of the variable in the subprogram.
- The relative position of the variable in the parameter list of the calling program.

Refer to Appendix I, Figure 81, for the format of the epilog table.

COMPLETION OF OBJECT MODULE TABLES

Several tables are used by the object module during the execution of the instructions generated by Phase 25. These tables, assembled in their final form by Phase 25, are:

- The branch list table for referenced statement numbers.
- The branch list table for SF expansions and DO statements.
- The base value table.

Branch List Table for Statement Numbers

Phase 12 allocated storage for a branch list table (refer to Appendix J, Figure 85) for referenced statement numbers. Each statement number referenced by a GO TO, computed GO TO, IF, or DO statement was assigned a number relative to the start of the branch table. This relative number was placed in the chain field of the statement number entry in the overflow table (refer to Appendix H).

When an intermediate text entry for a statement number definition is recognized by Phase 25, the corresponding overflow table entry is obtained, and the relative number, assigned by Phase 12, is used to determine the position of the statement number in the branch table. The value of the location counter is placed in this position and is the actual relative address of that statement.

Two instructions are generated for the portion of a FORTRAN statement that references a statement number. The first instruction loads the address portion of the proper entry in the branch table into a general register; the second instruction branches to the address placed in that general register.

Branch List Table for SF Expansions and DO Statements

A second branch list table is completed by Phase 25 for statement function (SF) expansions and DO statements. Phase 14 assigned a unique number to each SF and placed this number in the pointer field portion of the intermediate text entry for each SF. Phase 25 uses this number to assign a location in this second branch list table when it encounters an SF adjective code. The address of the first instruction in the SF expansion in question is placed in this location. Any statement referencing this SF uses the number of the SF to obtain this location in the branch list table, and branches to the address in the location (that is, to the beginning of the SF expansion).

Phase 25 also assigns each DO statement a location in this branch list table. The address of the second instruction of the DO loop in question is entered in the proper location. The object module instruction that controls the iteration of the DO loop obtains this location in the branch list, and branches to the address in the location (that is, to the beginning of the DO loop).

Refer to Appendix J, Figure 86, for the format of the branch list table for SF expansions and DO statements.

Base Value Table

The base value table (refer to Appendix J, Figure 88) is continually generated by the various phases of the compiler as base registers are required for the object coding. An object module can only use general registers 4, 5, 6, and 7 as base registers. (When the object module is entered at object-time, these registers are initialized from entries in the base value table.) If the base register requirements for the object module extend beyond the four available registers, the base value table is used to take special action.

During compilation (prior to Phase 25), the value for each base register to be used by the object module is inserted in the base value table, regardless of the general register number used as the base register. The first entry in the base value table is the value placed in register 4; the second refers to register 5; etc.

For a source module for which the compiler assigns registers 4 and 5 to reference data in COMMON and assigns registers 6, 7, and 8 to reference data and instructions in the object module, the base value table contains the values indicated in Figure 14.

Register	4	5	6	7	8
Value	0	4096	0	4096	8192

Figure 14. Sample Base Value Table Values

The value 8192 is initially assigned to general register 8, and that register number is entered in the intermediate text entry requiring the base register. However, when Phase 25 encounters this intermediate text entry with a base register number of 8, an instruction is generated to load the value 8192 into register 7, and general register 7 is used as the base register in this instruction.

In general, when a base register other than 4, 5, 6, or 7 is encountered by Phase 25, the base value table is used to obtain the value of that base register, and an instruction is generated to load that value into register 7. Register 7 is used as the base register in the instruction at object-time

PHASE 30 (IEJFXAA0)

Phase 30, the last phase of the compiler, may be entered either after the completion of Phase 20 processing if the NOLOAD option was specified and errors were detected in the source module, or after the completion of Phase 25 processing. The functions of the phase are:

- Producing error and warning messages.
- Processing the END statement.

When Phase 30 is entered from Phase 20, only the first function (producing error and warning messages) is performed. However, when Phase 30 is entered from Phase 25, both functions are performed.

Upon the completion of Phase 30 processing, control is passed to Phase 1.

Figure 15 illustrates the data flow within Phase 30.

Chart C0 illustrates the overall logic and relationship among the routines of Phase 30. Table 21, the routine directory, lists the routines used in the phase and their functions.

PRODUCING ERROR AND WARNING MESSAGES

Phase 30 checks the adjective code of each intermediate text word for an error or warning condition. If one is encountered, Phase 30 obtains the error or warning number (set up by the phase that detected

the error or warning condition) from the mode/type field of that intermediate text word. This number is used as an indexing value to obtain the length and address of the actual message corresponding to the specific error or warning detected.

The length of the message is obtained from the message length table. The address of the message is obtained from the message address table. The actual message is obtained from the message text table. (Refer to Appendix I for a description of the use and format of the message tables.)

When the message length and the message address are obtained, Phase 30 then prints the corresponding message on the SYSPRINT data set. (For a description of the messages capable of being generated by the compiler refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: FORTRAN IV (E) Programmer's Guide.)

PROCESSING THE END STATEMENT

When the intermediate text entry for the END statement is recognized by Phase 25, control is passed to Phase 30. Phase 30 first produces any error or warning messages detected by earlier phases of the compiler. Phase 30 then writes both branch list tables and the base value table onto the output data set(s). Because all three of these tables must be relocatable, all entries in the tables are entered in RLD card images, as well as in TXT card images. Phase 30 also creates the END card image for the object module.

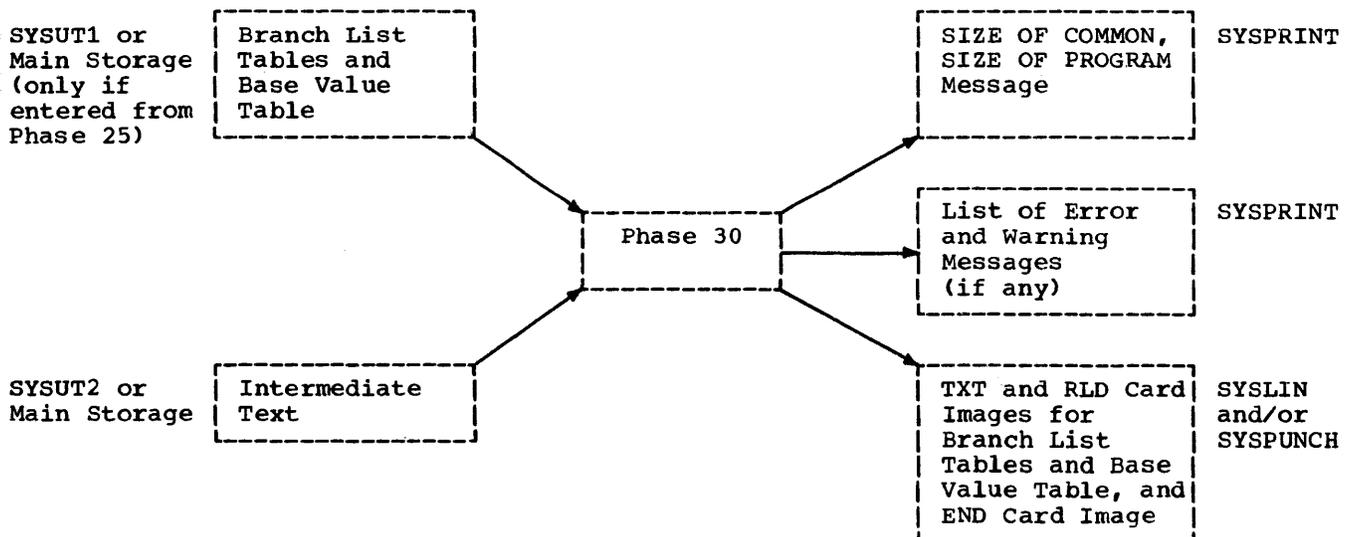


Figure 15. Phase 30 Data Flow

Chart 10. Phase 1 (IEJFAA0/IEJFAAB0) Overall Logic

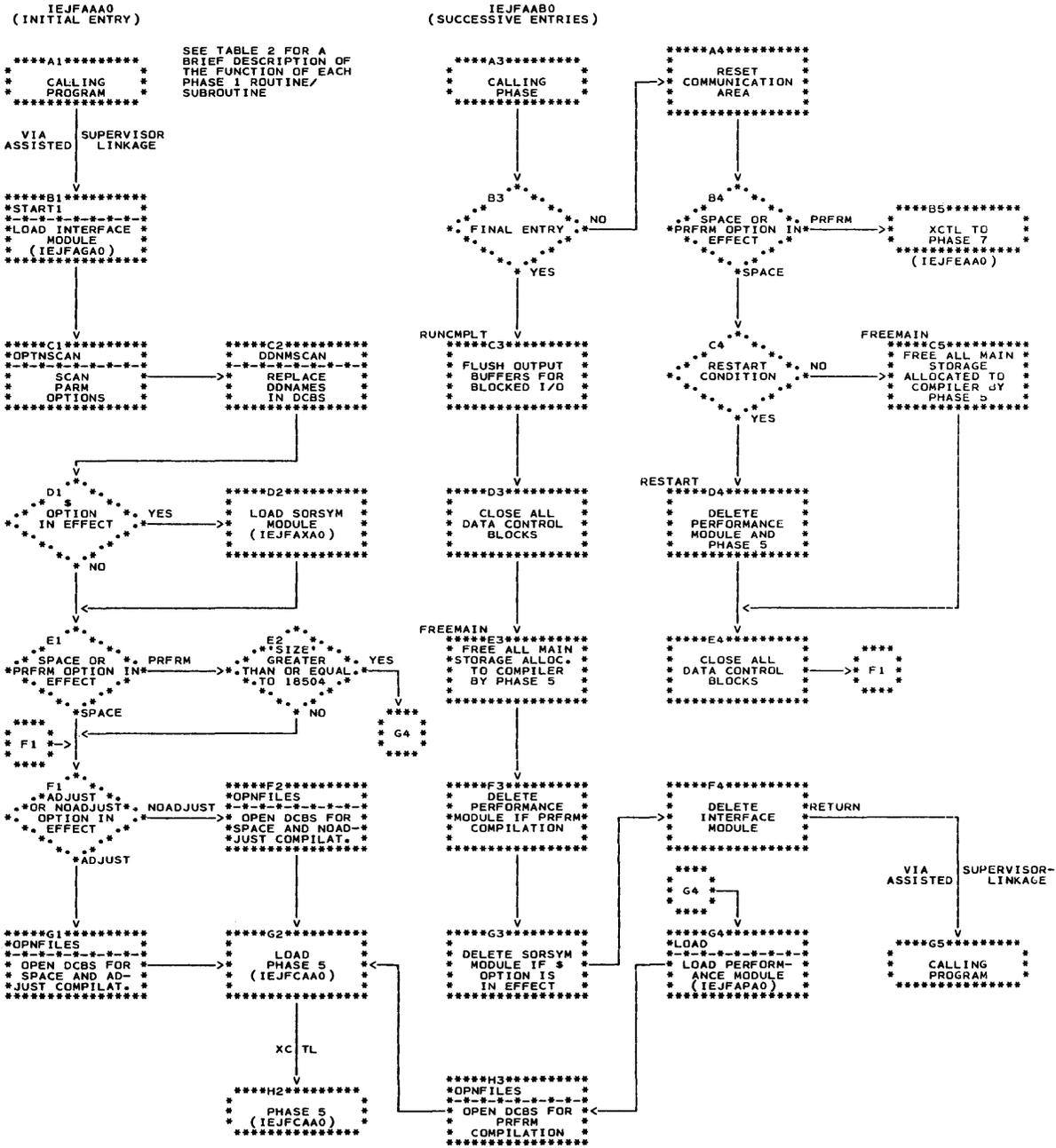
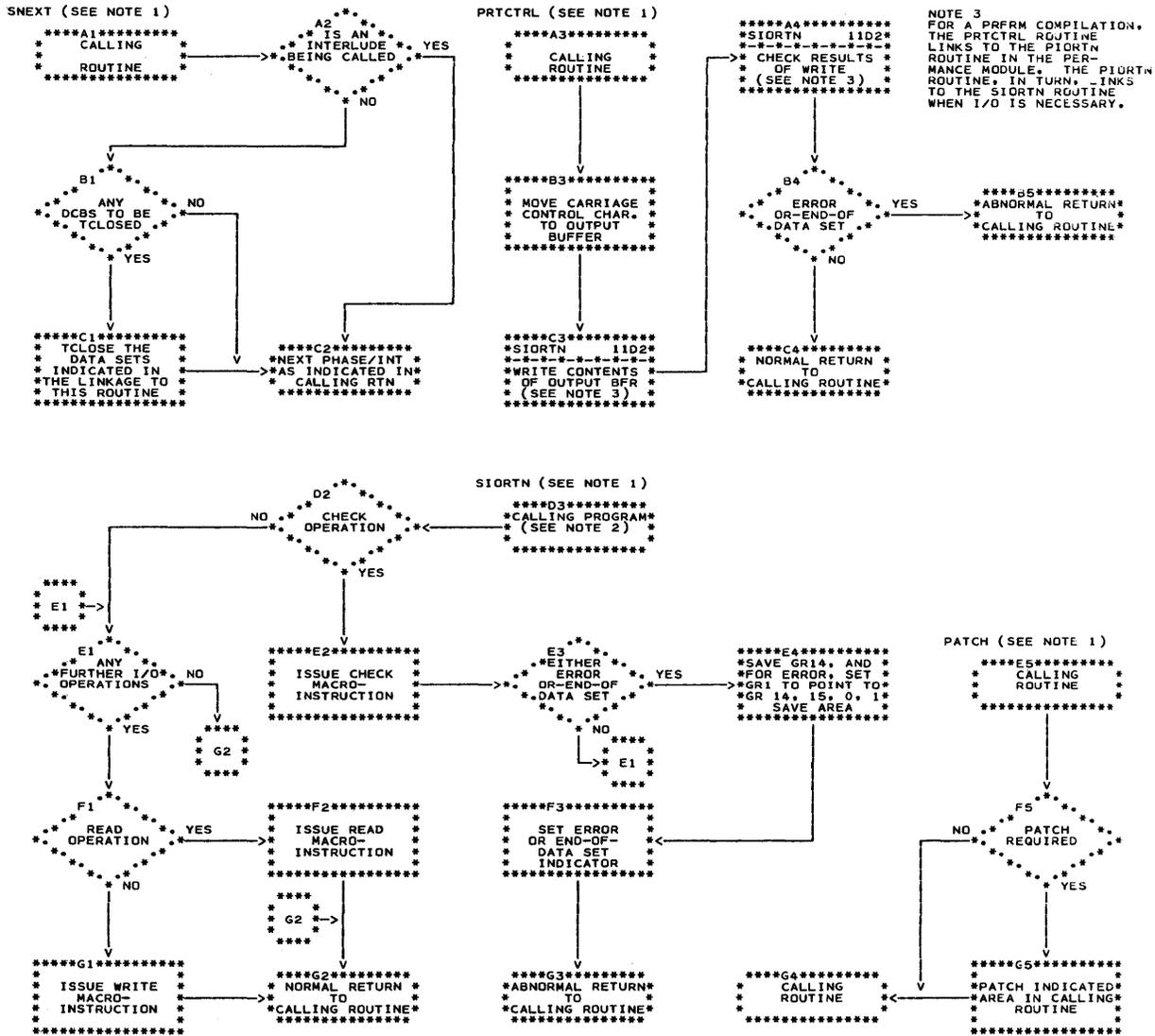


Table 2. Phase 1 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory

Routine/Subroutine	Function
DDNMSCAN	Replaces DDNAMES in the data control blocks (in the interface module) when requested by the calling program.
FREEMAIN	Frees all main storage allocated to compiler by Phase 5.
LOAD	Loads the performance module into main storage if the PRFRM option is in effect and if the SIZE option is at least 18504.
OPNFILES	Opens data control blocks for compiler data sets as indicated by switches (in the communication area) for options.
OPTNSCAN	Scans the compiler options and sets appropriate switches in the communication area.
RESTART	Closes all data control blocks for compiler data sets, deletes the performance module and Phase 5, and initializes compiler for a SPACE compilation.
RUNCPLT	Closes all data control blocks for compiler data sets, frees all main storage allocated to the compiler, and returns control to the calling program.
START1	Performs housekeeping and loads the interface module, and Phase 5 into main storage.

Chart 11. Interface Module (IEJFAGA0) Routines



NOTE 1
AN INSTRUCTION TO BRANCH TO THESE ROUTINES IS A PART OF THE COMMUNICATION AREA. THESE INSTRUCTIONS ARE LABELED FNEXT, FIDRTN, FPRCTRL, AND FPATCH FOR SNEXT, SIORTN, PRCTRL, AND PATCH, RESPECTIVELY. WHEN THESE ROUTINES ARE NEEDED, A BRANCH TO THE PROPER INSTRUCTION IN THE COMMUNICATION AREA IS EXECUTED.

NOTE 2
THE CALLING ROUTINE MAY BE WITHIN A PHASE, WITHIN ANOTHER INTERFACE MODULE ROUTINE, OR WITHIN THE PERFORMANCE MODULE.

COMPILE-TIME I/O RECOVERY PROCEDURE

NOTE 3
* INTERFACE MOD *
* AND BSAM RTN *
* (SEE NOTE 4) *

NOTE 4
THE I/O SUPERVISOR IS ENTERED FROM THE SIORTN OF THE INTERFACE MODULE WHEN A READ, WRITE, OR CHECK MACRO-INSTRUCTION IS ISSUED.

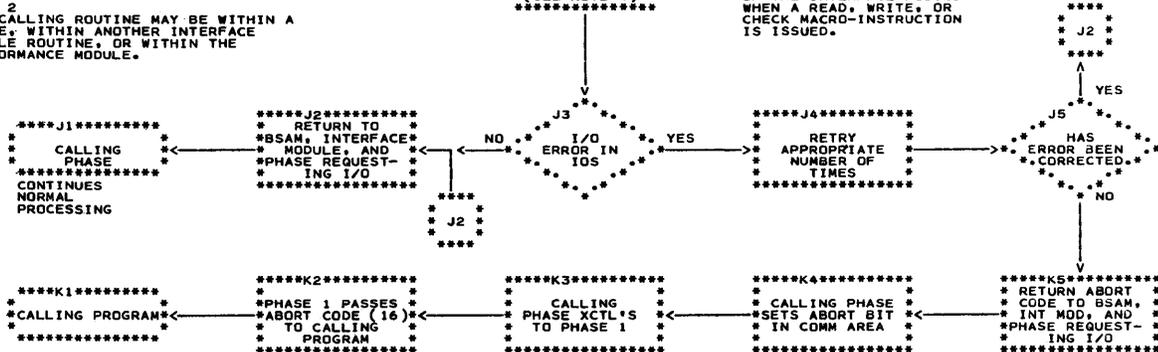


Chart 12. Performance Module (IEJFAPA0) I/O Routine

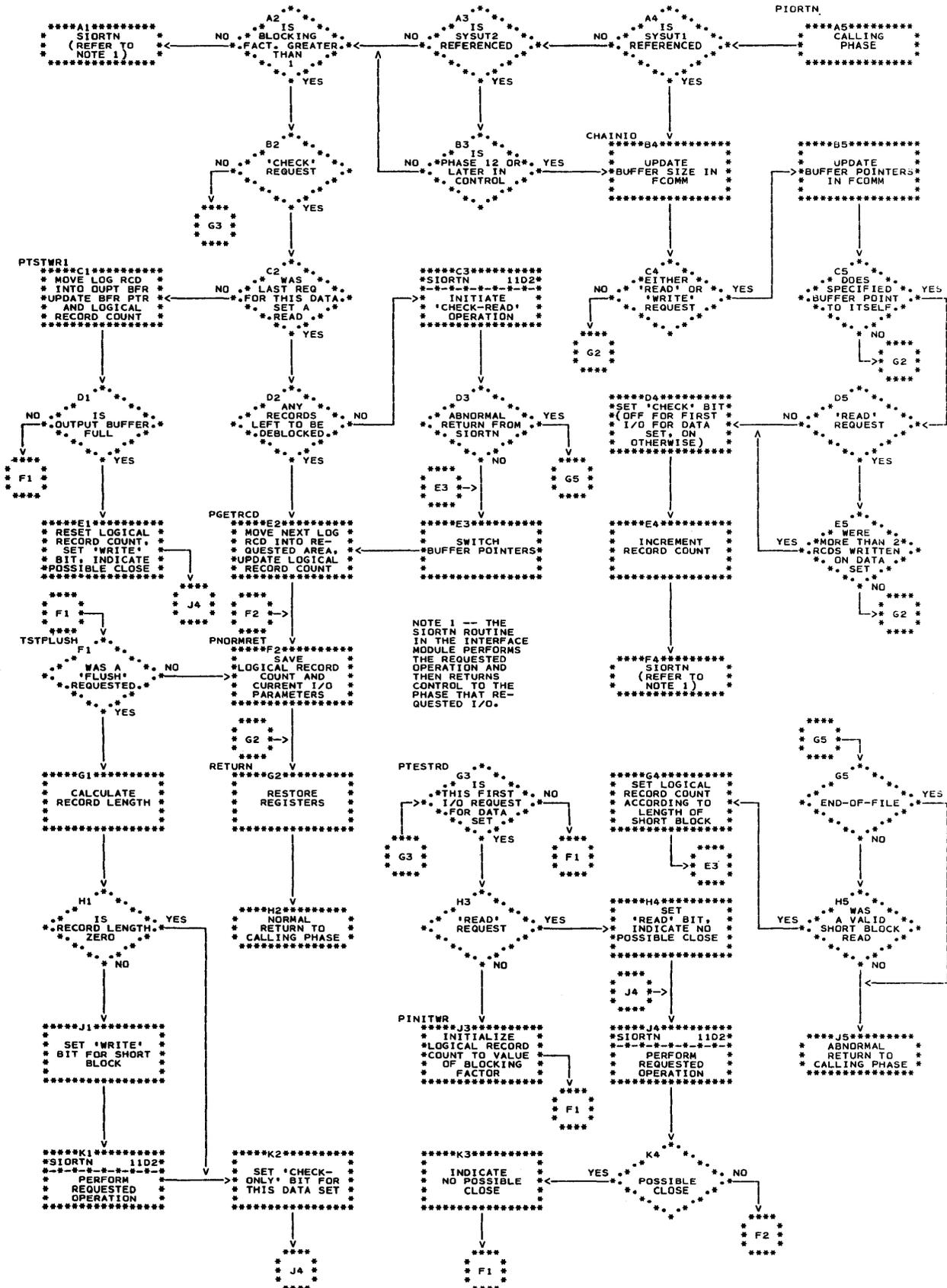


Chart 20. Phase 5 (IEJFCAA0) Overall Logic

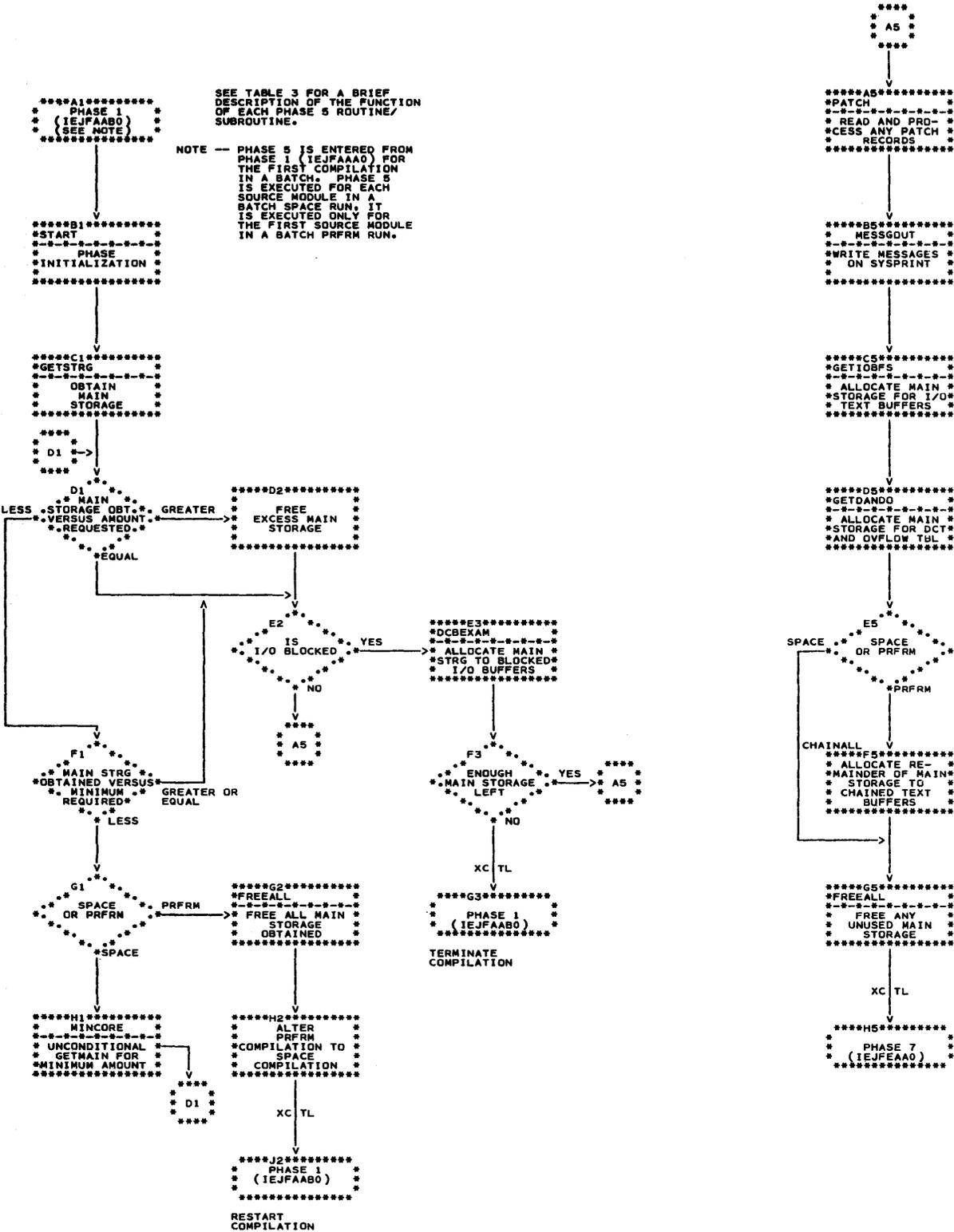


Table 3. Phase 5 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory

Routine/Subroutine	Function
ALLOCATE	Interpolates (using the allocation table) the amount of main storage to be allocated to the dictionary, overflow table, and text buffers.
ALLOC40	Completes the construction of SEGMAL (begun in GETSTRG).
CHAINALL	Allocates remainder of obtained main storage to text buffer chains (for PRFRM compilations only).
DCBEXAM	Determines the DCBs that have been opened, and allocates main storage to special block/deblock I/O buffers for those data sets for which blocking is specified.
FREEALL	Frees any unusable main storage.
GETDANDO	Allocates main storage to the dictionary and the overflow table.
GETIOBFS	Allocates main storage to the four I/O text buffers.
GETSTRG	Obtains main storage for the compiler.
MESSGOUT	Writes messages on SYSPRINT.
MINCORE	Obtains minimum amount of main storage required for a SPACE compilation.
PATCH	Builds patch table by reading and then converting patch records.
START	Performs Phase 5 initialization.

Chart 30. Phase 7 (IEJFEAA0) Overall Logic

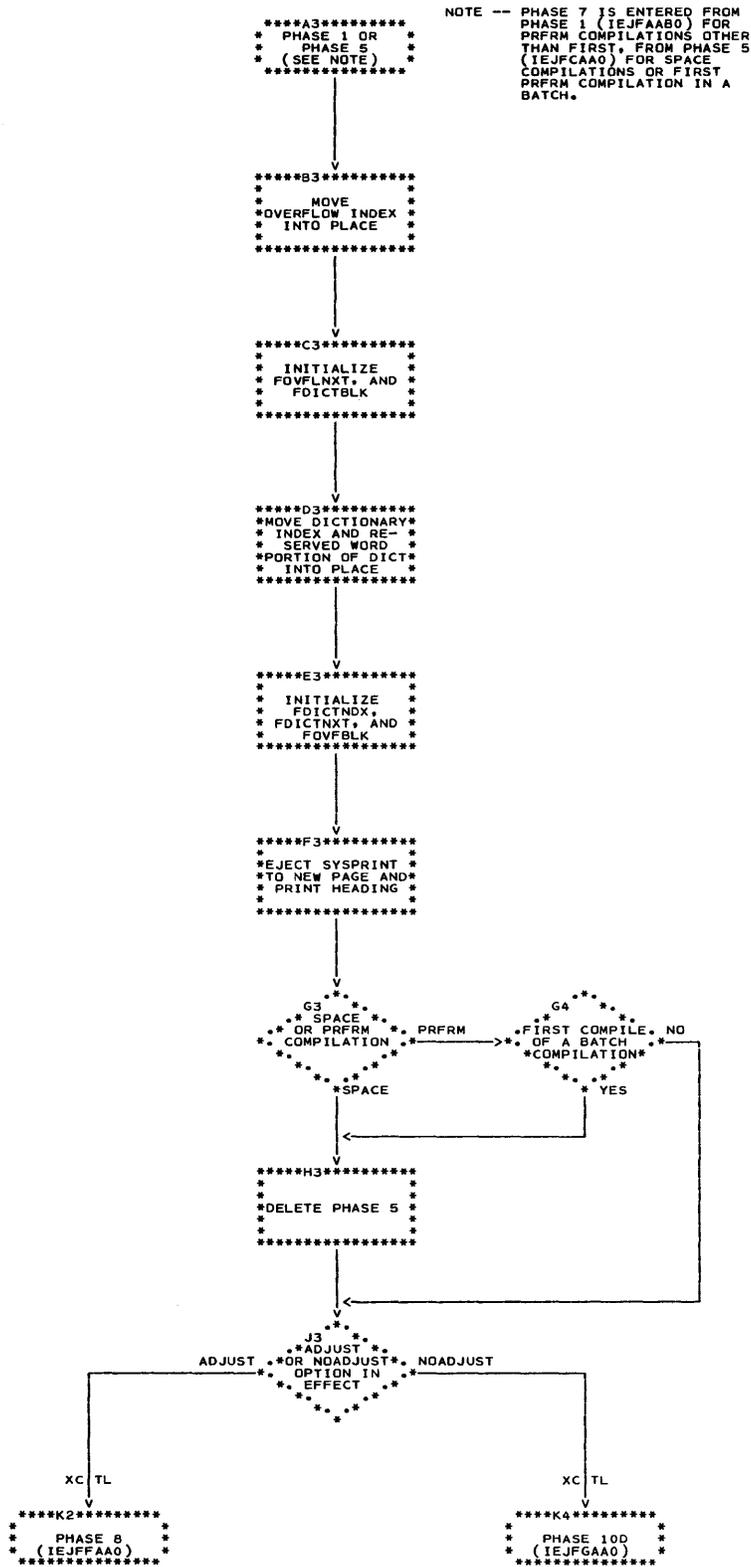


Chart 40. Phase 8 (IEJFFAA0) Overall Logic

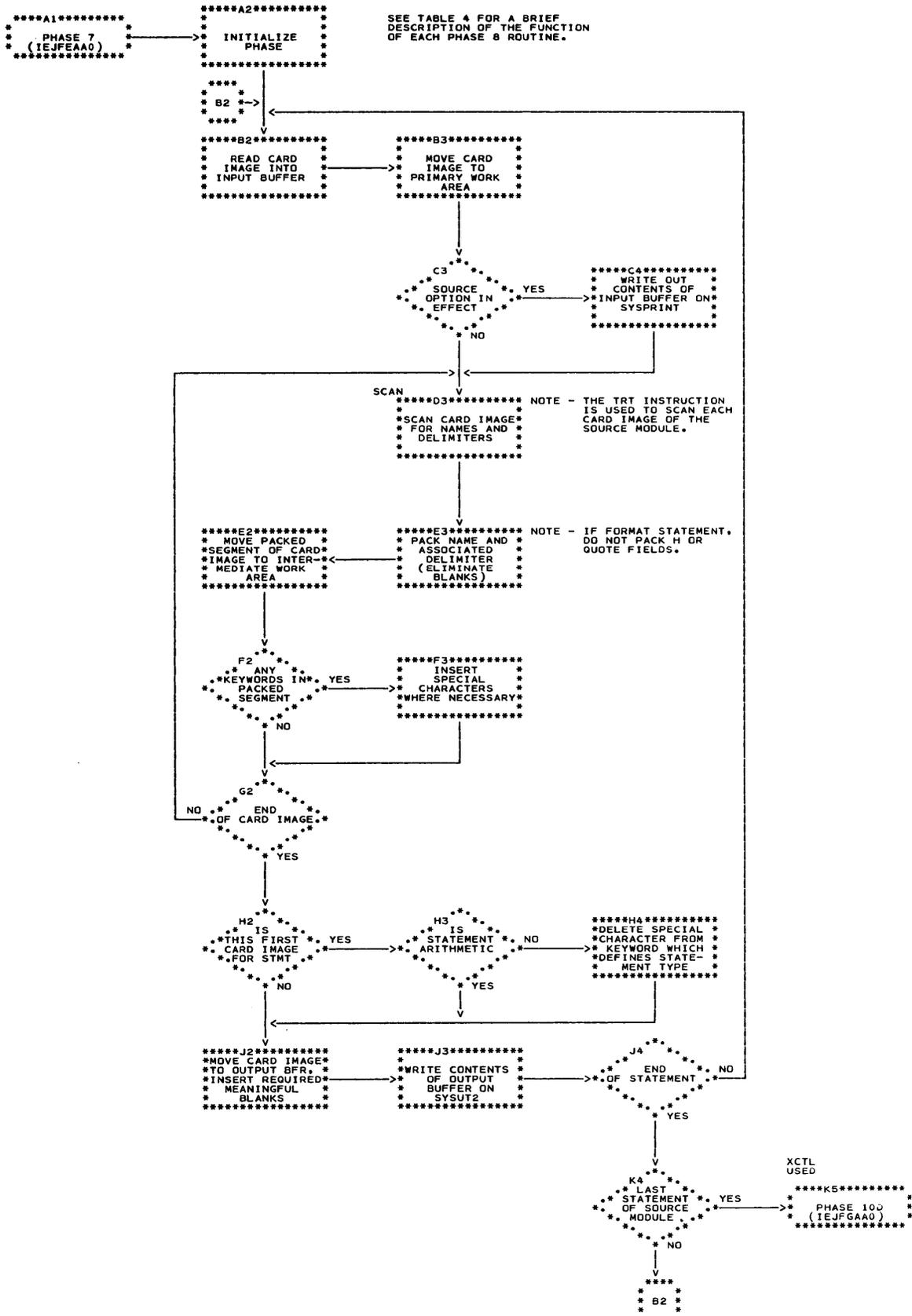


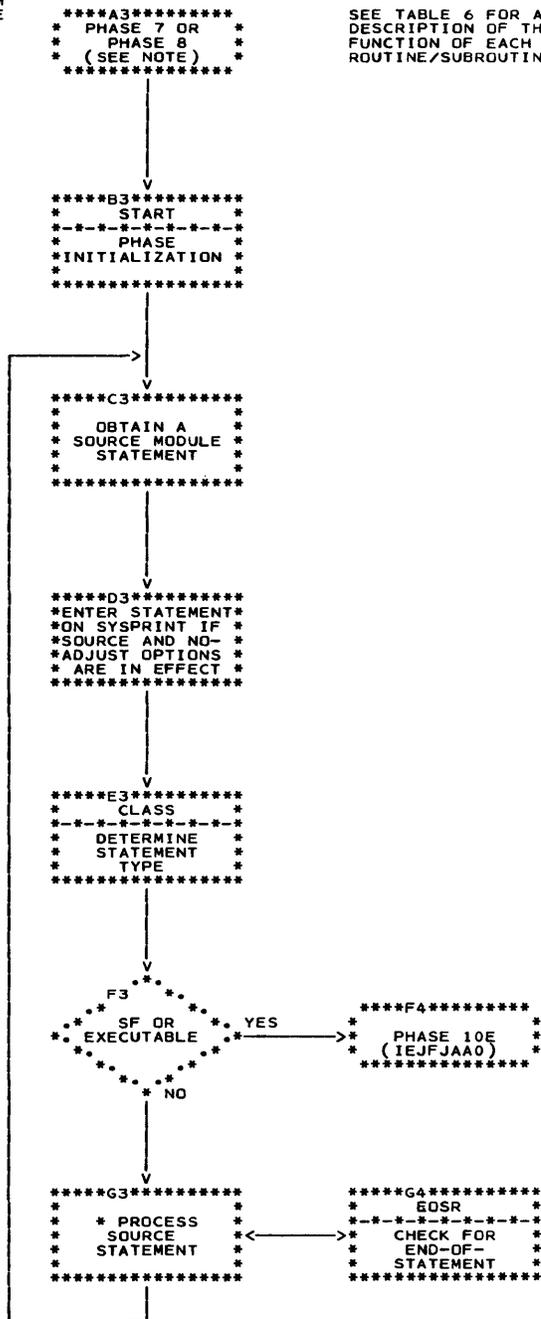
Table 4. Phase 8 Routine/Subroutine Directory

Routine/Subroutine	Function
BROOT	Branch table for delimiters that may appear in a FORTRAN statement.
DOOUT	Initializes move of DO statement to output area.
ENDCARD	Checks for the END statement.
ENDCOMP	Performs final Phase 8 processing when an END statement is encountered.
FINDEND	Moves remaining characters of statement to output area.
FMTEST	Tests for a possible FORMAT statement.
GET	Obtains next card image to be processed.
HMOVE	Moves Hollerith fields in FORMAT statements from input area to work area.
LBLSCN	Scans and packs statement numbers, and moves packed statement numbers to output buffer.
OUT	Determines statement type and initializes for output.
OUTMOD1	Moves statement control words to output area.
PACKSCAN	Begins processing of each statement.
PHASE8	Performs Phase 8 initialization.
PRINT1	Prints source module listing on the SYSPRINT data set if the SOURCE option is in effect.
PUT	Writes input for Phases 10D and 10E on SYSUT2.
RESUME	Performs initialization to resume statement processing after part of a statement has been processed.
SCAN	Scans and packs segments of card images, and moves packed segments from primary work area to intermediate work area.
SCAN3	Identifies reserved words.
SEARCH3	Checks for reserved words embedded within statement.
SSCAN	Identifies and determines length of Hollerith fields in FORMAT statements.

Chart 50. Phase 10D (IEJFGAA0) Overall Logic

NOTE -- PHASE 10D IS ENTERED FROM PHASE 7 (IEJFEAA0) IF THE NOADJUST OPTION IS IN EFFECT, FROM PHASE 8 (IEJFFAA0) IF THE ADJUST OPTION IS IN EFFECT.

SEE TABLE 6 FOR A BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FUNCTION OF EACH PHASE 10D ROUTINE/SUBROUTINE.



* SEE TABLE 5 FOR A LIST OF THE STATEMENTS PROCESSED BY PHASE 10D AND THE MAIN ROUTINES AND SUBROUTINES THAT PROCESS THESE STATEMENTS.

Table 5. Phase 10D Statement Processing

Statement Type	Main Processing Routine		Main Subroutines Used ³
REAL	REAL/INTGER/DOUBLE	1	Control is passed to DIM
INTEGER	REAL/INTGER/DOUBLE	1	
DOUBLE PRECISION	REAL/INTGER/DOUBLE	1	
DIMENSION	DIM	1	GETWD, RCOMA, CSORN, DIMSUB, WARN/ERRET
COMMON	COMMON	1 2	DIM
EQUIVALENCE	EQUIV	1 2	GETWD, CSORN, WARN/ERRET, RCOMA
EXTERNAL	EXTERN	1	GETWD, RCOMA, CSORN
FUNCTION	FUNCT	1 2	GETWD, CSORN, PUTX
SUBROUTINE	SUBRUT	1 2	
FORMAT	FORMAT	2	GETWD, WARN/ERRET, PUTX
DEFINE FILE	DEFINE	1 2	GETWD, CSORN, PUTX

¹Table entries may be prepared when processing this statement.
²Text is created when processing this statement.
³All routines except FORMAT use ERROR as an error exit for errors that cause termination of the statement processing. FORMAT has no error exit.

Table 6. Phase 10D Main Routine/Subroutine Directory

Routine/Subroutine	Function
CLASS	Determines which routine will process the statement type. May use LOADE and LABLU.
COMMON	Processes COMMON statements.
CSORN	Processes names, constants, data set reference numbers, and DO parameters. May use LITCON and SYMTLU.
DEFINE	Processes DEFINE FILE statements.
DIM	Processes the variables of DIMENSION, COMMON, INTEGER, REAL, and DOUBLE PRECISION statements.
DIMSUB	Scans the subscript portion of a statement that is dimensioning an array.
EOSR	Processes the end of statement.
ERROR	Enters error intermediate text for errors that cause termination of the processing of that statement.
EQUIV	Processes EQUIVALENCE statements.
EXTERN	Processes EXTERNAL statements.
FORMAT	Processes FORMAT statements.
FUNCT	Processes the header card image for a FUNCTION subprogram.
GETWD	Obtains a word or element in a statement and gets a new card image, if necessary. Prints the card if SOURCE option requested. May use PRMBLD.
INTGER/REAL/DOUBLE	Processes INTEGER, REAL, and DOUBLE PRECISION statements.
LABLU	Enters only statement number information into the overflow table. Uses LABTLU.
LABTLU	Enters all information into the overflow table.
LITCON	Processes literals.
LOADE	Performs end-of-phase processing and passes control to Phase 10E.
PRMBLD	Performs all operations associated with I/O interfacing and buffer switching.
PUTX	Puts entries into the SYSUT1 text buffers.
RCOMA	Enables skipping of redundant commas in a parameter list.
START	Performs initial phase housekeeping.
SUBRUT	Processes the header card for a SUBROUTINE subprogram.
SYMTLU	Enters symbols and/or units into the dictionary.
WARN/ERRET	Enters warning and error intermediate text for error and warning conditions that permit the continuation of the processing of the statement.

Chart 60. Phase 10E (IEJFJAA0) Overall Logic

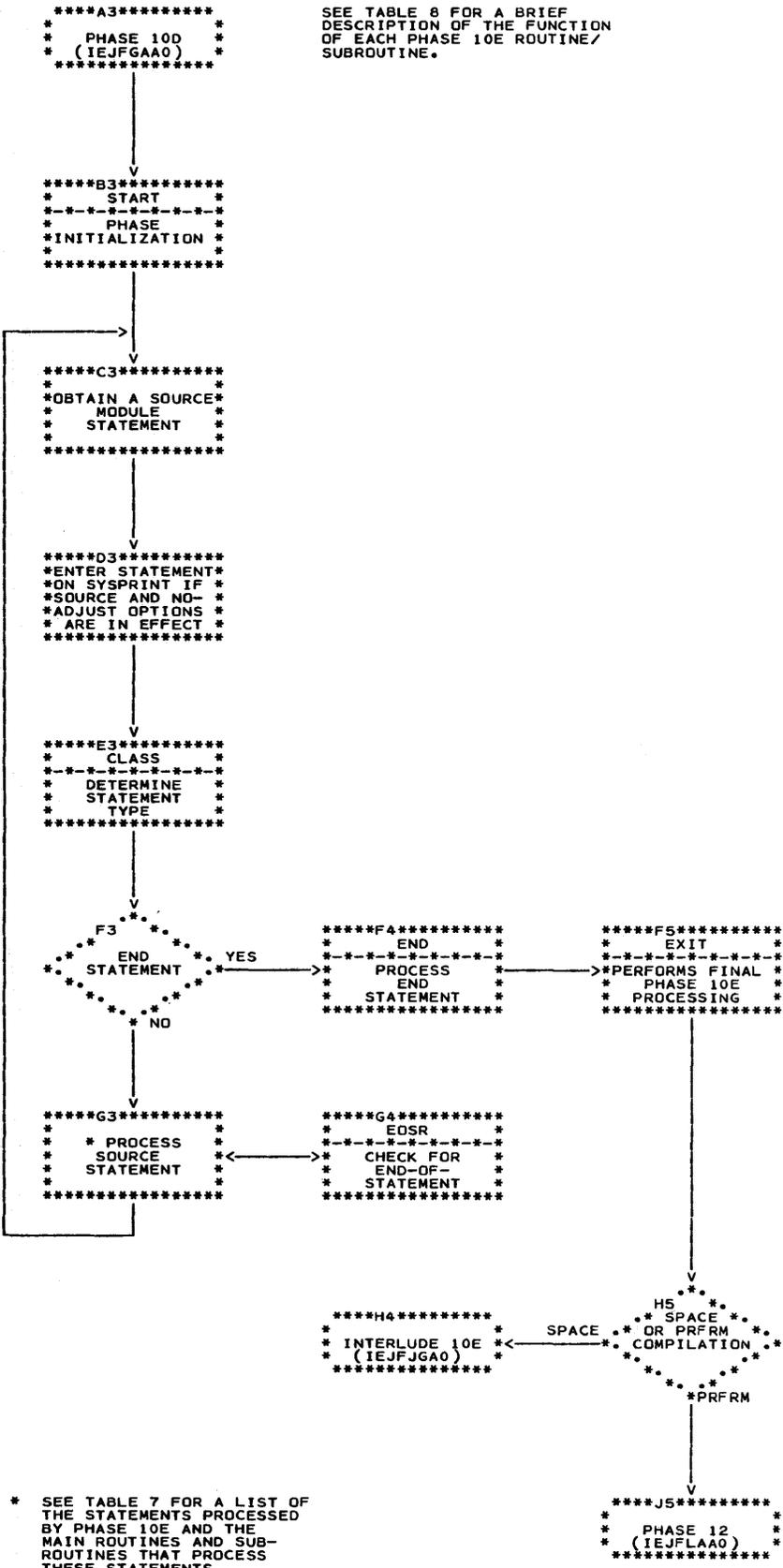


Table 7. Phase 10E Statement Processing

Statement Type	Main Processing Routine		Main Subroutines Used ³
ARITHMETIC	ARITH	1 2	CSORN, PUTX, GETWD, SUBS (ARITH may pass control to ASF, DO, and GO)
SF	ASF	1 2	CSORN, GETWD
CALL	CALL	1 2	PUTX, GETWD, CSORN (exits to ARITH)
DO	DO	1 2	ARITH, CSORN, GETWD, LABLU, PUTX
GO TO	GO	1 2	
COMP GO TO	GO	1 2	ARITH, GETWD, LABLU, PUTX, CSORN, WARN/ERRET
IF	SUBIF	1 2	GO, PUTX (exits to ARITH)
READ	READ/WRITE/FIND	1 2	
WRITE	READ/WRITE/FIND	1 2	GETWD, CSORN, PUTX, LABLU (exits to ARITH)
FIND	READ/WRITE/FIND	1 2	
FORMAT	FORMAT	2	GETWD, WARN/ERRET, PUTX
CONT	CONT/RETURN	2	
RETURN	CONT/RETURN	2	GETWD, WARN/ERRET, PUTX
STOP	STOP/PAUSE	2	
PAUSE	STOP/PAUSE	2	GETWD, PUTX (exits to CLASS)
BACKSPACE	BKSP/	1 2	
REWIND	REWIND/	1 2	CSORN, GETWD, PUTX
ENDFILE	ENDFIL	1 2	

¹Table entries may be prepared when processing this statement.

²Text is created when processing this statement.

³All routines except FORMAT and CONT/RETURN use ERROR as an error exit for errors that cause termination of the statement processing.

Table 8. Phase 10E Main Routine/Subroutine Directory

Routine/Subroutine	Function
ARITH	Processes arithmetic statements. May use SUBS.
ASF	Processes the parameter list of a statement function.
BKSP/REWIND/ENDFIL	Processes the BACKSPACE, REWIND, and ENDFILE statements.
CALL	Processes the name of a CALL statement.
CLASS	Determines which routine will process the statement type.
CONT/RETURN	Processes CONTINUE and RETURN statements.
CSORN	Processes names, constants, data set reference numbers, and DO parameters. May use LITCON and SYMTLU.
DO	Processes the DO statement and implied DOs.
END	Processes the END statement.
EOSR	Processes the end of the statement.
ERROR	Enters error text into the intermediate text and terminates the processing of current statement.
EXIT	Performs end-of-phase processing.
FORMAT	Processes FORMAT statements.
GETWD	Obtains a word or element in a statement and gets a new card image, if necessary. Prints the card if SOURCE option is requested. May use PRMBLD.
GO	Processes the statement number branched to by an IF, GO TO, or computed GO TO statement.
LABLU	Enters only statement number information into the overflow table. Uses LABTLU.
LABTLU	Enters all information into the overflow table.
LITCON	Processes literals.
PRMBLD	Performs all operations associated with I/O interfacing and buffer switching.
PUTX	Puts entries into the intermediate text buffers.
READ/WRITE/FIND	Processes the portion of the statement preceding the I/O list.
START	Performs Phase 10E initialization.
STOP/PAUSE	Processes the STOP and PAUSE statements.
SUBIF	Begins the IF statement processing.
SUBS	Processes subscript variables.
SYMTLU	Enters symbols and/or units into the dictionary.
WARN/ERRET	Processes warning and error conditions that do not prevent completion of the processing of the current statement.

Chart 70. Phase 12 (IEJFLAA0) Overall Logic

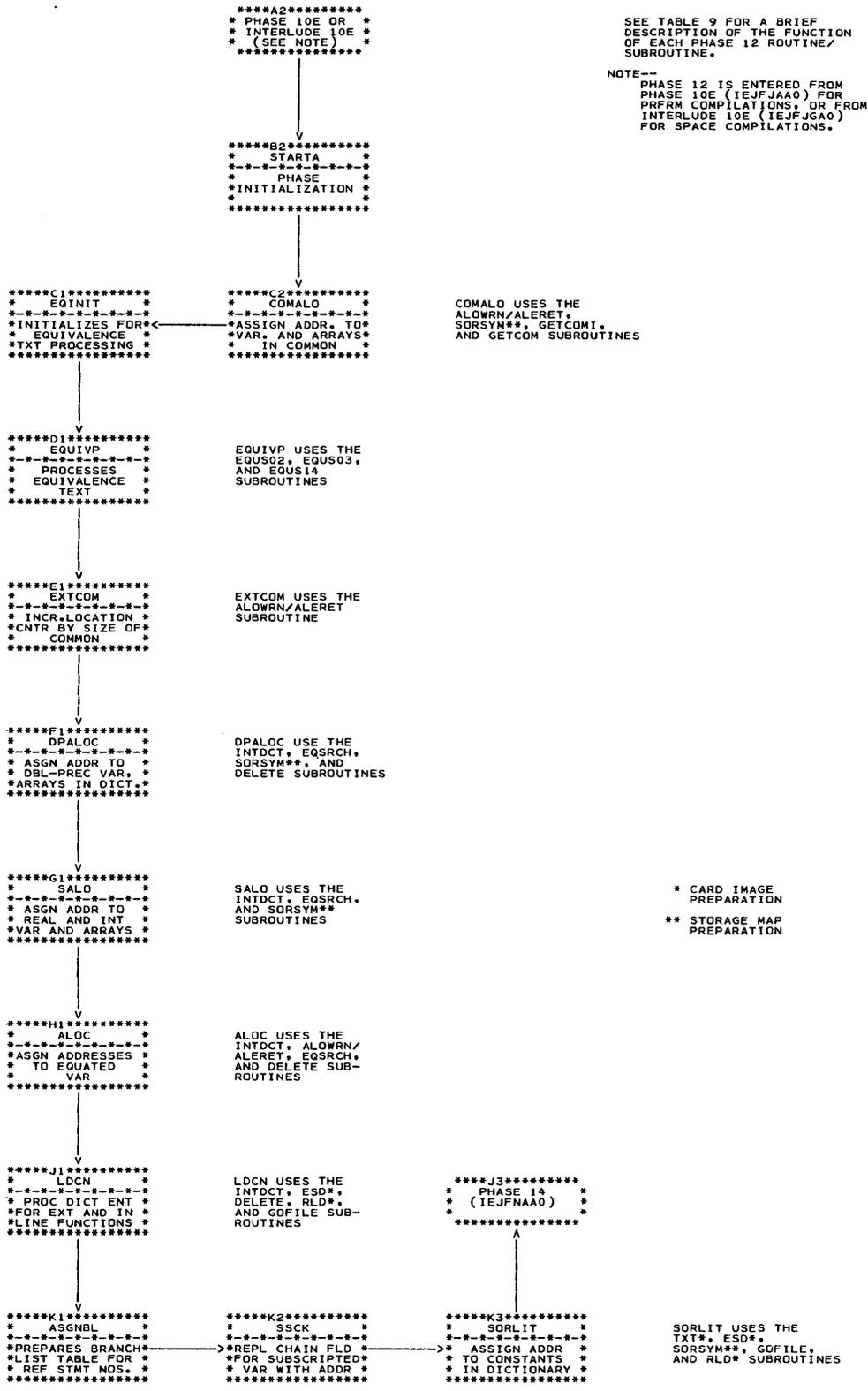


Table 9. Phase 12 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory

Routine/Subroutine	Function
ALOC	Assigns addresses to all equated variables.
ALOWRN/ALERET	Processes the error and warning conditions detected in Phase 12.
ASGNBL	Allocates a branch list position for each referenced stmt. number.
COMALO	Assigns addresses for variables or arrays to be placed in COMMON and removes these variables from the appropriate dictionary chain.
DELETE	Removes dictionary entries from chain.
DPALOC	Assigns addresses to all double-precision variables or arrays entered in the dictionary.
EQINIT	Performs initialization for equivalence text processing.
EQSRCH	Checks for variables previously equated to a root.
EQUIVP	Performs equivalence text processing.
EQU02	Processes first name in an EQUIVALENCE group.
EQU03	Processes rest of EQUIVALENCE group and switches root if necessary.
EQU14	Processes all equated variables and arrays in COMMON.
ESD	Processes ESD card images.
EXTCOM	Enters size of COMMON in comm. area, and adjusts location counter.
GETCOM/GETEQUIV	Updates COMMON or EQUIVALENCE text pointer, reads in text records.
GETCOMI	Initializes pointers and I/O parameters for COMMON-EQUIVALENCE text.
GOFILE	Generates card images for data sets SYSLIN and/or SYSPUNCH.
INTDCT	Retrieves entries from the dictionary.
LDCN	Processes dictionary entries for functions and external references. Also prepares ESD section definition card images for the object module and COMMON areas.
RENTER/ENTR	Enters variables in the EQUIVALENCE table either as a root or as an equated variable.
RLD	Processes RLD card images.
SALO	Assigns addresses to real and integer variables and arrays.
SORLIT	Assigns addresses and generates text card images for all literals (constants); performs the final processing of the phase.
SORSYM	Arranges and prints the storage map for all arrays, constants, and external references assigned addresses by Phase 12.
SSCK	Replaces pointers to variables used in subscript expressions with addresses assigned by Phase 12.
STARTA	Initializes Phase 12.
SWROOT	Changes a root previously entered.
TXT	Processes TXT card images.

Chart 80. Phase 14 (IEJFNAA0) Overall Logic

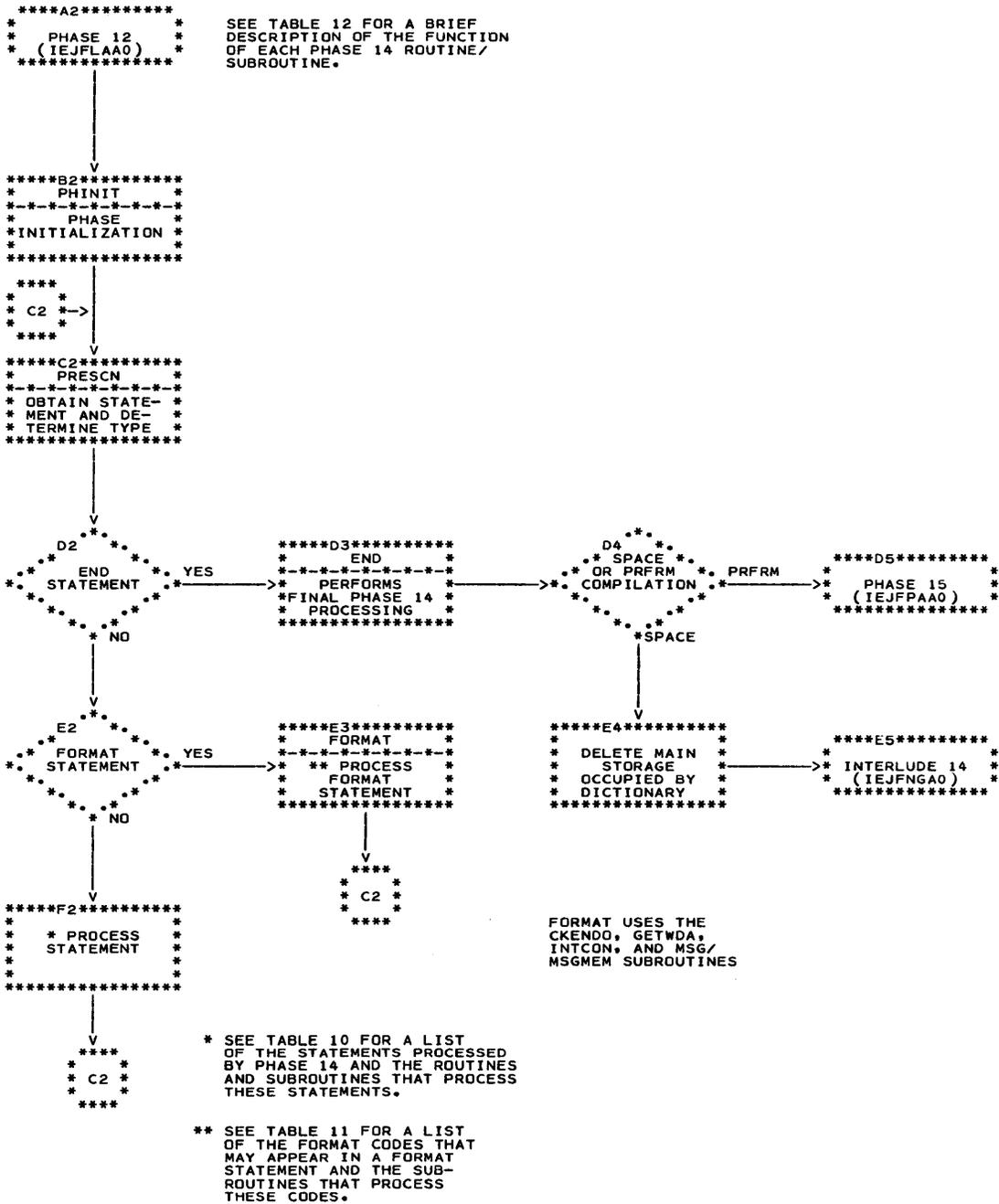


Table 10. Phase 14 Statement Processing (FORMAT Statements Excluded)

Statement Type	Main Processing Routine	Main Subroutines Used
FORMAT	FORMAT	Refer to Table 11
WRITE	READWR	UNITCK, ERROR, MSGMEM
READ	READ	
SUBROUTINE	SUBFUN	RDPOTA ¹ , MSGMEM, RPTRB
FUNCTION	SUBFUN	
CONTINUE	SKIP	MSGMEM
BACKSPACE	BSPREF	UNITCK, MSGMEM
REWIND	BSPREF	
ENDFILE	BSPREF	
DO	DO	CKENDO, ERROR, MSGMEM, RDPOTA ¹
STATEMENT NUMBER	LABEL	None
SF	ASF	PASSON, CEM, RPTRB
RETURN	RETURN	CKENDO, MSGMEM, SKIP
STOP	STOP	CKENDO, SKIP
PAUSE	PAUSE	CKENDO, SKIP, RDPOTA ¹
INVALID	INVOP	None
ERROR	ERWNEM	None
WARNING	ERWNEM	
END MARK	MSG	None
IF	PASSON	CEM
ARITH	PASSON	
CALL	PASSON	
GO TO	PASSON	
COMP GO TO	CGOTO	CKENDO, RDPOTA, MSG, MSGMEM
COMMON	COMEQUIV	None
EQUIVALENCE	COMEQUIV	
DEFINE FILE	PASSON	CEM

¹Replaces dictionary pointers.

Table 11. Phase 14 FORMAT Statement Processing

FORMAT Code	Main Subroutine Used
blank	BLANKZ
D	FMDCON
E	FMECON
F	FMFCON
I	FMTINT
A	FMACON
X	FMXCON
P	FSCALE
+	FMPLUS
-	FMINUS
(	LPAREN
/	FSLASH
T	FSUBST
H	FHOLER
'	FQUOTE
,	FCOMMA
)	RPAREN

Table 12. Phase 14 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory

Routine/Subroutine	Function
ASF	Processes the SF definition text.
BLANKZ	Processes any blanks encountered while scanning a FORMAT statement.
BSPREF	Processes BACKSPACE, REWIND, and ENDFILE statement text.
CEM/RDPOTA/RPTRB	Completes text processing for arithmetic, BACKSPACE, REWIND, ENDFILE, GO TO, DO, CALL, IF, PAUSE, and SF definition statements.
CGOTO	Processes text for computed GO TO statements.
CKENDO	Determines if a statement has invalidly ended a DO loop.
COMEQUIV	Deletes COMMON and EQUIVALENCE text from intermediate text.
DO	Performs diagnostic checks on the DO variable and the DO parameter.
END	Processes END text.
ERROR	Generates intermediate text for errors detected in Phase 14.
ERWNEM	Processes error and warning text.

(Continued)

Table 12. Phase 14 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory (Continued)

Routine/Subroutine	Function
FCOMMA	Processes any commas found in a FORMAT statement.
FHOLER	Processes the H specification in a FORMAT statement.
FMACON	Processes the A specification in a FORMAT statement.
FMDCON	Processes the D specification in a FORMAT statement.
FMECON	Processes the E specification in a FORMAT statement.
FMFCON	Processes the F specification in a FORMAT statement.
FMINUS	Processes the '-' specification in a FORMAT statement.
FMPLUS	Processes the '+' specification in a FORMAT statement.
FMTINT	Processes the T specification in a FORMAT statement.
FMXCON	Processes the X specification in a FORMAT statement.
FORMAT	Performs and directs some FORMAT processing. May use INTCON.
FQUOTE	Processes the apostrophe specification in a FORMAT statement.
FSCALE	Processes the P specification in a FORMAT statement.
FSLASH	Processes the slash format specification in a FORMAT statement.
FSUBST	Processes the T specification in a FORMAT statement.
GETWDA	Scans FORMAT statements.
INTCON	Converts integer constants to binary and checks their validity.
INVOP	Processes invalid adjective codes.
LABEL	Processes statement number definition text.
LPAREN	Processes left parentheses.
MSG/MSGMEM	Inserts error/warning messages into text and detects end of stmt.
PASSON	Processes CALL, IF, and arithmetic IF statement text.
PAUSE	Processes PAUSE statement text.
PHINIT	Performs phase initialization.
PRESCN	Performs phase initialization and controls processing of int. text.
READ/READWR	Processes READ/WRITE text.
RETURN	Processes RETURN statement text.
RPAREN	Processes any right parenthesis occurring in a FORMAT statement.
SKIP	Processes CONTINUE statement text.
STOP	Processes STOP statement text.
SUBFUN	Processes SUBROUTINE and FUNCTION text entries.
UNITCK	Checks validity of symbols used to reference a DSRN.

Table 13. Phase 15 Nonarithmetic Statement Processing

Statement Type or Adjective Cd	Main Processing Routine ¹	Main Subroutines Used
COMPUTED GO TO	CGOTO	LAB, CEM
DEFINE FILE	DEFNFL	None
DO	DO	LAB1, CEM
END MARK	MSG	None
ERROR	ERWNEM	None
GOTO	GOTO	LAB, CEM
INVALID	INVOP	ERROR
I/O LIST	BEGIO	MSGMEM
STATEMENT NUMBER	LABEL	ERROR
WARNING	ERWNEM	None
READ/WRITE	DO2	CEM
RETURN/CONTINUE	SKIP	None

¹Routine MSGNEM/MSGMEM/MSG is entered from all these routines except ERWNEM and LABEL. These two routines return control directly to PRESCN.

Table 14. Phase 15 Arithmetic Operator Processing

Operator	Main Processing Routine	Main Subroutines Used
ADD	ADD	FREER, SAVER ¹ , SYMBOL, MODE, MVSBXX, FINDR, LOADR1
ARGUMENT	COMMA	CKARG, ERROR, WARN, SAVER ¹ , INLIN2, INARG, MSGMEM
CALL FORCING	CALL	MSG
DIVIDE	MULT	SYMBOL, MODE, LOADR1, CHCKGR ¹ , SAVER ¹ , FREER, DIV, MVSBXR, MVSBXX
EQUAL	EQUALS	ERROR, TYPE, MODE, MVSBXR, WARN, MVSBXR, ASFDEF
EXPONENTIATION	EXPON	SYMBOL, MODE, CKARG
FUNCTION (	FUNC	CKARG, INLIN1
ILLEGAL	INVOP	ERROR
LEFT PAREN	LFTPRN	CKARG, ERROR, ARTHIF, WARN, LOADR1
MULTIPLY	MULT	SYMBOL, MODE, MVSBXX, LOADR1, CHCKGR ¹ , FREER
RIGHT PAREN	RTPRN	ERROR
SUBTRACT	ADD	SYMBOL, MODE, MVSBXX, FINDR, LOADR1, FREER, SAVER ¹
UNARY MINUS	UMINUS	TYPE, FINDR, LOADR1, MVSBXR, INVOP
UNARY PLUS	UPLUS	INVOP

¹Specific sections of the SAVER and CHCKGR routines operate upon specific registers (general registers 0, 1, 2, 3; floating point register 0, 2, 4, 6).

Table 15. Phase 15 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory

Routine/Subroutine	Function
ADD	Determines register assignment for add, subtract, multiply, and divide operators.
ARTHIF	Processes the statement numbers of an arithmetic IF statement.
ASFDEF	Processes statement function definitions.
BEGIO	Processes the I/O list of READ and WRITE statements.
CALL	Processes CALL statements.
CEM	Checks for an end mark.
CHCKGR	Obtains a specific general register for assignment.
CKARG	Checks the argument in an external call for validity, and ensures that the argument has a storage location.
COMMA	Processes the argument lists.
CGOTO	Processes the statement numbers in a computed GO TO statement.
DEFNFL	Processes DEFINE FILE statements.
DIV	Processes integer operands of a divide operation.
DO	Processes DO statements.
DO2	Writes out a text word if not an end mark.
END	Determines if the arithmetic IF, arithmetic, and SF statements were processed.
EQUALS	Processes equal adjective code text.
ERROR	Processes error conditions detected in the phase.
ERWNEM	Processes end mark, error, and warning text.
EXPON	Processes exponentiation text.
FINDR	Finds a register and indicates that it is a register.
FOSCAN	Checks the syntax of arithmetic, arithmetic IF, CALL, and SF statements, and orders the arithmetic expression text according to a hierarchy of operators. Uses END.
FREER	Indicates a register is available.
FUNC	Processes one-argument functions.
GOTO	Processes statement numbers referenced by a GO TO statement.
INARG	Processes the argument of an in-line function.
INLIN1	Processes one-argument, in-line functions.
INLIN2	Processes two-argument, in-line functions.
INVOP	Processes invalid adjective codes.
LAB	Checks for illegal statement number references.

(Continued)

Table 15. Phase 15 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory (Continued)

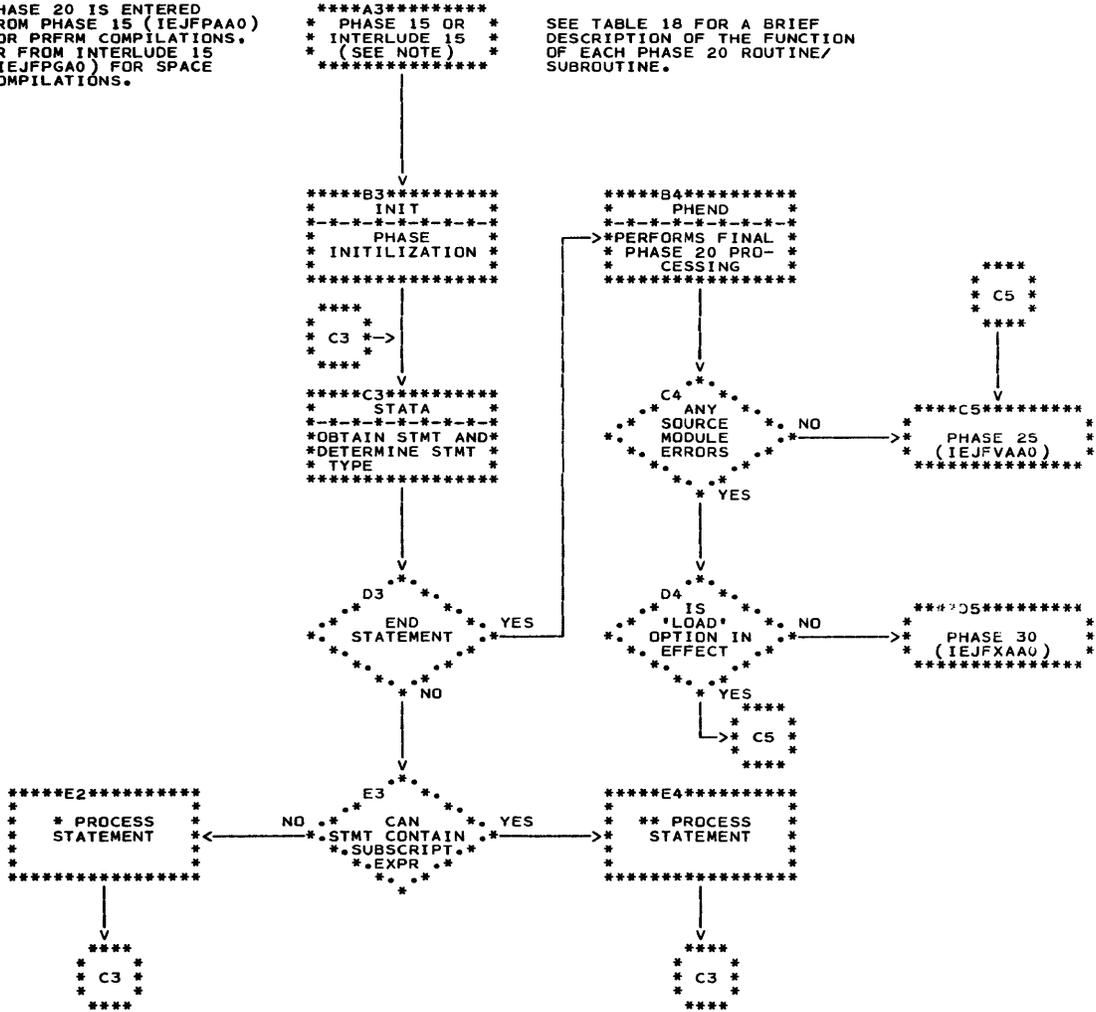
Routine/Subroutine	Function
LAB1	Checks whether label is defined.
LABEL	Checks statement numbers used to indicate the end of a DO loop.
LFTPRN	Process the text for a left parenthesis.
LOADR1	Enters an operand into a specific register.
MODE	Checks the mode of operands and changes them if necessary.
MOPUP	Performs final phase processing for Phase 15.
MSGNEM/MSGMEM/MSG	Processes the remaining text words of a statement and puts out any necessary error, warning, and end do text.
MULT	Aids in processing the operands of multiply and divide instructions.
MVSBXR/MVSBRX	Processes a left operand subscripted variable.
MVSBXX	Processes a left operand subscripted variable if the right operand might also be a subscripted variable.
PRESCN	Determines what statement type is represented in the text and which major routine will process it.
RTPRN	Processes illegal use of right parenthesis as a delimiter.
SAVER	Stores the contents of a specified register into the next available work area space.
SKIP	Processes RETURN and CONTINUE statements.
SYMBOL	Checks the left and right operands of an operator.
TYPE	Checks each symbol used as an operand.
UMINUS	Processes unary minus operations.
UPLUS	Processes unary plus operations.
WARN	Processes warning conditions detected in the phase.

Chart A0. Phase 20 (IEJFRAA0) Overall Logic

NOTE--

PHASE 20 IS ENTERED FROM PHASE 15 (IEJFPA0) FOR PRFRM COMPILATIONS, OR FROM INTERLUDE 15 (IEJFPGA0) FOR SPACE COMPILATIONS.

SEE TABLE 18 FOR A BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FUNCTION OF EACH PHASE 20 ROUTINE/SUBROUTINE.



* SEE TABLE 16 FOR A LIST OF: 1) THE STATEMENTS PROCESSED BY PHASE 20 THAT DO NOT CONTAIN SUBSCRIPT EXPRESSIONS, AND 2) THE MAIN ROUTINES AND SUBROUTINES THAT PROCESS THESE STATEMENTS.

** SEE TABLE 17 FOR A LIST OF: 1) THE STATEMENTS PROCESSED BY PHASE 20 THAT MAY CONTAIN SUBSCRIPT EXPRESSIONS, AND 2) THE MAIN ROUTINES AND SUBROUTINES THAT PROCESS THESE STATEMENTS.

Table 16. Phase 20 Nonsubscript Optimization Processing

Statement Type	Main Processing Routine	Main Subroutines Used
DO	DO	BVLSR, RMVBVL
END DO	ENDDO	None
IMPLIED DO	IOLIST	BVLSR, CALSEQ, RMVBVL, SUBVP
READ	READ	None
STATEMENT NUMBER	LABEL	None

Table 17. Phase 20 Subscript Optimization Processing

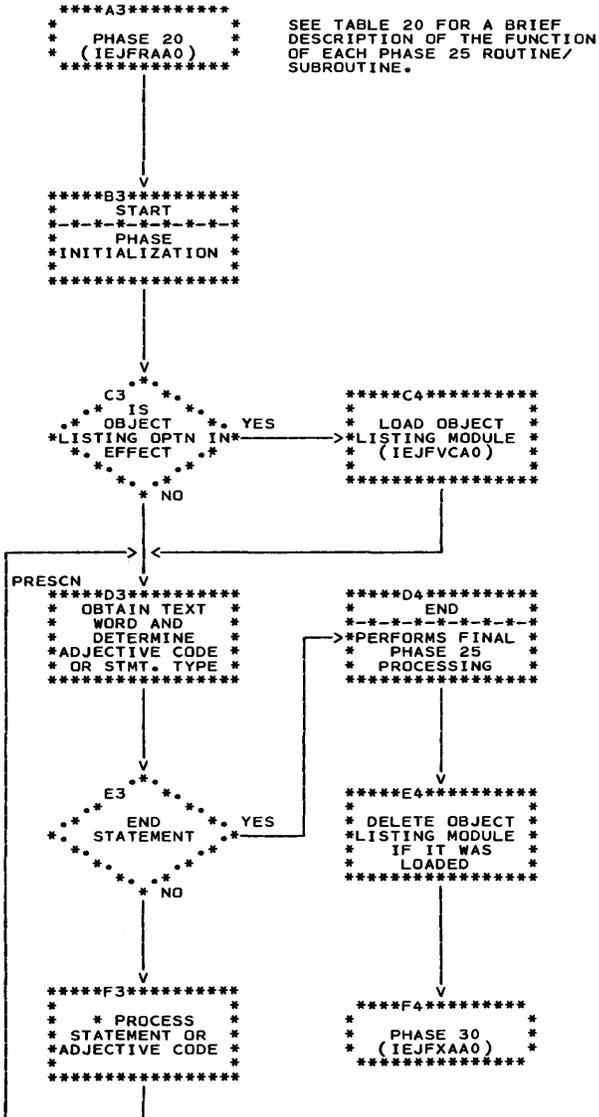
Statement Type	Main Processing Routine	Main Subroutines Used
ARITHMETIC ¹	ARITH	CALSEQ, CKCOD, RMVBVL, SUBVP
CALL ¹	IFCALL	BVLSR, CALSEQ, RMVBVL, SUBVP
IF ¹	IFCALL	None
I/O ¹	IOLIST	BVLSR, CALSEQ, RMVBVL, SUBVP

¹Whenever exponentiation is encountered subroutine ESDRLD processes the exponentiation operands.

Table 18. Phase 20 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory

Routine/Subroutine	Function
ARITH	Optimizes arithmetic statement text.
BVLSR	Enters bound variables on the bound variable list.
CALSEQ	Processes argument lists.
CKCOD	Assigns an area and a constant for use by the IFIX, FLOAT, and DFLOAT in-line functions.
DO	Processes DO statements.
DUMPR	Processes dummy subscripted variables.
ENDDO	Ensures that the end of a DO loop is recognized.
ESDRLD	Generates ESD and RLD card images.
GENGEN	Begins the generation of literals.
IFCALL	Optimizes the arithmetic expression of an arithmetic IF statement or a CALL statement.
INIT	Performs Phase 20 initialization.
IOLIST	Processes DO variables of an implied DO and I/O lists of READ/WRITE statements.
LABEL	Modifies register assignments due to referenced statement numbers.
PHEND	Performs final Phase 20 processing.
READ	Processes external references within a READ statement.
RMVBVL	Removes register assignments from the index mapping table for subscript expressions that involve bound variables.
STATA	Checks the statement type represented by the text and determines the correct Phase 20 processing routine.
SUBVP	Optimizes subscript expressions.

Chart B0. Phase 25 (IEJFVAA0) Overall Logic



* SEE TABLE 19 FOR A LIST OF THE STATEMENTS AND ADJECTIVE CODES PROCESSED BY PHASE 25 AND THE MAIN ROUTINES AND SUBROUTINES THAT PROCESS THE STATEMENTS OR ADJECTIVE CODES.

Table 19. Phase 25 Statement and Adjective Code Processing

Statement or Operation	Main Processing Routine ⁴	Main Subroutines Used
AOP	AOP	BASCHK
Arith expressions in approximate instr. form	RXGEN/LM/STM	BASCHK/RROUT, RXOUT
SF DEFINITION	ASFDEF ¹	LISTOUTB
SF USAGE	ASFUSE	BASCHK/RROUT, RXOUT
BACKSPACE	RDWRT	BASCHK, ARGOUT, GET, RXOUT
CALL	FUNGEN	BASCHK/RROUT
COMPUTED GOTO	CGOTO	BASCHK/RROUT, ARGOUT
DO	DO1	BASCHK, RXOUT
END DO	ENDDO	BASCHK, RXOUT
END FILE	RDWRT	BASCHK, ARGOUT, RXOUT, GET
END I/O LIST	ENDIO	RXOUT
ERROR	IBERR	BASCHK, RROUT
FUNCTION	SUBRUT ²	GENBR, GET, RROUT, RXOUT
FUNCTION CALL	FUNGEN	BASCHK/RROUT, RXOUT
GO TO	TRGEN	BASCHK/RROUT, RXOUT
IF	ARITHI	BASCHK/RROUT
IMPLIED DO	DO1	BASCHK, RXOUT, LISTOUTB
I/O LIST ITEM	IOLIST	ARGOUT, BASCHK/RROUT, RXOUT
LABEL	LABEL ³	LISTOUT1
LOAD MULTIPLE	LM	BASCHK/RROUT, RXOUT
PAUSE	PAUSE	BASCHK/RROUT, RXOUT
READ/WRITE/FIND	RDWRT	BASCHK/RROUT, ARGOUT, RXOUT
RETURN	RETURN	BASCHK/RROUT, RXOUT, LISTOUT1
REWIND	RDWRT	BASCHK, ARGOUT, RXOUT
STOP	STOP	None
STORE MULTIPLE	STM	BASCHK/RROUT, RXOUT
SUBROUTINE	SUBRUT ²	GENBR, BASCHK/RROUT, RXOUT
SUBSCRIPT	SAOP	BASCHK/RROUT, RXOUT

¹Makes an entry in the statement function and DO branch list table.
²Makes an entry in the epillog table.
³Makes an entry in the statement number branch list table.
⁴All of the above routines return control to the PRESCN routine to begin the processing of the next text word.

Table 20. Phase 25 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory

Routine/Subroutine	Function
AOP	Processes subscript text when the entire subscript expression need not be calculated.
ARGOUT	Inserts addresses for arguments into the object module.
ARITHI	Processes arithmetic IF statements.
ASFDEF	Processes the first text word of a statement function definition.
ASFUSE	Generates instructions to use a statement function at object time.
BASCHK/RROUT, RXOUT	Generates RX and RR format instructions.
CGOTO	Processes computed GO TO statement text.
DO1	Begins processing of the DO statement text.
END	Performs the final Phase 25 processing.
ENDDO	Generates instructions to end a DO loop.
ENDIO	Processes the end I/O text.
FUNGEN/IBERR	Processes in-line and library function calls.
GENBR	Makes entries to the branch list tables.
GET	Obtains intermediate text words.
IOLIST	Processes the I/O list substatement text.
LABEL	Processes statement number definition text entries.
LISTOUTB/LISTOUT1	Generates branch list text.
PRESCN	Determines which routine will process a particular portion of intermediate text.
RDWRT	Processes READ, WRITE, FIND, BACKSPACE, REWIND, and ENDFILE statements.
RETURN	Processes RETURN statement text.
RXGEN/LM/STM	Processes intermediate text entries with adjective codes between 25 and 8F (hexadecimal).
SAOP	Processes subscript text when the entire subscript ordering factor must be calculated.
START	Performs phase initialization.
STOP/PAUSE	Generates instructions for the STOP and PAUSE statement text.
SUBRUT	Processes FUNCTION and SUBROUTINE header card text.
TRGEN	Generates branching instructions for GO TO statements.

Chart C0. Phase 30 (IEJFXAA0) Overall Logic

NOTE--

PHASE 30 IS ENTERED FROM PHASE 20 (IEJFRAA0) IF THE NOLOAD OPTION IS IN EFFECT AND IF SOURCE MODULE ERRORS WERE DETECTED, OTHERWISE, PHASE 30 IS ENTERED FROM PHASE 25 (IEJFVAA0).

```
*****A2*****
* PHASE 20 OR *
* PHASE 25 *
* (SEE NOTE) *
*****
```

SEE TABLE 21 FOR A BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FUNCTION OF EACH PHASE 30 ROUTINE/SUBROUTINE.

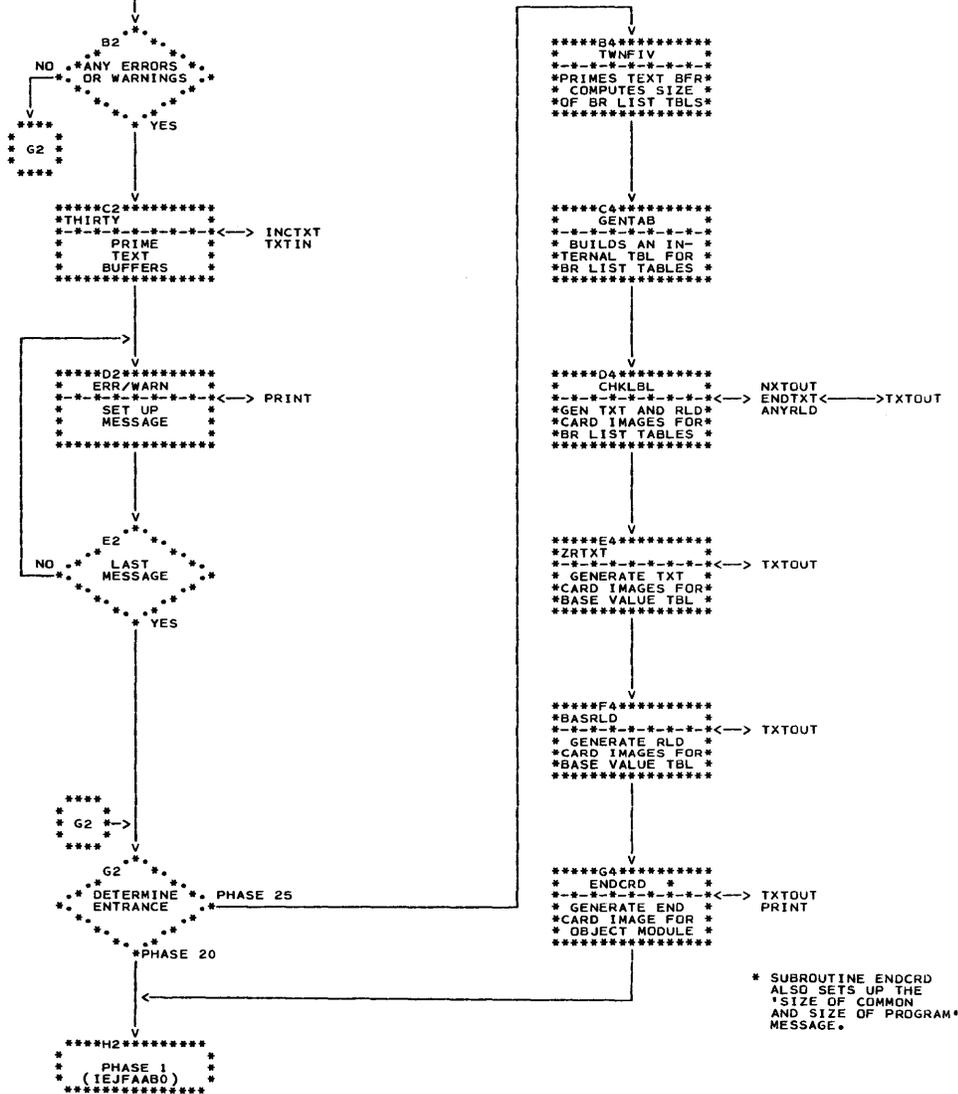


Table 21. Phase 30 Main Routine/Subroutine Directory

Routine/Subroutine	Function
ANYRLD	Generates RLD card images for branch list tables.
BASRLD	Generates RLD card images for base value table.
CHKLBL	Controls generation of TXT and RLD card images for branch lists.
ENDCRD	Generates END card image for object module, and sets up 'SIZE OF COMMON and SIZE OF PROGRAM' message.
ENDTXT	Switches input/output buffers.
ERR/WARN	Sets up error and warning messages.
GENTAB	Builds an internal table for branch list tables.
INCTXT	Increments intermediate text pointer.
NXTOUT	Generates TXT card images for branch list tables.
PRINT	Interfaces with control program to print messages.
THIRTY	Primes input text buffers.
TWNFIV	Primes input text buffers.
TXTIN	Reads intermediate text.
TXTOUT	Outputs card images on SYSLIN and/or SYSPUNCH data sets.
ZRTXT	Generates TXT card images for base value table.

APPENDIX A: MAIN STORAGE ALLOCATION

The amount of main storage allocated to the compiler depends on whether a SPACE or a PRFRM compilation is being performed.

contiguous only for each control section. Figures 16 through 22 reflect the main storage allocation associated with each successive phase/interlude as it performs its functions, when only a minimal amount of storage (15K bytes, where K = 1024) is available for compilation.

FOR SPACE COMPILATIONS

For SPACE compilations, the compiler requires main storage for:

- Load modules (phases, interludes, and interface).
- Resident tables (dictionary, overflow table, SEGMAL).
- Internal text buffers.
- BSAM I/O routines and control blocks.

When the main storage allocated to the compiler (specified in the SIZE option) is greater than 15K bytes, the internal text buffers may be interspersed within the area occupied by the dictionary and the overflow table. In this case, there need be no relationship between the various areas required by the compiler.

The main storage required by each phase/interlude of the compiler need be

These figures are schematics showing the main storage allocated; proportional sizes within the diagrams do not necessarily indicate proportional amounts of main storage.

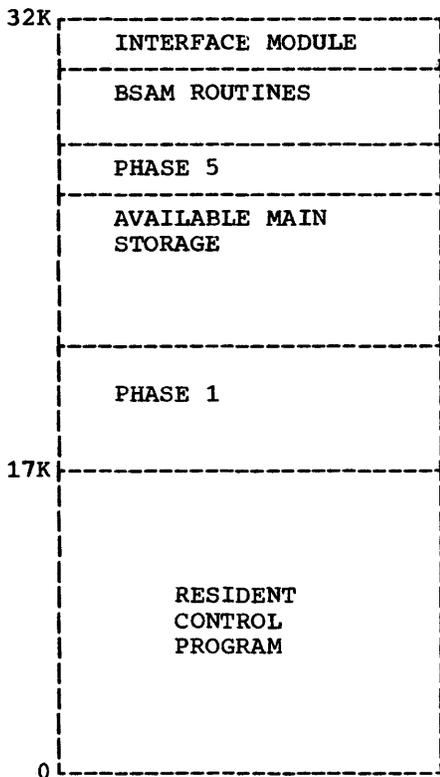


Figure 16. Main Storage at the End of Phase 1 (initial entry)

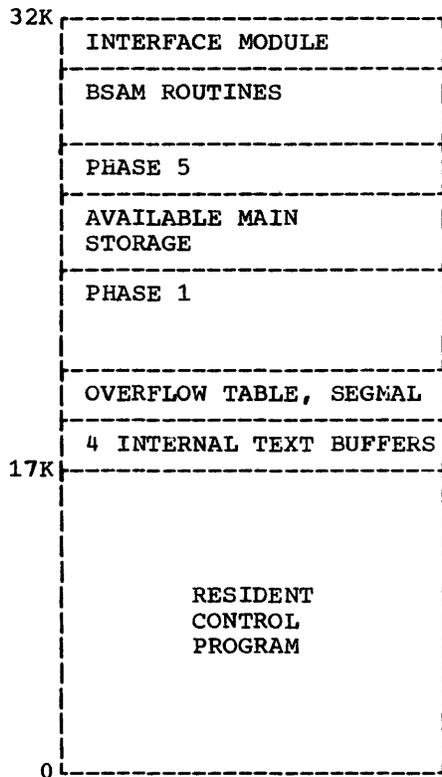


Figure 17. Main Storage at the End of Phase 1 (subsequent entries)

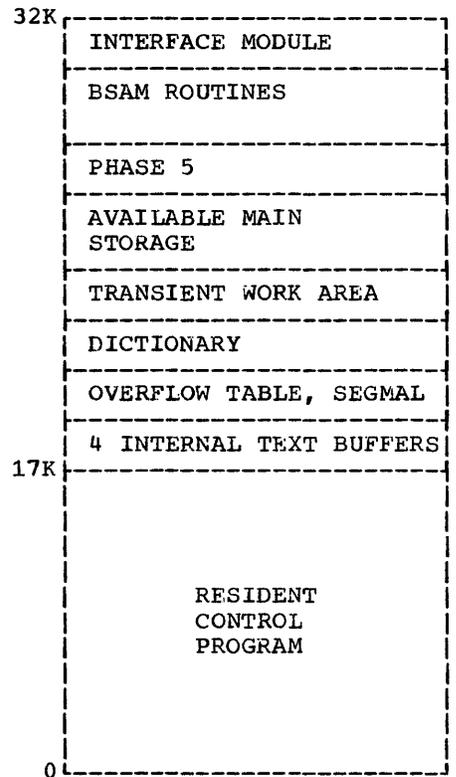


Figure 18. Main Storage at the End of Phase 5

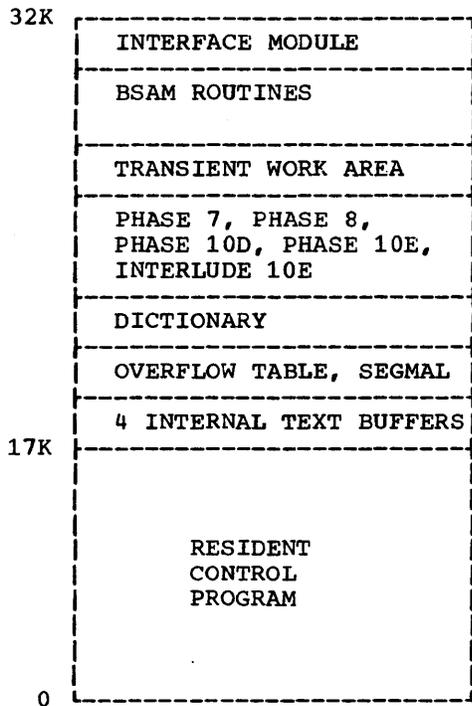


Figure 19. Main Storage at the End of Phases 7, 8, 10D, and 10E; and Interlude 10E

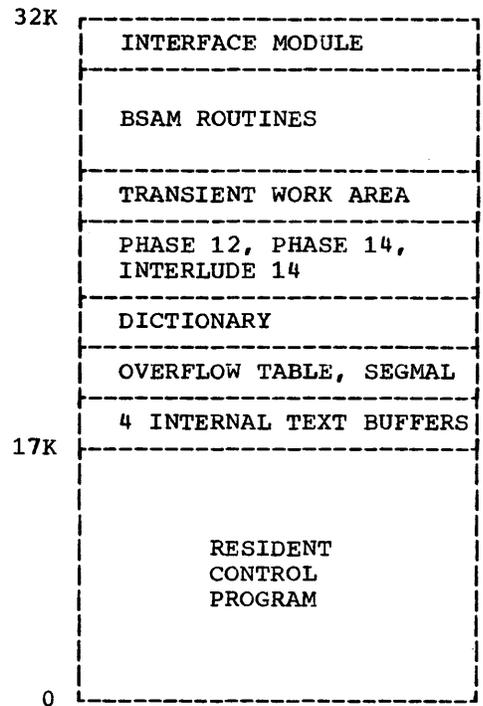


Figure 20. Main Storage at the End of Phases 12 and 14, and Interlude 14

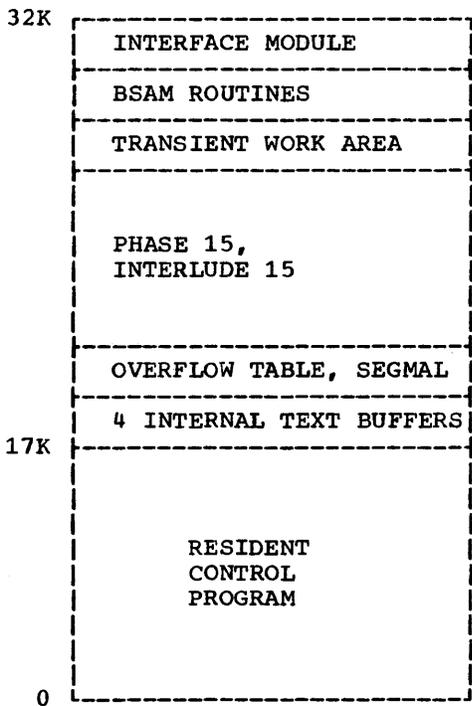


Figure 21. Main Storage at the End of Phase 15 and Interlude 15

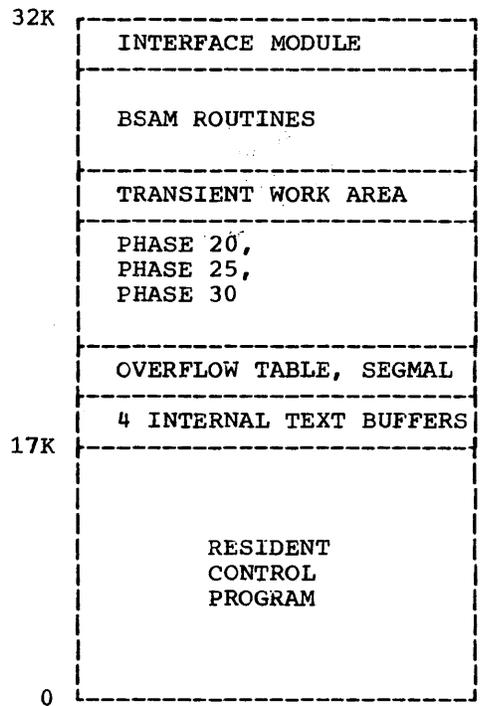


Figure 22. Main Storage at the End of Phases 20, 25, and 30 (on entry to Phase 1)

FOR PRFRM COMPILATIONS

For PRFRM compilations, the compiler requires main storage for:

- Load modules (phases, interface, and performance).
- Resident tables (dictionary, overflow table, and SEGMAL).
- Internal text buffer chains.
- BSAM I/O routines.
- Block/deblock buffers if blocking is specified.

The main storage required by any given phase of the compiler need be contiguous only for each control section within that phase. Figure 23 reflects the main storage allocation for the duration of a PRFRM compilation, when only a minimal amount of main storage (19K bytes, where K=1024) is available for compilation.

When the main storage allocated to the compiler (specified in the SIZE option) is greater than 19K bytes, the internal text buffers may be interspersed within the area occupied by the dictionary and the overflow table. In this case, there need be no relationship among the various areas required by the compiler.

Figure 23 is a schematic showing the main storage allocated; proportional sizes within the diagram do not necessarily indicate proportional amounts of main storage.

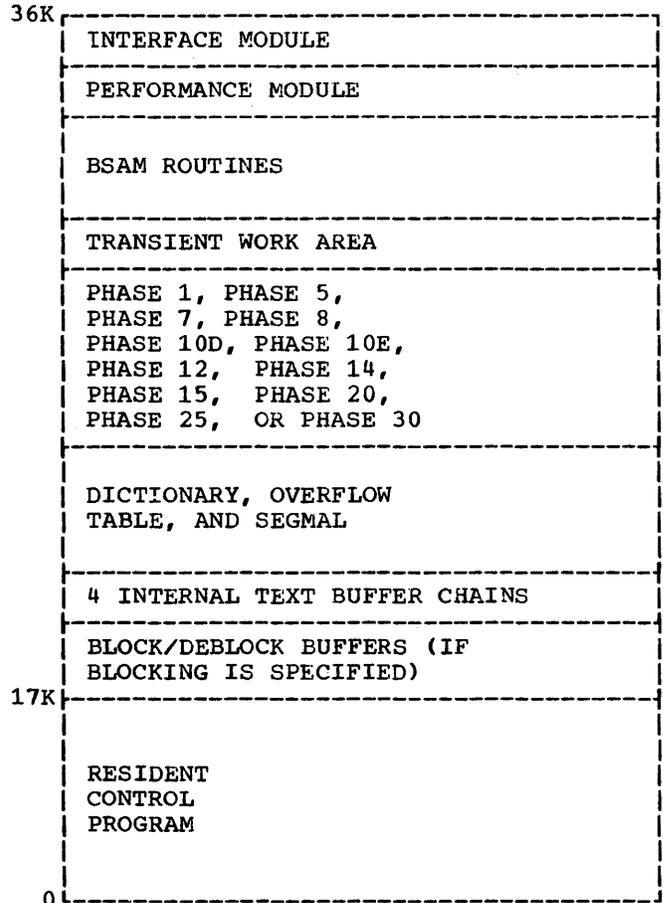


Figure 23. Main Storage Allocation for a PRFRM Compilation

APPENDIX B: COMMUNICATION AREA (FCOMM)

The communication area is a central gathering area used to communicate necessary information between the various phases of the compiler. The communication area, as a portion of the interface module, is resident throughout the compilation.

Several entries in the communication area are equated to the addresses of other entries in the communication area used during earlier phases. Equating the entries keeps the size of the communication area to a minimum.

Various bits in the communication area are examined by the phases of the compiler. The status of these bits determines such things as:

The communication area is assembled as a DSECT (dummy section) within each phase. This allows the phases to symbolically address the entries in the communication area without the communication area actually residing in each phase.

- Options specified by the source programmer.
- Specific action to be taken by a phase.

Table 22 indicates the format and organization of the communication area.

Table 22. Communication Area

Entry	Size	Meaning	
FCOMM	DS XL4	BIT0 SOURCE 1	
		BIT1 DECK 1	
		BIT2 MAP 1	
		BIT3 ADJUST 1	
		BIT4 PRFRM 1	
		BITS 5-6	00 NOLOAD 1
			11 LOAD 1
		BIT7 BCD 1	
		BITS 9-10	NAME PARAMETER EXISTED
			00 MAIN PROGRAM
			10 SUBROUTINE SUBPROGRAM
			11 FUNCTION SUBPROGRAM
			BIT11 FUNCTION NAME DEFINED
		BIT12 OBJECT MODULE CALLS AN EXTERNAL S/P	
		BIT13 SPARE	
		BIT14 LAST COMPILE OF THIS JOB STEP-PH 10E/1	
		BIT15 ERROR ON ANY COMPILE OF A BATCH RUN	
		BIT16 WARNING MESSAGES	
		BIT17 ERROR MESSAGES	
		BIT18	MESSAGE IN CURRENT STATEMENT-PH 10D/10E
			INPUT BUFFER TO BE PRIMED-PH 12/14
			'DIOCS' ESD TO BE GENERATED-PH 14/20
		BIT19 WARNING IN ANY COMPILE OF A BATCH RUN	
		BIT20 ABORT COMPILATION	
		BIT21 ALL INTERNAL TEXT IN STORAGE	
		BIT22	ONE INTERNAL TEXT RECORD-PH 10D/10E
			OBJ. MOD. USES A SPILL BASE REG-PH 12/25
BRANCH LIST TEXT NOT ALL IN STORAGE-PH 25/30			
BIT23 OBJECT LISTING			
BIT24 OTHER THAN FIRST COMPILE			
BIT25 COMPILATION RESTARTED			
BIT26 INVALID OPTION(S) IN 'PARM' FIELD			
BIT27 'NAME' OPTION TOO LONG-TRUNCATED			
BITS 28-31	SPARE		

(Continued)

Table 22. Communication Area (Continued)

Entry	Size	Meaning
F SIZE	DS F	BYTES OF STORAGE REQUESTED FOR COMPILER ¹
F DATE	DS CL5	YEAR (2 DIGITS), DAY (3 DIGITS)
F LINE L NG	DS X	OBJECT PROGRAM PRINT LINE LENGTH ¹
F INDEX	DS H	DISPLACEMENT FROM F COMM TO F DECBIN
F MAX LINE	DS H	MAXIMUM NUMBER OF LINES ON LISTING PAGE
F CUR LINE	DS H	CURRENT LINE ON LISTING PAGE
F IE J F	DS CL4	FORTRAN E INTERNAL COMPONENT CODE - IEJF
F PHASE	DS CL4	ENTRY POINT OF PHASE IN CONTROL
F DM R R CD	DS X	HI-ORDER BYTE OF REREAD ITEM IN CLOSE LIST
F DM L ST CD	DS X	HI-ORDER BYTE OF LAST ITEM IN CLOSE LIST
F PR T CT RL	DS 2H	BRANCH TO PRINT CONTROL ROUTINE
THE CONTENTS OF THE NEXT 4 FIELDS DEPENDS ON WHETHER A SPACE OR A PRFRM COMPILATION IS BEING PERFORMED.		FOR SPACE COMPILATIONS
		FOR PRFRM COMPILATIONS
F I OR TN	DS 2H	B SI OR TN
F N EX T	DS 2H	B S N EX T
	DS H	(NOT USED)
F P R F R M D L	DS A	ZERO
		MVI F P R F R M D L, X'4'
		L 13, F P R F R M D L
		BR 13
		ADDR. OF IEJFAPA0
F A G A O E N D	DS A	ADDRESS OF (END OF INTERFACE MODULE + ONE)
F S A V A D D R	DS A	ADDRESS OF CONTROL PROGRAM SAVE AREA
F T X B F S Z A	DS H	SIZE OF 'SYSUT1' INT. TEXT BUFFER
F T X B F S Z B	DS H	SIZE OF 'SYSUT2' INT. TEXT BUFFER
F T X T P T R A	DS H	DISP. OF NEXT SYSUT1 TEXT RCD.-PH 10D/10E,12/14
F T X T P T R B	DS H	DISP. OF NEXT SYSUT2 TEXT RCD.-PH 12/14
F T X T B F A 1	DS A	ADDRESS OF INTERNAL TEXT BUFFER 1 - SYSUT1
F T X T B F A 2	DS A	ADDRESS OF INTERNAL TEXT BUFFER 2 - SYSUT1
F T X T B F B 1	DS A	ADDRESS OF INTERNAL TEXT BUFFER 1 - SYSUT2
F T X T B F B 2	DS A	ADDRESS OF INTERNAL TEXT BUFFER 2 - SYSUT2
F P R T B U F 1	DS A	ADDRESS OF FIRST PRINT BUFFER
F P R T B U F 2	DS A	ADDRESS OF SECOND PRINT BUFFER
F I N I T B F S	DS 4A	INITIAL TEXT BUFFER POINTERS
F D I C T N D X	DS A	ADDRESS OF DICTIONARY INDEX - PHASE 7/12
F O V F L N D X	DS A	ADDRESS OF OVERFLOW INDEX
F D I C T B L K	DS A	DICT. BLOCK NOW BEING BUILT - PH. 10D/E
F O V F L B L K	DS A	OVFL. BLOCK NOW BEING BUILT - PH. 10D/E
F D I C T N X T	DS A	DICT. ENTRY NEXT TO BE BUILT - PH. 10D/E
F O V F L N X T	DS A	OVFL. ENTRY NEXT TO BE BUILT - PH. 10D/14
F I S N E X 1	DS F	ISN OF FIRST EXECUTABLE-PHASE 10D/E
F O B J P R O G	DS CL6	NAME OF OBJECT PROGRAM
F O B J R E G S	DS X	BITS 0-2 SPARE
		BIT 3 EXTERNAL FUNCTION HAS BEEN CALLED
		BITS 4-7 LOWEST INDEX REGISTER IN OBJ. PROG.
F A S F C N T	DS X	COUNT OF SF'S IN OBJECT PROGRAM
F D O C O U N T	DS H	NUMBER OF DO STATEMENTS
	DS H	SPARE

(Continued)

Table 22. Communication Area (Continued)

Entry	Size	Meaning
FComSIZE	EQU FDICTBLK	SIZE OF OBJECT PROGRAM COMMON - PH. 12/30
FAlSIZE	EQU FDICTBLK+2	SIZE OF OBJ. PROG. ARGUMENT LIST - PH. 15/20
FBlSIZE	EQU FOVFLBLK	SIZE OF OBJ. PROG. BRANCH LIST - PH. 12/30
FBlSTRT	EQU FOVFLBLK+2	ADDR. OF OBJ. PROG. BRANCH LIST - PH. 12/30
FASFDobl	EQU FOVFLNXT+2	ADDRESS OF ASF/DO BRANCH LIST - PH. 20/30
FbVSTRT	EQU FDICTNXT	ADDR. OF OBJ. PROG. BASE VAL. LIST - PH. 12/30
FbJSTRT	EQU FDICTNXT+2	STARTING ADDR. OF OBJECT PROGRAM - PH. 12/30
FLOCCTR	EQU FISNEX1	LOCATION COUNTER FOR OBJ. PROG. - PH. 12/30
FFNCADDR	EQU FDICTBLK+2	ADDRESS OF RESULT (FUNCTION S/P) - PH. 14/15
FIBCOM	EQU FOVFLNXT	ADDRESS OF IBCOM - PHASE 20/25
FbJERR	EQU FDICTBLK+2	ADDR. OF OBJ. PROG. ERROR RTNE. - PH. 20/25
FDECKSEQ	EQU FDICTNDX	OBJECT PROGRAM DECK SEQUENCE NUMBER - PH. 12/30
FESDSEQ	EQU FDICTNDX+2	OBJECT PROGRAM ESD SEQUENCE NUMBER - PH. 12/20
FENDSTOR	EQU FDICTNDX+2	END-OF-DATA STORAGE ADDRESS - PH 25/30
FAlSTRT	DS F	DSRN ARGUMENT LIST ADDRESS
FDATEMP	DS F	ADDRESS OF DIRECT ACCESS I/O TEMPORARY AREA
FDEFILCT	DS F	'DEFINE FILE' DSRN COUNT - PH. 10D/20
FDIOCS	EQU FDEFILCT	ADDRESS OF DIOCS - PH. 20/25
FPATCH	DS 2H	BRANCH TO PATCH ROUTINE IN INTERFACE MODULE
FPTCHTBL	DS A	ADDRESS OF PATCH TABLE
FPTCHPTR	DS A	PATCH TABLE ENTRY NEXT TO BE POSTED
FSORSYM1	DS A	ADDRESS OF SORSYM TABLE
FSORSYM2	DS A	SORSYM TABLE ENTRY NEXT TO BE BUILT

¹Default values for these compiler options may be specified by the user during the system generation process via the FORTRAN macro-instruction. The default values specified at system generation time are assumed if the corresponding parameters in the PARM field of the user's EXEC statement are not included.

APPENDIX C: LINKAGES TO THE INTERFACE MODULE AND THE PERFORMANCE MODULE

LINKAGE TO THE INTERFACE MODULE

For SPACE compilations, the components of the compiler link to the interface module (IEJFAGA0) for input/output requests and end-of-phase/interlude requests. In addition, for both SPACE and PRFRM compilations, the compiler components link to the interface module for patch requests and for print control operations.

Input/Output Request Linkage

The linkage to the interface module for an I/O request is:

```
L      LNKREG,IOPARS
BAL    15,FIORTN
```

where:

- LNKREG is general register 0.
- IOPARS is the following 4-byte word:

Operation Field	Address of the I/O buffer For this operation
1 byte	3 bytes

The operation field bits and their meanings are illustrated in Table 23.

Table 23. Operation Field Bit Meanings

Bit 0	Check operation
Bit 1	Read operation
Bit 2	Write operation
Bit 3	Flush operation
Bit 4	Not used
Bits 5-7	000 - SYSIN is to be used 001 - SYSPUNCH is to be used 010 - SYSLIN is to be used 011 - SYSUT1 is to be used 100 - SYSUT2 is to be used 101 - SYSPRINT is to be used 110 - Not used 111 - Indicates that the address of the DECB to be used is supplied in general register 1.

- General register 15 contains the address of the instruction following the BAL instruction.
- FIORTN is the name of a branch instruction in the communication area that branches to the I/O routine (SIORTN) of the interface module.

RETURNS: The SIORTN routine may return to the caller either normally or abnormally.

Normal Return: The normal return is to the instruction that is 4 bytes beyond the BAL instruction.

Abnormal Return: The abnormal return is to the instruction immediately following the BAL instruction. Two conditions may result in an abnormal return. They are:

1. End-of-data set in which case general register 14 contains a zero.
2. Permanent I/O error is which case general register 14 contains a four, and general register 1 contains the address of a save area for general registers 14, 15, 0, and 1. The save area has the following format:

```
SYNADRET DS F
SAVERET  DS F
IOPARS   DS F
DECBADDR DS F
```

where:

SYNADRET corresponds to general register 14 and contains the address to which control is to be passed if an I/O error is accepted and processing is to continue.

SAVERET corresponds to general register 15 and contains the address of the instruction immediately following the BAL instruction.

IOPARS corresponds to general register 0 and contains the 4-byte word described previously in this section.

DECBADDR corresponds to general register 1 and contains the address of the DECB associated with the data set for which the I/O operation was requested.

End-Of-Phase/Interlude Request Linkage

The linkage to the interface module for an end-of-phase/interlude condition is:

```
L      LNKREG, NXPARS
BC     15, FNEXT
```

where:

- LNKREG is general register 0.
- NXPARS is the following 4-byte word:

Entry point identifier of next phase/interlude	Data set disposition field
3 bytes	1 byte

The data set disposition field bits and their meanings are illustrated in Table 24.

Table 24. Data Set Disposition Field Bit Meanings

Bits 0-1	Not used
Bit 2	TCLOSE the DCB for SYSIN
Bit 3	TCLOSE the DCB for SYSPUNCH
Bit 4	TCLOSE the DCB for SYSLIN
Bit 5	TCLOSE the DCB for SYSUT1
Bit 6	TCLOSE the DCB for SYSUT2
Bit 7	TCLOSE the DCB for SYSPRINT

- FNEXT is the name of a branch instruction in the communication area that branches to the end-of-phase routine (SNEXT) of the interface module.

RETURN: Control is never returned to the caller; it is transferred to the next phase or interlude via the XCTL macro-instruction (refer to Table 25).

Patch Requests

The linkage to the interface module for a patch request is:

```
LR      WRKREG, BASEA
BAL     15, FPATCH
DC      C'XX'
```

where:

- WRKREG is general register 14.
- BASEA contains the absolute address of relative location 0002 in the control section of the component to be temporarily modified.
- FPATCH is the name of a branch instruction in the communication area that branches to the patch routine (PATCH) in the interface module.
- 'XX' is the fifth and sixth characters in the name of the component to be temporarily modified (refer to Table 25). That is, 'XX' indicates the component to be modified.

RETURN: Control is returned from the PATCH routine to the instruction immediately following the DC C'XX' instruction.

Print Control Operations

The linkage to the interface module for a print control operation is:

```
BAL     15, FPRTCTRL
DC      B'xxxxxxxxx'
DC      AL3 (IOERR)
```

where:

- FPRTCTRL is the name of a branch instruction in the communication area that branches to the print control operations routine (PRTCTRL) of the interface module.
- 'xxxxxxxx' is the carriage control character.
- AL3 (IOERR) is an address constant containing the address of the I/O error routine of the component requesting the print control operation.

RETURNS: The PRTCTRL may return to the caller either normally or abnormally.

Normal Return: The normal return is to the instruction immediately following the DC AL3(IOERR) instruction.

Abnormal Return: The abnormal return is to the I/O error routine within the caller. The contents of general registers 14 and 0 are the same as that described for an abnormal return for an I/O request.

LINKAGE TO THE PERFORMANCE MODULE

For PRFRM compilations, the components of the compiler link to the performance module (IEJFAPA0) for:

- Input/output requests.
- End-of-phase requests.

Input/Output Request Linkage

The linkage to the performance module for an I/O request is the same as that described for the linkage to the interface module for an I/O request. However, the FIORTN field in the communication area is effectively replaced, by Phase 5, with a branch to the PIORTN routine in the performance module. All I/O requests for PRFRM compilations are automatically rerouted to the PIORTN routine. The PIORTN routine, in turn, links to the I/O routine (SIORTN) of the interface module when it is either ready to read or write, or to check the result of a previous read or write.

RETURNS: The returns from the PIORTN routine are the same as those described for the SIORTN routine.

End-Of-Phase Request Linkage

The linkage to the performance module for an end-of-phase request is the same as that described for the linkage to the interface module for an end-of-phase/interlude request. However, the FNEXT field in the communication area is effectively replaced by Phase 5, with a branch to the PNEXT routine in the performance module. All end-of-phase requests for PRFRM compilations are automatically rerouted to the PNEXT routine.

RETURN: Control is never returned to the caller; it is transferred to the next phase via the XCTL macro-instruction.

Note: Internally, the compiler components use symbolic names when transferring control to a subsequent component. The symbolic names and the actual names of the components are illustrated in Table 25.

Table 25. Symbolic and Actual Names of Compiler Components

Symbolic Name	Actual Name
IEJFAAA0 ^{1,2}	Phase 1-Initial entry
IEJFAAB0	Phase 1-Subsequent entries
IEJFAGA0 ^{1,3}	Interface module
IEJFAPA0 ^{1,3}	Performance module
IEJFAXA0 ^{1,3}	Source symbol module
IEJFCAA0 ³	Phase 5
IEJFEAA0	Phase 7
IEJFFAA0	Phase 8
IEJFGAA0	Phase 10D
IEJFJAA0	Phase 10E
IEJFJGA0	Interlude 10E
IEJFLAA0	Phase 12
IEJFNAA0	Phase 14
IEJFNGA0	Interlude 14
IEJFPAA0	Phase 15
IEJFPGA0	Interlude 15
IEJFRAA0	Phase 20
IEJFVAA0	Phase 25
IEJFVCA0 ^{1,4}	Object listing module
IEJFXAA0	Phase 30

¹Never receives control, via the XCTL macro-instruction, from another compiler component.
²Transferred to (via XCTL macro-instruction) by calling program.
³Loaded (via LOAD macro-instruction) by Phase 1.
⁴Loaded (via LOAD macro-instruction) by Phase 25.

APPENDIX D: DATA CONTROL BLOCK MANIPULATION

The manipulation of the data control blocks for the data sets required by the compiler depends on whether a SPACE or a PRFRM compilation is being performed. For SPACE compilations, there is more data control block manipulation because of main storage limitations. (The main storage required to contain all the BSAM routines and the control blocks for I/O operations may not be available or may be restricted from the compiler by the value specified in the SIZE option.) For PRFRM compilations, the availability of main storage is not a limitation. Therefore, less data control block manipulation is required.

For both SPACE and PRFRM batch compilations (i.e., more than one source module), the SYSPRINT, SYSLIN, and SYSPUNCH data sets are manipulated so that each data set contains the output for the entire compilation (i.e., for all the source modules). However, for a batch SPACE compilation, if the SYSOUT parameter is used on the DD statements associated with SYSPRINT, SYSLIN, and/or SYSPUNCH; new data sets are created for the output of each of the compiled source modules.

FOR SPACE COMPILATIONS

For a SPACE compilation, Phase 1 initially opens only the data control blocks for the data sets used by Phases 5, 7, 8 (if the ADJUST option is in effect), 10D, and 10E (SYSIN, SYSUT1, SYSUT2, SYSPRINT). For the remainder of the compilation, the data control blocks are opened by the interludes only when their corresponding data sets are to be used by a specific compiler component. Each interlude first closes all the data control blocks and then opens only those that are to be used. This process decreases the size of the resident BSAM routines and provides the compiler with the additional main storage necessary for compilation.

Figure 24 (refer to Note 1) illustrates the manipulation of data control blocks for SPACE compilations.

FOR PRFRM COMPILATIONS

For PRFRM compilations, Phase 1 initially opens the data control blocks for all the data sets required by the compiler. Because all the required data control blocks are opened initially, the compiler can bypass the execution of Interludes 10E, 14, and 15. Bypassing the execution of the interludes reduces data control block manipulation and phase-to-phase transition time; therefore, compilation time is also reduced.

Figure 25 (refer to Note 1) illustrates the manipulation of data control blocks for PRFRM compilations.

Note 1: In Figures 24 and 25, OPEN indicates that the data control block is opened during execution of a compiler component. CLOSE indicates that the data control block is closed during execution of a compiler component. TCLOSE indicates that the corresponding data set is logically repositioned to the beginning of the data set for subsequent reading or writing. IN, OUT, INOUT, and OUTIN indicate that the corresponding data set is used for initial or intermediate compiler input, for intermediate or final compiler output, for input followed by output, and for output followed by input. READ indicates that the corresponding data set is read from during execution of a compiler component. WRITE indicates that the corresponding data set is written onto during execution of a compiler component. FLUSH indicates that the contents of the buffer currently being used are written out (only for a PRFRM compilation with blocking).

Note 2: For SPACE compilations, READ, WRITE, and TCLOSE operations are controlled by the interface module. For PRFRM compilations, READ, WRITE, FLUSH, and TCLOSE operations are controlled by the performance module. (Figure 25 shows the logical DCB manipulation, rather than the actual DCB manipulation, since blocking on SYSIN, SYSLIN, SYSPUNCH, SYSPRINT, and SYSUT2 (for ADJUST runs), and chaining on SYSUT1 and SYSUT2 determine when these operations are actually performed.

Compiler Component	DCB for SYSIN	DCB for SYSUT1	DCB for SYSUT2	DCB for SYSPRINT	DCB for SYSLIN ¹	DCB for SYSPUNCH ²
Phase 1 (initial entry)	OPEN IN	OPEN OUT	OPEN OUTIN ³	OPEN OUT		
Phase 5	READ			WRITE		
Phase 7		TCLOSE ⁵	TCLOSE ⁵	WRITE		
Phase 8 (executed only for ADJUST compilations)	READ ³		WRITE ³ TCLOSE	WRITE ³		
Phase 10D	READ ⁴	WRITE	READ ³	WRITE ⁴		
Phase 10E	READ ⁴	WRITE	READ ³	WRITE ⁴		
Interlude 10E	CLOSE	CLOSE OPEN IN	CLOSE OPEN OUT	CLOSE OPEN OUT	OPEN OUT	OPEN OUT
Phase 12		READ TCLOSE		WRITE	WRITE	WRITE
Phase 14		READ	WRITE		WRITE	WRITE
Interlude 14		CLOSE OPEN OUT	CLOSE OPEN IN	CLOSE	CLOSE	CLOSE
Phase 15		WRITE	READ			
Interlude 15		CLOSE OPEN INOUT	CLOSE OPEN OUTIN	OPEN OUT	OPEN OUT	OPEN OUT
Phase 20		READ TCLOSE	WRITE TCLOSE	WRITE	WRITE	WRITE
Phase 25		WRITE TCLOSE	READ TCLOSE	WRITE	WRITE	WRITE
Phase 30		READ	READ	WRITE	WRITE	WRITE
Phase 1 (subsequent entries other than final entry)	OPEN IN	CLOSE OPEN OUT	CLOSE OPEN OUTIN ³	CLOSE OPEN OUT	CLOSE	CLOSE
Phase 1 (final entry)	CLOSE	CLOSE	CLOSE	CLOSE	CLOSE	CLOSE

¹SYSLIN is used only if the LOAD option is in effect.
²SYSPUNCH is used only if the DECK option is in effect.
³For ADJUST compilations only.
⁴For NOADJUST compilations only.
⁵Only for compilations other than the first in a batch.

Figure 24. Data Control Block Manipulation for SPACE Compilations

Compiler Component	DCB for SYSIN	DCB for SYSUT1	DCB for SYSUT2	DCB for SYSPRINT	DCB for SYSLIN ¹	DCB for SYSPUNCH ²
Phase 1 (initial entry)	OPEN IN	OPEN OUTIN	OPEN OUTIN	OPEN OUT	OPEN OUT	OPEN OUT
Phase 5 (executed only for first source module in batch)	READ			WRITE		
Phase 7		TCLOSE ⁵	TCLOSE ⁵	WRITE		
Phase 8 (executed only for ADJUST compilations)	READ ³		WRITE ³ FLUSH TCLOSE	WRITE ³		
Phase 10D	READ ⁴	WRITE	READ ³	WRITE ⁴		
Phase 10E	READ ⁴	WRITE TCLOSE	READ ³ TCLOSE	WRITE ⁴		
Interlude 10E (not executed)						
Phase 12		READ TCLOSE	WRITE	WRITE	WRITE	WRITE
Phase 14		READ TCLOSE	WRITE TCLOSE		WRITE	WRITE
Interlude 14 (not executed)						
Phase 15		WRITE TCLOSE	READ TCLOSE			
Interlude 15 (not executed)						
Phase 20		READ TCLOSE	WRITE TCLOSE	WRITE	WRITE	WRITE
Phase 25		WRITE TCLOSE	READ TCLOSE	WRITE	WRITE	WRITE
Phase 30		READ	READ	WRITE	WRITE	WRITE
Phase 1 (restart condition)	CLOSE OPEN IN	CLOSE OPEN OUT	CLOSE OPEN OUTIN ³	CLOSE OPEN OUT	CLOSE	CLOSE
Phase 1 (subsequent entries other than the final entry)						
Phase 1 (final entry)	CLOSE	CLOSE	CLOSE	FLUSH CLOSE	FLUSH CLOSE	FLUSH CLOSE

¹SYSLIN is used only if the LOAD option is in effect.
²SYSPUNCH is used only if the DECK option is in effect.
³For ADJUST compilations only.
⁴For NOADJUST compilations only.
⁵Only for compilations other than the first in a batch.

Figure 25. Data Control Block Manipulation for PRFRM Compilations

Phase 10D and Phase 10E convert each FORTRAN source statement into a form (intermediate text) usable to subsequent phases of the compiler. Intermediate text is developed by scanning the source statements from left-to-right and by constructing four-byte intermediate text entries for the source text contained in the statements. (Six-byte entries are constructed for EQUIVALENCE statements.)

Phase 10D scans the declarative statements in the source module, and creates intermediate text for those statements. When Phase 10D encounters either the first statement function or the first executable statement, control is passed to Phase 10E via the interface module. Phase 10E continues the scan of the source module and creates intermediate text for statement functions and executable statements.

As source statements are scanned, entries are made to the dictionary and overflow table. The information in the dictionary and overflow table supplements the intermediate text in the generation of machine-language instructions by subsequent phases of the compiler. This information is associated with the intermediate text entries by means of pointers that reside in the text entries.

Each source statement of the source module consists of one or more card images. To scan source statements, each card image of the source module is first read into one of two I/O buffers in the interface module (IEJFAGAO). The double-buffer scheme allows for overlapping the scanning of a card image in one buffer with the reading of the next card image of the source module into the other buffer. If the SOURCE and NOADJUST options are in effect, the I/O buffers are used to print a listing of the source module.

In general, the processing of a source statement is divided into three operations:

- Preliminary scan of the card image(s) for the statement.
- Classification scan of the first card image for the statement.
- Reserved word or arithmetic scan of the card image(s) for the statement, which scans the source text of the statement. (The reserved word or arithmetic scan also creates intermediate text.)

PRELIMINARY SCAN

The preliminary scan first determines the address of the end of the source text in the card image to be processed. This address is obtained by examining the card image from right-to-left in groups of four bytes. The address of the last blank group encountered is used as the ending address of the card image. This address is used in the reserved word or arithmetic scan of the card image and indicates the point at which the scan of the card image and the creation of intermediate text for the card image is to terminate. In the case of the last card image for a statement, the ending address indicates the end of the statement.

The preliminary scan then determines the type of the card image to be scanned. A card image may correspond to the start of a FORTRAN statement, the continuation of a FORTRAN statement, or a user's comment.

If the card image corresponds to the start of a FORTRAN statement, a unique internal statement number is assigned to the statement. This number is placed in front of the card image in the buffer containing that card image. Control is then passed to the classification scan.

If the card image corresponds to a continuation of a FORTRAN statement, a new internal statement number is not assigned. Control is immediately passed to the classification scan.

If the card image corresponds to a user's comment, no further processing is required. The next card image of the source module is read into the buffer that contained the comments card image. The address of the other buffer (previously filled) is obtained from the communication area, and scanning starts for the card image in that buffer.

In each case, if the SOURCE and NOADJUST options are in effect the buffer containing the card image is first written onto the SYSPRINT data set before any further processing.

CLASSIFICATION SCAN

The classification scan determines the type (arithmetic or reserved word) of the

FORTRAN statement to be processed. The first action taken by the classification scan is to determine if a statement number defines the statement under consideration. If a statement number is associated with the statement, an overflow table entry for that statement number is created.

The next item of the source statement is then obtained. If the item is a symbol, control is passed to a routine that scans arithmetic statements. If the item is a reserved word (e.g., READ), control is passed to the appropriate reserved word routine. The arithmetic or reserved word routine controls the scanning of the remainder of the statement, and creates intermediate text for the statement.

If the item is neither a symbol nor a reserved word, the source statement in question is invalid. Processing of that statement is terminated, and processing of the next statement of the source module begins.

RESERVED WORD OR ARITHMETIC SCAN

The main function of the reserved word or arithmetic scan is to scan the card image(s) for each statement of the source module. During this scan, dictionary and overflow table entries are constructed, and intermediate text entries are created. In addition, each statement is examined for correct use of the FORTRAN IV (E) language.

The reserved word or arithmetic scan is performed by either a reserved word routine or the arithmetic routine. A reserved word routine exists for each of the reserved word source statements. Certain reserved word routines, namely those that process statements that may contain arithmetic expressions (e.g., IF and CALL statements) and those that process statements that contain I/O lists (e.g., READ and WRITE statements) pass control to the arithmetic routine to complete the scanning of the associated reserved word statements.

When the appropriate reserved word routine or the arithmetic routine receives control, a left-to-right scan of the current card image is then initiated. The first operand of the card image is obtained, and a check is made to determine if a dictionary or overflow table entry has previously been created for the operand. If an entry has not been created, a dictionary or overflow table entry (depending on the operand) is created and entered in the appropriate resident table. Scanning is resumed and the first operator of the card image is obtained.

The intermediate text for each card image is developed by constructing intermediate text entries for operator-operand pairs as they are scanned by a reserved word routine or the arithmetic routine. In this context, operator refers to commas, parentheses, etc., as well as to arithmetic operations (e.g., + and -). Operand refers to variables, constants, statement numbers, data set reference numbers, etc., that are operated on.

The procedure of: (1) scanning operators and operands, (2) constructing dictionary or overflow table entries when necessary for the operands, and (3) developing intermediate text entries for the operator-operand pairs is repeated until the end of the card image is recognized by the reserved word or arithmetic scan.

When the address indicating the end of the card image is recognized by the reserved word or arithmetic scan, the next card image of the source module is read into the buffer that contained the card image just processed. The address of the other buffer (previously filled) is obtained from the communication area, and processing starts for the card image in that buffer.

When an entire source statement has been scanned, a special intermediate text entry indicating the end of the intermediate text representation for a given statement is generated and then written onto an intermediate storage data set at the end of the intermediate text representation for the statement. This special text entry contains the internal statement number assigned to the statement by the preliminary scan section.

During the reserved word or arithmetic scan, each card image is examined for proper use of the FORTRAN IV (E) language. The format of the card image is checked to see if the statement associated with the card image has been coded properly by the source programmer.

If a serious error is encountered, scanning of the statement associated with the card image is terminated. An intermediate text word indicating the end of the intermediate text representation for the statement is generated and then written onto an intermediate storage data set. This text word also indicates that an error was encountered in the processing of the statement. An intermediate text word, representing the error, which contains a number corresponding to the specific error detected, is generated and then written onto the intermediate storage data set at

the end of the intermediate text representation for the statement in which the error was detected.

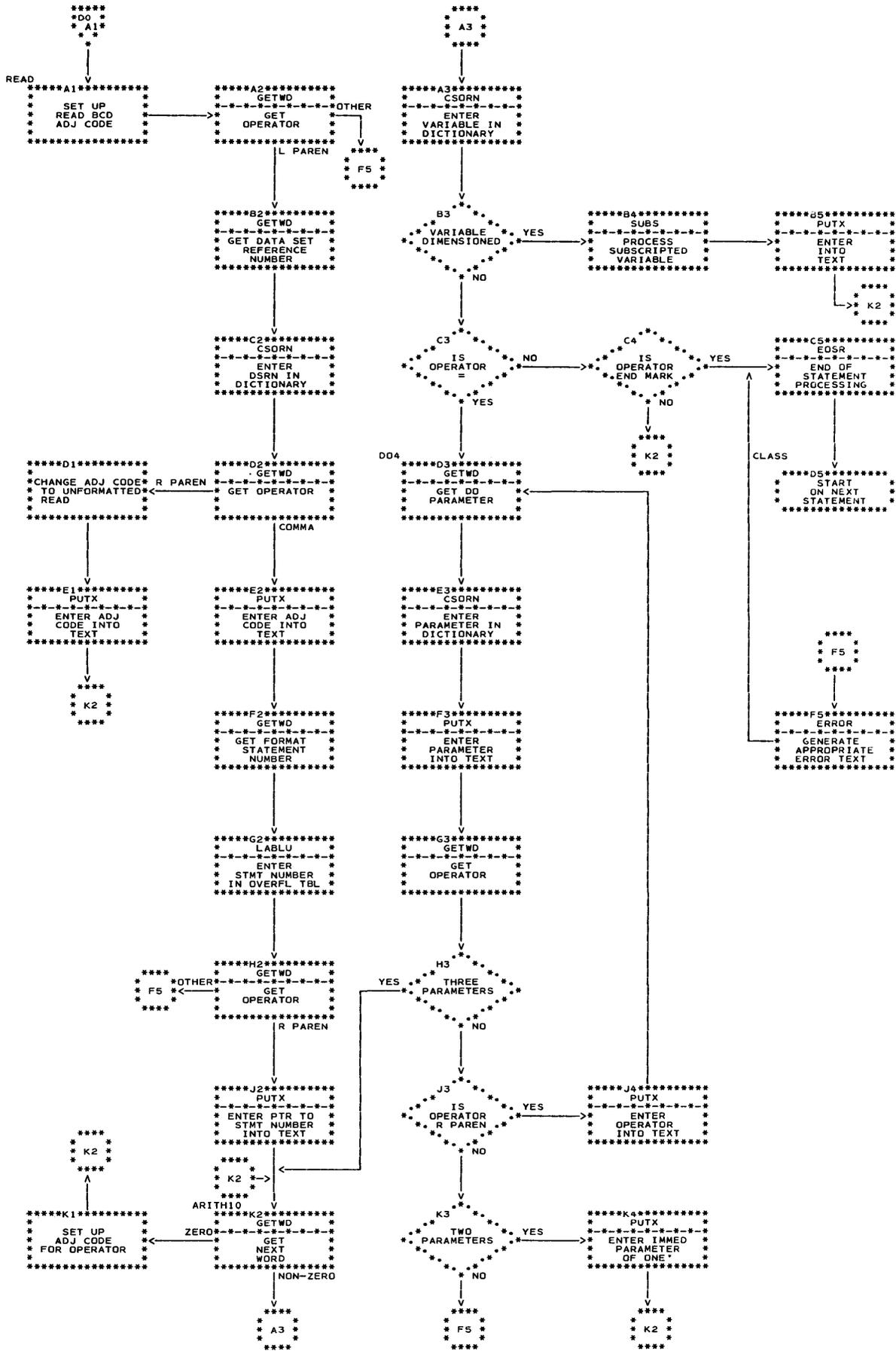
If an error is encountered that is not serious enough to terminate the scan of a statement, an intermediate text word representing a warning is generated. This word is saved and scanning is resumed. When the scan of the statement is terminated (either when the end of the statement is recognized or when a serious error is encountered), the warning text word is written onto the intermediate storage data set immediately following the text word that indicates the end of the intermediate

text representation for the statement and any intermediate text words generated for serious errors. (A maximum of four warning text words per statement may be saved and then written onto the intermediate storage data set. If more than four warning conditions are encountered, an intermediate text word representing an error is generated and scanning of the statement is terminated.)

The source statement scan for the following READ statement is illustrated in Chart D0.

```
READ (5,10) A,B(1),(C(I),I=1,10),D
```

Chart D0. READ Statement Scan Logic



Intermediate text is an internal representation of the source statements from which the machine-language instructions are produced. The conversion from intermediate text to machine-language instructions requires information about variables, constants, arrays, statement numbers, in-line functions, and subscripts. This information, derived from the source statements, is contained in the dictionary and overflow table, and is referenced by the intermediate text. The dictionary and overflow table supplement the intermediate text in the generation of machine instructions by the various phases of the compiler.

Phases 10D and 10E create intermediate text for use as input to subsequent phases of the compiler. Intermediate text is created by Phase 10D for the following declarative statements:

- COMMON and EQUIVALENCE
- DEFINE FILE
- FORMAT
- SUBROUTINE or FUNCTION
- Specification statements

Phase 10E creates intermediate text for all statement functions and executable statements in the source module and for FORMAT statements interspersed within the executable statements.

Phase 12 uses COMMON and EQUIVALENCE text during relative address assignment.

Phase 14 converts the FORMAT intermediate text to a form acceptable to IHCFCOME. It also inserts the addresses assigned by Phase 12 to variables, constants, etc., into the intermediate text. In addition, Phase 14 modifies the intermediate text for READ/WRITE statements. Phase 14 also deletes any COMMON and EQUIVALENCE text from the intermediate text since that text is no longer needed.

Phase 15 reorders the sequence of intermediate text entries in statements that can contain arithmetic expressions, and modifies these entries to a format that closely resembles machine-language instructions. The intermediate text for DEFINE FILE statements is also reordered by Phase 15. Machine operation codes and registers (when required) are inserted in the intermediate text. Argument lists for external and function references are created by modifying the intermediate text for those statements.

Phase 20 modifies the intermediate text entries that represent subscript expressions. Registers are assigned to subscript expressions (once they have been initially computed) and are inserted in the text entries for those expressions.

Phase 25 uses the intermediate text in conjunction with the overflow table to generate the object module instructions.

Phase 30 uses the intermediate text to generate any error and warning messages and to process the END statement.

AN ENTRY IN INTERMEDIATE TEXT

The intermediate text is constructed by Phases 10D and 10E for some declarative statements, all statement functions, and all executable statements. Each statement is represented in the intermediate text by one or more intermediate text words. (An intermediate text word is four bytes long.) This word normally contains three fields (as illustrated in Figure 26).

adjective code field	mode/type field	pointer field
1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes

Figure 26. Intermediate Text Word Format

Adjective Code Field

The adjective code field in the initial intermediate text word indicates the type of statement for which the intermediate text entries are constructed, i.e.:

- Reserved word, e.g., DO, CALL, GO TO.
- Statement function (SF).
- Arithmetic.

The adjective codes in the subsequent intermediate text words for a statement indicate:

- Delimiters, i.e., + - * / ** () ,
- The end of a statement (end mark)
- An error

Each adjective code is composed of two hexadecimal digits. The various adjective codes possible (and their use) are indicated in Figure 27.

\L H\o i\w g\ h\	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	
0			.	(	)	= 10		ARGU- MENT	N10	ILLEGAL	+	-	*	/	**	FUNC (
1	AOP	UNARY MINUS10		SAOP		SIZE OF ARRAY	END MARK						UNARY PLUS10		10	' 10 APOSTROPHE	
2			ST	IN-10 LINE FUNC	ARITH- METIC IF	MVI	\$ 10		BLANK								
3																	
4	S								BC10								
5	T			LCR								S	M				INTEGER
6	O											U	U	D			DOUBLE PRECISION
7	R								L	P		R	I	V			REAL
8	E			LCER					O A D	A R D E	A D D	A C T	P L Y	I D E		SRDA10	
9					INTEGER	DOUBLE	REAL		COMMON	EQUIVA- LENCE	EXTER- NAL		DIMEN- SION	DEFINE FILE		SUBROU- TINE	
A	FUNC- TION	FORMAT	END DO	CON- TINUE	UNCONDI- TIONAL GO TO	COMPUT- ED GO TO	BACK- SPACE	REWIND	END FILE	WRITE BINARY	READ BINARY	WRITE BCD	READ BCD	DO	STMT. NO. DEF.		
B	END		CALL	SF		ARITH		BEGIN I/O LIST	END I/O LIST	RETURN	STOP	PAUSE	ARITH IF	IMP DO	ERROR MESS- AGE	WARNING MESS- AGE	
C																	
D																	
E																	
F																	

10Subject to change in later phases.

Figure 27. Intermediate Text Adjective Codes

Mode/Type Field

The mode/type field indicates the mode and the type of a symbol; e.g., a real function for a function name, or dummy variable for the variable name. These mode/type codes are the same as those used in the dictionary entries (refer to Appendix H).

In the word with an end mark adjective code, another indicator may appear in the mode/type field. Normally, this field contains zeros; however, if any errors or warnings are detected in a statement, this field contains a hexadecimal 01.

If errors or warnings are detected, the error/warning message number appears in the mode/type field of the word inserted in the intermediate text to represent that error/warning. Errors and warnings are detected by Phases 10D, 10E, 12, 14, 15, and 20.

Pointer Field

The pointer field consists of the last two bytes of the intermediate text word. It normally contains a relative pointer to the dictionary or overflow table entry for the symbol with which the adjective code is associated, e.g., the term +A has a + adjective code and an associated pointer field that contains a relative pointer to the dictionary entry for A. The pointer field may also be used to contain either the increment of a DO or implied DO variable, or the internal statement number in the word containing the end mark or the error/warning adjective code.

The internal statement number is assigned during Phases 10D and 10E to each FORTRAN source statement. This number differs from the user-assigned statement number. It is assigned whether or not intermediate text is to be created for that statement; therefore, there may be gaps in

the internal statement numbers appearing in the intermediate text. Errors in the source module may cause the same statement number to be assigned more than once. If the user has requested a source listing, the internal statement number assigned to each statement appears next to that statement in the listing.

AN EXAMPLE OF INTERMEDIATE TEXT

Figure 28 illustrates the intermediate text created by Phase 10E for the following IF statement.

```
3 IF (+19 - MART) 11, 7, 61
```

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
statement number	statement number	p(3)
arithmetic IF	00	0000
(	00	0000
unary +	integer constant	p(19)
-	integer variable	p(MART)
)	statement number	p(11)
,	statement number	p(7)
,	statement number	p(61)
end mark	00	internal statement number

Figure 28. Example of Intermediate Text for an IF Statement

UNIQUE FORMS OF INTERMEDIATE TEXT

When intermediate text is created, there are four unique forms: the text for FORMAT statements; subscripted variables; COMMON statements; EQUIVALENCE statements; and READ, FIND, and WRITE statements.

FORMAT Statements

For FORMAT statements, the adjective code field of the first intermediate text word of the statement indicates a FORMAT statement; the remaining two fields contain three bytes of the FORMAT statement card image. The remainder of the card image of the FORMAT statement appears in the following intermediate text words. Figure 29 illustrates the intermediate text created for the following FORMAT statement.

12 FORMAT (F20.5,I6)

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)	
statement number	statement number	p(12)	
FORMAT	(	F	2
0	.	5	,
I	6	)	blank
blanks represent the remaining card columns to column 72 (Each card column represents 1 byte. A hexadecimal 'DF' follows the last card column.)			
end mark	00	internal statement number	

Figure 29. FORMAT Statement Intermediate Text

Subscripted Variable

When a subscripted variable is encountered in a source statement, an entry for the variable is made. That entry is followed by two additional intermediate text words to define the subscripted expression. Figure 30 illustrates the format of the first word.

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
SAOP	00	offset
SAOP represents the subscript arithmetic operator, and the offset represents a part of the array displacement. (Refer to Appendix G for a discussion of array displacement.)		

Figure 30. Subscripted Variable Intermediate Text - (First Word)

Figure 31 illustrates the format of the second word.

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
p(subscript information)		p(dimension information)
The first field contains a relative pointer to the subscript information in the overflow table if the subscripted expression contains variables. If the subscripted expression does not contain variables, this field contains zeros.		
The second field contains a relative pointer to the dimension information in the overflow table for the array that contains the subscripted expression. For example, if A (I,J) is an element in array A, the field contains the pointer to the dimension information for array A.		

Figure 31. Subscripted Variable Intermediate Text - (Second Word)

Figure 32 illustrates the intermediate text created for the following statement, which involves two subscripted variables.

APPLE = A(POT,3) + B(2,1)

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
arithmetic statement	mode/type of APPLE	p(APPLE)
=	mode/type of A	p(A)
SAOP	00	offset
p(subscript information)		p(dimension information)
+	mode/type of B	p(B)
SAOP	00	offset
00	00	p(dimension information)
end mark	00	internal statement number

Figure 32. Example of Subscripted Variable Intermediate Text

COMMON Statements

COMMON intermediate text is constructed by Phase 10D as a series of four-byte entries (one for each variable or array name that appears in a COMMON statement). Phase 12 serially references these entries and assigns addresses to them in the COMMON area. (The assignment of addresses is discussed in detail in the Phase 12 description.)

Figure 33 illustrates the intermediate text created for a COMMON statement.

AN EXAMPLE OF COMMON INTERMEDIATE TEXT:
Figure 34 illustrates the intermediate text created for the following COMMON statement.

COMMON (A,R,ARNONN)

98	not used	not used
p(A)	1	not used
p(R)	1	not used
p(ARNONN)	6	not used
00000001		
2 bytes	1 byte	1 byte

Figure 34. Example of COMMON Intermediate Text

1	98	not used	not used
pointer to the dictionary entry for the first variable or array name in statement		² length of the first variable or array name in statement	not used
.	.	.	.
pointer to the dictionary entry for the last variable or array name in statement		length of the last variable or array name in statement	not used
³	00000001		
2 bytes		1 byte	1 byte

¹Indicates COMMON intermediate text.
²The length is used to determine the dictionary chain in which the variable or array name is entered.
³Indicates the end of the intermediate text for the COMMON statement.

Figure 33. COMMON Intermediate Text

EQUIVALENCE Intermediate Text

EQUIVALENCE intermediate text is constructed by Phase 10D as a series of six-byte entries (one for each variable or array name that appears in an EQUIVALENCE statement). Phase 12 serially references

these entries and assigns addresses to them. (The assignment of addresses is discussed in detail in the Phase 12 description.)

Figure 35 illustrates the intermediate text created for an EQUIVALENCE statement.

¹ 99	not used	
pointer to dictionary entry for first variable or array name in first EQUIVALENCE group in statement	size of first variable or array in first EQUIVALENCE group in statement	² offset of first variable or array in first EQUIVALENCE group in statement
.		
.		
.		
pointer to dictionary entry for last variable or array name in first EQUIVALENCE group in statement	size of last variable or array in first EQUIVALENCE group in statement	offset of last variable or array in first EQUIVALENCE group in statement
³ 000F		
pointer to dictionary entry for first variable or array name in last EQUIVALENCE group in statement	size of first variable or array in last EQUIVALENCE group in statement	offset of first variable or array in last EQUIVALENCE group in statement
.		
.		
.		
pointer to dictionary entry for last variable or array name in last EQUIVALENCE group in statement	size of last variable or array in last EQUIVALENCE group in statement	offset of last variable or array in last EQUIVALENCE group in statement
000F	⁴	00000001
2 bytes	2 bytes	2 bytes
¹ Indicates EQUIVALENCE intermediate text. ² Contains 0000 if the variable or array is not subscripted. ³ Indicates the end of the intermediate text for an EQUIVALENCE group. ⁴ Indicates the end of the intermediate text for the EQUIVALENCE statement. It must reside on a full-word boundary. If necessary, this entry is preceded by two bytes of zeros in order to adjust it to a full-word boundary.		

Figure 35. EQUIVALENCE Intermediate Text

Note: Phase 10D generates a special eight-byte intermediate text entry following the last EQUIVALENCE statement. This special entry indicates to Phase 12 that it can ignore the remaining intermediate text on SYSUT1 because it has processed all of the COMMON and EQUIVALENCE intermediate text. The special entry has the following format:

99FF0000	00000001
2 bytes	2 bytes

AN EXAMPLE OF EQUIVALENCE INTERMEDIATE TEXT: Consider the following EQUIVALENCE statement:

EQUIVALENCE (GRW,KEL), (RBJ(1,9),AMV(2,4))

There are two EQUIVALENCE groups in the statement:

- GRW,KEL
- RBJ(1,9),AMV(2,4)

Assume that:

- GRW is a real variable.
- KEL is an integer variable.
- RBJ is a real array dimensioned as (9,9).
- AMV is a real array dimensioned as (9,4).

Figure 36 illustrates the intermediate text created for the above EQUIVALENCE statement.

99	not used	
p(GRW)	1	0
p(KEL)	1	0
000F		
p(RBJ)	81	72
p(AMV)	36	28
000F	00000001	
2 bytes	2 bytes	2 bytes

Figure 36. Example of EQUIVALENCE Intermediate Text

READ/WRITE and FIND Statements

Phase 10E generates intermediate text for: (1) both sequential and direct access READ/WRITE statements, and (2) direct access FIND statements. (Phase 10E interprets the FIND statement as a direct access READ statement without format and without I/O list.)

The intermediate text generated for both sequential and direct access READ/WRITE statements is essentially the same. The main difference is that additional intermediate text must be generated for direct access statements for the integer expression (r) that represents the relative position within the data set of the record to be read or written.

If the integer expression contains anything other than a constant, or a nonsubscripted integer variable, Phase 10E generates special intermediate text to evaluate that expression. This special text is treated as an arithmetic expression. Phase 10E also sets a switch (FDATEMP) in the communication area that indicates to Phase 15 that an integer work area must be allocated.

Figure 37 illustrates the intermediate text generated for a general I/O statement (that is, a sequential access READ or WRITE statement; or a direct access READ, WRITE, or FIND statement).

EXAMPLES OF INTERMEDIATE TEXT CREATED FOR SPECIFIC I/O STATEMENTS: The following figures illustrate the intermediate text generated by Phase 10E for specific I/O statements.

Figure 38 illustrates the intermediate text generated for the following sequential access READ statement.

READ (I,10) (A(N),N=1,10), B

Figure 39 illustrates the intermediate text generated for the following direct access WRITE statement.

WRITE (5'I(J),10) (A(N),N=1,10),B

Figure 40 illustrates the intermediate text generated for the following direct access FIND statement.

FIND (3'5)

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
arithmetic	integer work area	0000
intermediate text for subscripted expression (r) ¹		
end mark	00	0000
IOCODE ²	DACODE ³	0000
(	unit	u ⁴
	integer variable	p(u)
' ⁵	integer variable or constant	p(r)
	integer work area	0000
,	statement number	p(f) ⁶
)	00	0000
intermediate text for I/O list if any ⁷		
end mark	00	internal statement number
¹ This intermediate text is not created for: (1) sequential access I/O statements, or (2) direct access I/O statements if r (the integer expression indicating the relative position within a data set of the record to be read or written) is a constant or a nonsubscripted integer variable. ² IOCODE = A9, for non-formatted write = AA, for non-formatted read = AB, for formatted write = AC, for formatted read ³ DACODE = 00, for sequential access READ/WRITE = 80, for direct access READ/WRITE = CO, for direct access FIND ⁴ u is an integer constant or integer variable that represents a unit number. For direct access statements, u must be followed by an apostrophe ('). ⁵ This intermediate text is not created for sequential access I/O statements. ⁶ f is optional and, if given, is the statement number of the FORMAT statement describing the format of the data to be read or written. ⁷ I/O list is optional and, if given, is a series of variable or array names, separated by commas. The names represent the storage locations to be read into or written from.		

Figure 37. Intermediate Text Created for General I/O Statement

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
formatted read	sequential access I/O	0000
(	integer variable	p(I)
,	statement number	p(10)
)	00	0000
(	real subscripted variable	p(A)
SAOP	00	offset
p(subscript information)		p(dimension information)
,	integer variable	p(N)
=	immediate DO parameter	1
,	immediate DO parameter	10
, 1	immediate DO parameter	1
)	00	0000
,	real variable	p(B)
end mark	00	internal statement number

¹If the third DO parameter is missing, Phase 10E assumes a value of 1.

Figure 38. Intermediate Text Created for READ (I,10) (A(N),N=1,10),B

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
arithmetic	integer work area	0000
=	subscripted integer variable	p(I)
SAOP	00	offset
p(subscript information)		p(dimension information)
end mark	00	0000
formatted read	direct access I/O	0000
(	unit	p(5)
'	integer work area	0000
,	statement number	p(10)
)	00	0000
(	real subscripted variable	p(A)
SAOP	00	offset
p(subscript information)		p(dimension information)
,	integer variable	p(N)
=	immediate DO parameter	1
,	immediate DO parameter	10
,	immediate DO parameter	1
)	00	0000
,	real variable	p(B)
end mark	00	internal statement number

Figure 39. Intermediate Text Created for WRITE (5'I(J), 10) (A(N),N=1,10), B

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
non-formatted read	direct access I/O for FIND	0000
(	unit	p(3)
'	constant	p(5)
)	00	0000
end mark	00	internal statement number

Figure 40. Intermediate Text Created for FIND (3'5)

MODIFYING INTERMEDIATE TEXT

The intermediate text is created by Phases 10D and 10E, and is modified by Phases 14, 15, and 20. This modification prepares the intermediate text for use by Phase 25 in the generation of machine-language instructions. The modifications made to the intermediate text are discussed, phase by phase, in the following pages.

Phase 14

During Phase 14 processing, the intermediate text is modified in the following ways:

- Replacement of dictionary pointers.
- Modification of I/O statement intermediate text.
- Modification of computed GO TO intermediate text.
- Modification of RETURN intermediate text.

REPLACEMENT OF DICTIONARY POINTERS: Dictionary pointers in the intermediate text are replaced by information essential for the processing to be performed by subsequent phases of the compiler.

Figure 41 illustrates this modification to intermediate text entries.

Input to Phase 14	Output from Phase 14																								
<p>For:</p> <p>variables, constants, arrays, and external functions,</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin: 10px 0;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">adjective code</td> <td style="text-align: center;">mode/type of ACCESS</td> <td style="text-align: center;">p(ACCESS)</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1 byte</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1 byte</td> <td style="text-align: center;">2 bytes</td> </tr> </table>	adjective code	mode/type of ACCESS	p(ACCESS)	1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes	<p>the dictionary pointer is replaced by:</p> <p>the relative address assigned by Phase 12.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin: 10px 0;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">adjective code</td> <td style="text-align: center;">mode/type of ACCESS</td> <td style="text-align: center;">a(ACCESS)</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1 byte</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1 byte</td> <td style="text-align: center;">2 bytes</td> </tr> </table>	adjective code	mode/type of ACCESS	a(ACCESS)	1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes												
adjective code	mode/type of ACCESS	p(ACCESS)																							
1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes																							
adjective code	mode/type of ACCESS	a(ACCESS)																							
1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes																							
<p>data set reference numbers,</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin: 10px 0;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">(</td> <td style="text-align: center;">mode/type</td> <td style="text-align: center;">p(3)</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1 byte</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1 byte</td> <td style="text-align: center;">2 bytes</td> </tr> </table>	(mode/type	p(3)	1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes	<p>the data set reference number.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin: 10px 0;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">(</td> <td style="text-align: center;">mode/type</td> <td style="text-align: center;">3</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1 byte</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1 byte</td> <td style="text-align: center;">2 bytes</td> </tr> </table>	(mode/type	3	1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes												
(mode/type	p(3)																							
1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes																							
(mode/type	3																							
1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes																							
<p>statement functions,</p> <p><u>definition</u></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin: 10px 0;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">SF definition adjective code</td> <td style="text-align: center;">real statement function</td> <td style="text-align: center;">p(SF)</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1 byte</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1 byte</td> <td style="text-align: center;">2 bytes</td> </tr> </table> <p><u>use</u></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin: 10px 0;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">SF use adjective code</td> <td style="text-align: center;">real statement function</td> <td style="text-align: center;">p(SF)</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1 byte</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1 byte</td> <td style="text-align: center;">2 bytes</td> </tr> </table>	SF definition adjective code	real statement function	p(SF)	1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes	SF use adjective code	real statement function	p(SF)	1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes	<p>the SF number assigned by Phase 14.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin: 10px 0;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">SF definition adjective code</td> <td style="text-align: center;">real statement function</td> <td style="text-align: center;">the relative SF number</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1 byte</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1 byte</td> <td style="text-align: center;">2 bytes</td> </tr> </table> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin: 10px 0;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">SF use adjective code</td> <td style="text-align: center;">real statement function</td> <td style="text-align: center;">the relative SF number</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1 byte</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1 byte</td> <td style="text-align: center;">2 bytes</td> </tr> </table>	SF definition adjective code	real statement function	the relative SF number	1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes	SF use adjective code	real statement function	the relative SF number	1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes
SF definition adjective code	real statement function	p(SF)																							
1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes																							
SF use adjective code	real statement function	p(SF)																							
1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes																							
SF definition adjective code	real statement function	the relative SF number																							
1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes																							
SF use adjective code	real statement function	the relative SF number																							
1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes																							

Figure 41. Replacement of Dictionary Pointers by Phase 14

MODIFICATION OF I/O STATEMENT INTERMEDIATE

TEXT: An I/O statement is modified in two ways. A begin I/O intermediate text word is inserted in the intermediate text for each element of an I/O list. Implied DOs are detected, and implied DO and end DO intermediate text words are entered in the text. An end I/O is placed at the end of the I/O list.

These modifications are illustrated in Figures 42 and 43. The intermediate text in these figures is developed from the following sequential access non-formatted WRITE statement:

```
WRITE (N) ((A(I,J),J=1,10),I=1,15)
```

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
nonformat- ted write	sequential access I/O	0000
(	integer var.	p(N)
)	00	0000
(	00	0000
(	real sub- script var.	p(A)
SAOP	00	offset
p(subscript)		p(dimension)
,	integer var.	p(J)
=	immediate DO parameter	1
,	immediate DO parameter	10
,	parameter	1
)	00	0000
,	integer var.	p(I)
=	immediate DO parameter	1
,	immediate DO parameter	15
,	immediate DO parameter	1
)	00	0000
end mark	00	internal stmt no.

Figure 42. Example of Input to Phase 14

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
non- formatted write	sequential access I/O	0000
(	integer variable	address(N)
end mark ¹	00	0000
implied DO	00	0000
,	integer variable	address(I)
=	immediate DO parameter	1
,	immediate DO parameter	15
,	immediate DO parameter	1
implied DO	00	0000
,	integer variable	address(J)
=	immediate DO parameter	1
,	immediate DO parameter	10
,	immediate DO parameter	1
begin I/O	00	0000
SAOP	00	offset
p(subscript)		p(dimension)
(	real subscripted variable	address(A)
end DO	00	0000
end DO	00	0000
end I/O	00	0000
end mark	00	internal statement number

Figure 43. Example of Output from Phase 14

¹An end mark is inserted prior to the I/O list. This allows Phase 20 to treat the I/O list as a separate statement.

MODIFICATION OF COMPUTED GO TO STATEMENTS:

During Phase 14 processing, a count of the number of statement numbers in the computed GO TO statement is inserted into the intermediate text for that statement. This simplifies the processing of this intermediate text for the following phases. The intermediate text is rearranged so that the word containing the integer variable precedes the count word.

Figure 44 illustrates the intermediate text input to Phase 14 for the following computed GO TO statement.

GO TO (11,11,42,23,99),I

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
computed GO TO	00	0000
(	statement number	p(11)
,	statement number	p(11)
,	statement number	p(42)
,	statement number	p(23)
,	statement number	p(99)
)	00	0000
,	integer variable	p(I)
end mark	00	internal statement number

Figure 44. Intermediate Text Input to Phase 14 for a Computed GO TO Statement

Figure 45 illustrates the output of Phase 14 for the above computed GO TO statement.

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
computed GO TO	00	0000
,	integer variable	a(I)
count	00	5
(	statement number	p(11)
,	statement number	p(11)
,	statement number	p(42)
,	statement number	p(23)
,	statement number	p(99)
)	00	0000
end mark	00	internal statement number

Figure 45. Intermediate Text Output From Phase 14 for a Computed GO TO Statement

MODIFICATION OF RETURN STATEMENT INTERMEDIATE TEXT:

If a RETURN statement appears within a main program, Phase 14 modifies the adjective code field so that a STOP is indicated. If the RETURN statement is not within the main program, no modification is made.

Phase 15

During Phase 15 processing, the following intermediate text modifications are made:

- Replacement of adjective codes and mode/type codes.
- Reordering of intermediate text for arithmetic expressions.
- Reordering of intermediate text for DEFINE FILE statements.

REPLACEMENT OF ADJECTIVE CODES AND MODE/TYPE CODES: During the processing of arithmetic expressions, Phase 15 replaces the adjective codes (within the intermediate text entries for arithmetic expressions) by actual machine operation codes. Phase 15 also assigns registers to the operands in arithmetic expressions (when required); the corresponding register numbers are inserted in the mode/type fields of the intermediate text that represents those expressions.

The result of the above modification is a transformation of the intermediate text entries for arithmetic expressions into a form that closely resembles the RX instruction format.

The following figures indicate the replacement of adjective codes by machine operation codes, and the replacement of mode/type codes by registers.

Figure 46 illustrates the intermediate text input to Phase 15 for the following arithmetic statement.

$$PRI = +VATE - VAR$$

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
arithmetic statement	real variable	a(PRI)
=	00	0000
unary plus	real variable	a(VATE)
-	real variable	a(VAR)
end mark	00	internal statement number

Figure 46. Intermediate Text Input to Phase 15 for an Arithmetic Statement

Figure 47 illustrates the intermediate text output from Phase 15 for this statement.

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
arithmetic statement	real variable	a(PRI)
L	reg.#3	variable a(VATE)
S	reg.#3	variable a(VAR)
ST	reg.#3	variable a(PRI) ¹
end mark	00	internal statement number

¹The pointer field contains the address of the resultant field of the arithmetic statement.

Figure 47. Intermediate Text Output From Phase 15 for an Arithmetic Statement

Note: The first operand VATE, is loaded into register #3. The second operand, VAR, is subtracted from VATE. The result is stored in the resultant field, PRI.

In addition, registers are assigned and are inserted in the mode/type field of the following:

- Intermediate text entries for exponentiation.
- Intermediate text entries for in-line functions, referenced subprograms, and statement function calls.
- Intermediate text entries for subscript expressions.

Figure 48 illustrates these modifications to the intermediate text.

Input To Phase 15	Output From Phase 15																					
<p>For:</p> <p>exponentiation,</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>**</td> <td>mode/type information</td> <td>a (POWER)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 byte</td> <td>1 byte</td> <td>2 bytes</td> </tr> </table>	**	mode/type information	a (POWER)	1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes	<p>Phase 15 assigns:</p> <p>a register to contain the result of the required library subprogram execution.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>**</td> <td>0</td> <td>result reg</td> <td>a (POWER)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 byte</td> <td>1 byte</td> <td>1 byte</td> <td>2 bytes</td> </tr> </table>	**	0	result reg	a (POWER)	1 byte	1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes							
**	mode/type information	a (POWER)																				
1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes																				
**	0	result reg	a (POWER)																			
1 byte	1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes																			
<p>in-line functions,</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>in-line function adj. code</td> <td>not used</td> <td>code number of in-line funct.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F(</td> <td>not used</td> <td>a(argument)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 byte</td> <td>1 byte</td> <td>2 bytes</td> </tr> </table>	in-line function adj. code	not used	code number of in-line funct.	F(not used	a(argument)	1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes	<p>one or two registers (depending on the specific in-line function) to be used as argument registers. The register specified in the R1 field is used as the result register.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>load</td> <td>R1</td> <td>not used</td> <td>a(argument)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>in-line function adj. code</td> <td>R2</td> <td>R1</td> <td>code number of in-line funct.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 byte</td> <td>1 byte</td> <td>1 byte</td> <td>2 bytes</td> </tr> </table>	load	R1	not used	a(argument)	in-line function adj. code	R2	R1	code number of in-line funct.	1 byte	1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes
in-line function adj. code	not used	code number of in-line funct.																				
F(not used	a(argument)																				
1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes																				
load	R1	not used	a(argument)																			
in-line function adj. code	R2	R1	code number of in-line funct.																			
1 byte	1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes																			
<p>subscript expressions,</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>subscript adj. code</td> <td>mode/type information</td> <td>offset</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 byte</td> <td>1 byte</td> <td>2 bytes</td> </tr> </table>	subscript adj. code	mode/type information	offset	1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes	<p>a work register (to be used by Phase 20) to aid in the computation of the subscript expression.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>subscript adj. code</td> <td>0</td> <td>work reg.</td> <td>offset</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 byte</td> <td>1 byte</td> <td>1 byte</td> <td>2 bytes</td> </tr> </table>	subscript adj. code	0	work reg.	offset	1 byte	1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes							
subscript adj. code	mode/type information	offset																				
1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes																				
subscript adj. code	0	work reg.	offset																			
1 byte	1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes																			

Figure 48. Assignment of Registers by Phase 15

REORDERING OF INTERMEDIATE TEXT FOR ARITHMETIC EXPRESSIONS: Phase 15 reorders the intermediate text entries within arithmetic expressions so that the object module instructions produced by subsequent phases

are generated according to a hierarchy of operators.

The following figures indicate this reordering process.

Figure 49 illustrates the intermediate text input to Phase 15 for the following arithmetic statement.

$$DGM = BCR*(WRG+WAR)$$

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
arithmetic	real variable	a(DGM)
=	real variable	a(BCR)
*	00	0000
(	real variable	a(WRG)
+	real variable	a(WAR)
)	00	0000
end mark	00	internal statement number

Figure 49. Unordered Intermediate Text for an Arithmetic Statement

Figure 50 illustrates the intermediate text output from Phase 15 for this statement.

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
arithmetic	real variable	a(DGM)
LE	register 6 variable information	a(WRG)
AE	register 6 variable information	a(WAR)
ME	register 6 variable information	a(BCR)
STE	register 6 variable information	a(DGM)
end mark	00	internal statement number

Figure 50. Reordered Intermediate Text for an Arithmetic Statement

REORDERING OF INTERMEDIATE TEXT FOR DEFINE FILE STATEMENTS: Phase 15 reorders the intermediate text for DEFINE FILE statements to facilitate the generation of TXT card images for the parameter lists included in those statements. Each parameter list is reordered into a three-argument format and is considered as a separate DEFINE FILE statement. (The parameter lists define the format of the direct access data sets to be used at object-time.)

The following figures illustrate the reordering process.

Figure 51 illustrates the input to Phase 15 for the following DEFINE FILE statement.

DEFINE FILE 2(50,20,L,I2), 3(100,20,U,J3)

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
DEFINE FILE	unit	2
(	integer constant	a(50)
,	integer constant	a(20)
,	immediate constant	L
,	integer variable	a(I2)
)	unit	3
,	integer constant	a(100)
,	integer constant	a(20)
,	immediate constant	U
,	integer variable	a(J3)
)	00	0000
end mark	00	internal statement number

Figure 51. Intermediate Text Input to Phase 15 for a DEFINE FILE Statement

Figure 52 illustrates the output from Phase 15 for the statement.

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
DEFINE FILE	00	0000
00	00	0003 ¹
2	integer constant	a(50)
L	integer constant	a(20)
80 ²	integer variable	a(I2)
end mark	00	0000
DEFINE FILE	00	0000
00	00	0003 ¹
3	integer constant	a(100)
U	integer constant	a(20)
00 ³	integer variable	a(J3)
end mark	00	internal statement number

¹The constant 0003 indicates that the next three intermediate text words contain a parameter list.

²The constant 80 indicates to Phase 20 that this is not the last parameter list in the DEFINE FILE statement.

³The constant 00 indicates to Phase 20 that this is the last parameter list in the last DEFINE FILE statement.

Figure 52. Intermediate Text Output From Phase 15 for a DEFINE FILE Statement

Phase 20

Phase 20 optimizes the intermediate text entries for subscript expressions. This optimization consists of modifying portions of existing subscript intermediate text and creating new subscript intermediate text for literals that are generated during the subscript optimization process. The changes made to subscript intermediate text

will be discussed by examining a general subscript expression as it appears in the input to Phase 20 and by examining the subscript intermediate text output from Phase 20 for this expression.

SUBSCRIPT INTERMEDIATE TEXT INPUT: The intermediate text input to Phase 20 for a general expression is shown in Figure 53.

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)	pointer field (2 bytes)
adjective code	O | W	offset
p(subscript)		p(dimension)
OP	R | type	a(variable)

Adjective code contains the adjective code for a subscripted variable portion of text.

O contains a zero value.

W contains a work register assigned by Phase 15.

Offset contains the value of the offset portion of the array displacement.

p(subscript) contains the pointer to subscript information in the overflow table for this expression.

p(dimension) contains the pointer to dimension information in the overflow table for this expression.

OP contains the operation code assigned by Phase 15.

R contains a register assigned by Phase 15.

Type contains the residual (since it is no longer necessary) type information for the subscripted variable.

a(variable) contains the address of the subscripted variable.

Figure 53. Subscript Intermediate Text Input Format

SUBSCRIPT INTERMEDIATE TEXT OUTPUT: Subscript intermediate text output from Phase 20 depends on the previous optimization (if any) of the subscript expression. Three adjective codes are used to indicate the different conditions that can be present in subscript intermediate text output. These conditions are explained in the following paragraphs.

SAOP (Subscript Arithmetic Operator) Adjective Code: This code indicates that a subscript expression has not been previously optimized, and that an offset literal was not generated for the value resulting from the addition of the offset portion of the array displacement to the subscripted variable address displacement. Subscript text output associated with an SAOP adjective code is shown in Figure 54.

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)		pointer field (2 bytes)
SAOP	N	W	offset
p(subscript)			a(C1*L)
a(C2*D1*L)			a(C3*D1*D2*L)
OP	R	X	a(variable)

SAOP contains an adjective code designating the form of the intermediate subscript text.

N contains the number of dimensions of the subscripted variable.

a(C1*L), a(C2*D1*L), and a(C3*D1*D2*L) contain the addresses of the literals that combine to form the CDL portion (see Appendix G) of the array displacement. N determines which addresses must appear. For example, if N is 1, only a(C1*L) appears. (If the first literal, C1*L, is a power of 2, that power appears instead of the address of that literal.)

X contains the register assigned to the subscript expression for computation by Phase 20.

Note: All other entries are as defined in Figure 53.

Figure 54. Subscript Intermediate Text Output From Phase 20 -- SAOP Adjective Code

XOP (Offset Literal) Adjective Code: This code indicates that the subscript expression has not been previously assigned a register and that an offset literal was generated for the value resulting from the addition of the offset portion of the array displacement to the displacement of the subscripted variable address. The subscript intermediate text output associated with an XOP adjective code is shown in Figure 55.

AOP (Arithmetic Operator Without Subscript) Adjective Code: This code indicates that the subscript expression has previously been assigned a register. The subscript intermediate text output associated with an AOP adjective code is shown in Figure 56.

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)		pointer field (2 bytes)
XOP	N	W	a(generated literal)
p(subscript)			a(C1*L)
a(C2*D1*L)			a(C3*D1*D2*L)
OP	R	X	a(variable)

XOP contains an adjective code designating the form of the subscript intermediate text.

a(generated literal) contains the address of the offset literal generated by Phase 20.

Note: All other entries are as defined in Figures 53 and 54.

Figure 55. Subscript Intermediate Text Output from Phase 20 -- XOP Adjective Code

adjective code field (1 byte)	mode/type field (1 byte)		pointer field (2 bytes)
AOP	O	B	offset
OP	R	X	a(variable)

AOP contains an adjective code designating the form of subscript intermediate text.

O contains a zero value.

B contains an indicator. A hexadecimal 0 indicates that the actual offset is in the offset field. A hexadecimal F indicates that the address of the generated offset literal appears in the offset field.

Note: All other entries are as defined in Figures 53 and 54.

Figure 56. Subscript Intermediate Text Output from Phase 20 -- AOP Adjective Code

APPENDIX G: ARRAY DISPLACEMENT COMPUTATION

Array displacement is the distance between the first element in an array and a specified element to be referenced from the array. To increase compilation efficiency, the array displacement is divided into portions and computed during different phases.

Before discussing the actual computation, it is desirable to understand how an element is referenced in a 1-, 2-, and 3-dimensional array.

ONE DIMENSION

Assume a 1-dimensional array of five elements, expressed as A(5). To reference any given element in this array, the only factor to be considered is the length of each element. The third element, for example, is two element lengths from the beginning of the array.

TWO DIMENSIONS

For a 2-dimensional array, A(3,2), an element can no longer be thought of as a single array element. Instead, each element in a 2-dimensional array consists of the number of array elements designated by the first number in the subscript expression used to dimension the array. For reference, an element in a 2-dimensional array will be called a dimension part. For example, in the array of A(3,2):

A(1,1) A(2,1) A(3,1) - Dimension Part

>A(1,2) A(2,2) A(3,2) - Dimension Part

the first dimension part consists of A(1,1), A(2,1), and A(3,1). Note that the number of elements in each dimension part is the same as the first number (3) in the subscript expression used to dimension array A.

Dimension parts are consistent in length. Length is determined by multiplying the number of elements in a dimension part by the array element length. The resulting value is considered a dimension factor for the following discussion. (If the element length in array A is 4, the dimension factor is 3 times 4, or 12.) The dimension factor plays a significant role in referencing a specific element in a 2-dimensional array.

Before discussing how a specified element is referenced, the hexadecimal number scheme used to address an array element must be considered. The first digit of the hexadecimal number scheme (as used in the compiler) is zero. The 16 hexadecimal digits are:

0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,A,B,C,D,E, and F.

Consider that the element A(1,2) is to be referenced from the array dimensioned as A(3,2). Observation shows one dimension part must be bypassed in order to reference the specified element. The computation to reference this element requires the values in the subscript expression (1,2). Each number must be decremented by 1 to compensate for the zero-addressing scheme used by the compiler. This leaves an expression of (0,1). The second number (1) dictates the number of dimension parts to be bypassed in order to arrive at the dimension part in which the specified element is located. Once this dimension part is found, the first number (0) indicates the number of elements in that dimension part that must be bypassed to reference the specified element.

THREE DIMENSIONS

The same reasoning can be projected into a 3-dimensional array. For a 3-dimensional array, A(3,2,3), an element can neither be considered a single array element, nor thought of as a dimension part. Each element in a 3-dimensional array consists of the number of dimension parts designated by the second number in the subscript expression used to dimension the array. For reference, therefore, an element in a 3-dimensional array will be called a dimension section. For example, in the array A(3,2,3):

```

Dimension Section
  A(1,1,1) A(2,1,1) A(3,1,1) } - Dim.Part
-----
↳A(1,2,1) A(2,2,1) A(3,2,1) } - Dim.Part
-----
Dimension Section
↳A(1,1,2) A(2,1,2) A(3,1,2) } - Dim.Part
-----
↳A(1,2,2) A(2,2,2) A(3,2,2) } - Dim.Part
-----
Dimension Section
↳A(1,1,3) A(2,1,3) A(3,1,3) } - Dim.Part
-----
↳A(1,2,3) A(2,2,3) A(3,2,3) } - Dim.Part

```

the first dimension section consists of the dimension part beginning with A(1,1,1) and the dimension part beginning with A(1,2,1). In this example, we have three dimension

sections, as specified by the third number in the subscript expression used to dimension the array.

Again, the length of the dimension sections is consistent. The length, in this case, is determined by multiplying the number of elements in a dimension part by the number of dimension parts by the array element length. The resulting value is considered a dimension multiplier for the following discussion. (If the element length in array A is 4, the dimension multiplier is 3 times 2 times 4 or 24.)

Consider that the element A(2,2,3) is to be referenced from the array dimensioned as A(3,2,3). Observation shows two dimension sections, one dimension part, and one array element must be bypassed in order to obtain the specified element. The computation to reference this element requires the values in the subscript expression (2,2,3). Each number must be decremented by 1 to compensate for the zero-addressing scheme used by the compiler. This leaves an expression of (1,1,2). The third number (2) indicates the number of dimension sections to bypass in order to arrive at the dimension section in which the specified element is located. The second number (1) indicates the number of dimension parts, within the referenced dimension section, that must be bypassed to arrive at the dimension part in which the specified element is located. Once this dimension part is found, the first number (1) indicates the number of elements in that dimension part that must be bypassed to reference the specified element. The preceding example is illustrated in Figure 57.

This concept of how a specified element is referenced from an array is generalized in the following text.

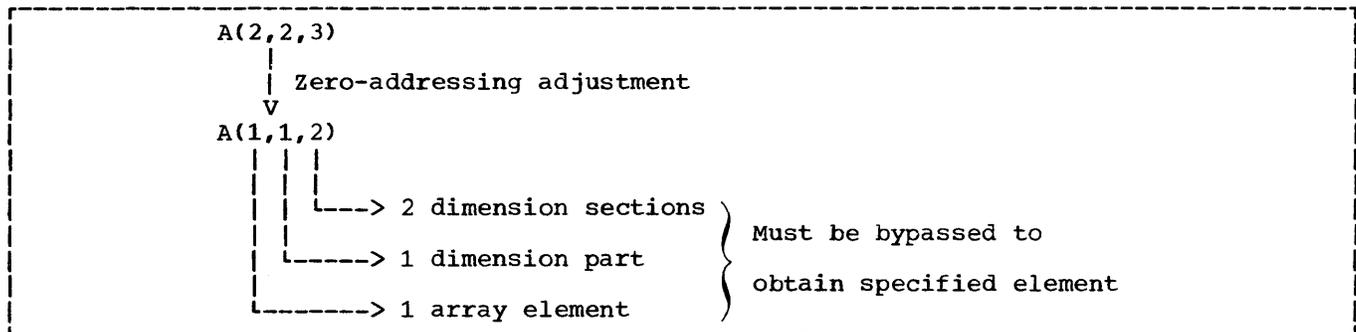


Figure 57. Referencing a Specified Element in an Array

General Subscript Form

The general subscript form $(C1*V1+J1, C2*V2+J2, C3*V3+J3)$ refers to some array, A, with dimensions $(D1, D2, D3)$. The required number of elements is specified by $(C1*V1+J1)$; $(C2*V2+J2) * D1$; and $(C3*V3+J3) * D1 * D2$, representing the first, second, and third subscript parameters multiplied by the pertinent dimension information for each parameter. Therefore, the required number of elements for the general subscript form is:

$$(C1*V1+J1) + (C2*V2+J2)*D1 + (C3*V3+J3)*D1*D2$$

Array Displacement

The array displacement for a subscript expression, specifically stated, is the required number of array elements multiplied by the array element length. Therefore, the array displacement is:

$$[(C1*V1+J1) + (C2*V2+J2)*D1 + (C3*V3+J3)*D1*D2] * L$$

Because of the zero-addressing scheme, the displacement is:

$$(C1*V1+J1-1)*L + (C2*V2+J2-1)*D1*L + (C3*V3+J3-1)*D1*D2*L$$

This expression can be rearranged as:

$$(C1*V1*L + C2*V2*D1*L + C3*V3*D1*D2*L) + [(J1-1)*L + (J2-1)*D1*L + (J3-1)*D1*D2*L]$$

The first portion of the array displacement is referred to as the CDL (constant, dimension, length) portion and is derived from:

$$C1*V1*L + C2*V2*D1*L + C3*V3*D1*D2*L$$

$V1, V2,$ and $V3$ are the variables of the expression and cannot be computed until the execution of the object module. This leaves the following components, which constitute the CDL portion of the displacement:

$C1*L$ is the first component, $C2*D1*L$ is the second component, and $C3*D1*D2*L$ is the third component.

The second portion of the array displacement:

$$(J1-1)*L + (J2-1)*D1*L + (J3-1)*D1*D2*L$$

is known as the offset portion and is calculated by Phase 10E. The offset is calculated using the following formulas for 1-, 2-, and 3- dimensional arrays.

$$\text{OFFSET} = [J1-1] * \text{Length} \quad \text{1-dimensional}$$

$$\text{OFFSET} = [(J1-1) + (J2-1)*D1] * \text{Length} \quad \text{2-dimensional}$$

$$\text{OFFSET} = [(J1-1) + (J2-1)*D1 + (J3-1)*D1*D2] * \text{Length} \quad \text{3-dimensional}$$

This calculation is performed and the result is entered in the offset field of the intermediate text entry for that subscript. Refer to Appendix F for the intermediate text format.

The CDL components are calculated during Phase 20. If the CDL component is a power of 2, that power replaces the offset field in the intermediate text entry. If the CDL component is not a power of 2, a literal is formed and assigned an address (by Phase 20). The address of the literal is then entered in the offset field of the intermediate text entry. Refer to Appendix F for the intermediate text form and content.

Phase 25 combines the CDL components, the variables, and the offset to produce the array displacement. The procedure is as follows: the first component of the CDL multiplied by the first variable of the subscript expression $(C1*L)*V1$; plus the second component of the CDL multiplied by the second variable of the subscript expression $(C2*D1*L)*V2$, plus the third component of the CDL multiplied by the third variable of the subscript expression $(C3*D1*D2*L)*V3$; plus the offset:

$$(J1-1)*L + (J2-1)*D1*L + (J3-1)*D1*D2*L$$

Note: Table 26 illustrates the maximum sizes of the various arrays.

Table 26. Array Size Maximums

Array Type	Maximum Number of Elements
Integer	32767
Real	32767
Double-Precision	16383

APPENDIX H: RESIDENT TABLES

The compiler uses the following resident tables:

- The dictionary.
- The overflow table.
- The segment address list (SEGMAI).
- The patch table.
- The blocking table (resident only for PRFRM compilations).
- The BLDL table (resident only for PRFRM compilations).
- The reset table (resident only for PRFRM compilations).

The dictionary contains information about variables, arrays, constants, data set reference numbers, etc., used in the source module. The overflow table contains all dimension, subscript, and statement number information within the source module. SEGMAI is used for main storage allocation within the compiler. The patch table contains information for modifying compiler components. The blocking table contains the information necessary for deblocking compiler input and blocking compiler output for PRFRM compilations. The BLDL table contains the information necessary for transferring control from one component of the compiler to the next for PRFRM compilations. The reset table (RESETABL) is used to determine which, if any, of the record counts for SYSUT1 and SYSUT2 must be reset.

THE DICTIONARY

Phase 5 allocates main storage for the dictionary. The dictionary (constructed by Phases 7, 10D, and 10E) is used and modified by Phase 12 in address assignment, and is further used by Phase 14 when addresses from the dictionary replace pointers to the dictionary in the intermediate text entries (refer to Appendix F). For SPACE compilations, Phase 14 frees the dictionary area of storage for use by subsequent phases.

The dictionary is organized as a series of chains related by the dictionary index,

which indicates the first entry in each chain. There are 15 chains, used for various entries, as follows:

- Eleven are organized on the basis of length of the symbol being entered (e.g., DO has a length of 2, END has a length of 3, etc.). The first chain is for entries of length 1, the second is for entries of length 2, the third is for entries of length 3, and so on.

These chains contain entries for reserved words (chains 2-11), in-line functions, variables, and arrays.

- One chain for real constants.
- One chain for integer constants.
- One chain for integer data set reference numbers.
- One chain for double-precision constants.

Phase 7 Processing

Phase 7 enters all reserved words (words that indicate a specific FORTRAN statement) and the dictionary index into the dictionary.

Figure 58 illustrates the dictionary after it is constructed by Phase 7.

Phases 10D and 10E Processing

Additions to the dictionary occur as entries are made to the various chains during Phases 10D and 10E processing. To enter an item in the dictionary, the pertinent chain is located via the dictionary index. The chain is searched until the last entry is found. The current end-of-chain indicator is replaced with a pointer to the new entry; the new entry is then marked as the end of the chain.

For example, assume the variable ABC is to be entered in the dictionary. ABC belongs in the third chain of the dictionary (length 3). Using the dictionary index, the first entry of the chain for length 3 is obtained. Assume that Figure 58 indicates the condition of the dictionary at this time. The chain for length 3 is searched for the last entry (the entry for DIM), which is modified to appear as:

The entry for ABC appears as:

end of chain	entry for ABC
--------------	---------------

pointer to the entry for ABC	entry for DIM
------------------------------	---------------

When the dictionary and overflow table overlap, a message is issued; no new entries are made; and compilation proceeds.

DICTIONARY INDEX

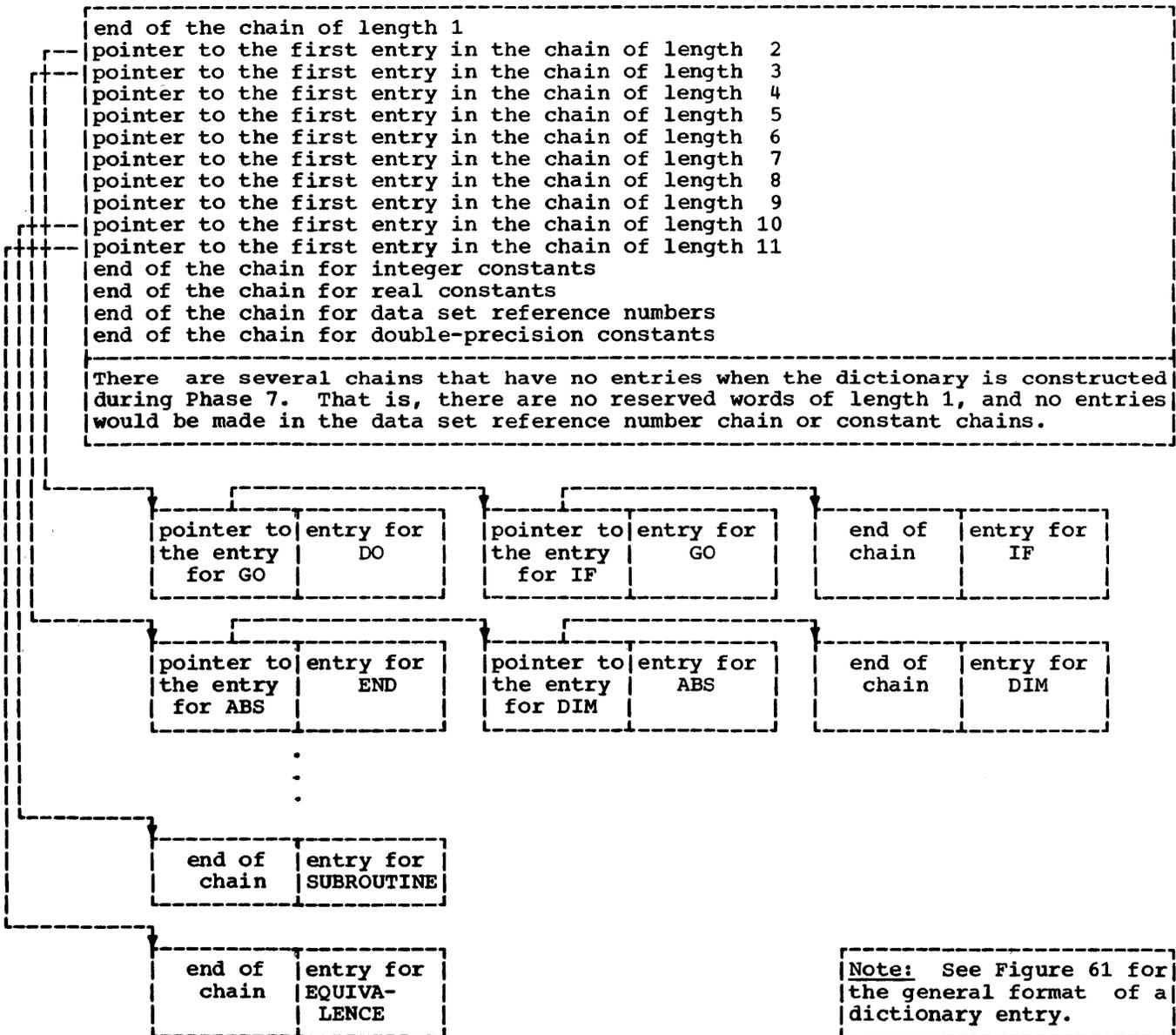


Figure 58. The Dictionary as Constructed by Phase 7

Phase 12 Processing

During Phase 12 processing, addresses are assigned to the symbols entered in the first six chains of the dictionary. In assigning these addresses, Phase 12 uses the contents of the dictionary entries. The addresses replace: (1) the pointers to following entries in the dictionary, and (2) the end-of-chain indicators. To ensure that the chain is not broken, the chain is continued by modifying the pointer to the entry just assigned an address. Figures 59 and 60 illustrate two cases of the "before" and "after" in removing an entry from a dictionary chain. Figure 59 indicates removal of an entry from the end of the

chain. Figure 60 indicates removal of an entry from the middle of the chain.

Phase 14 Processing

During Phase 14 processing, each intermediate text pointer to a dictionary entry is replaced by information contained in that dictionary entry (e.g., a relative address assigned by Phase 12). Refer to Appendix F for examples of this intermediate text modification.

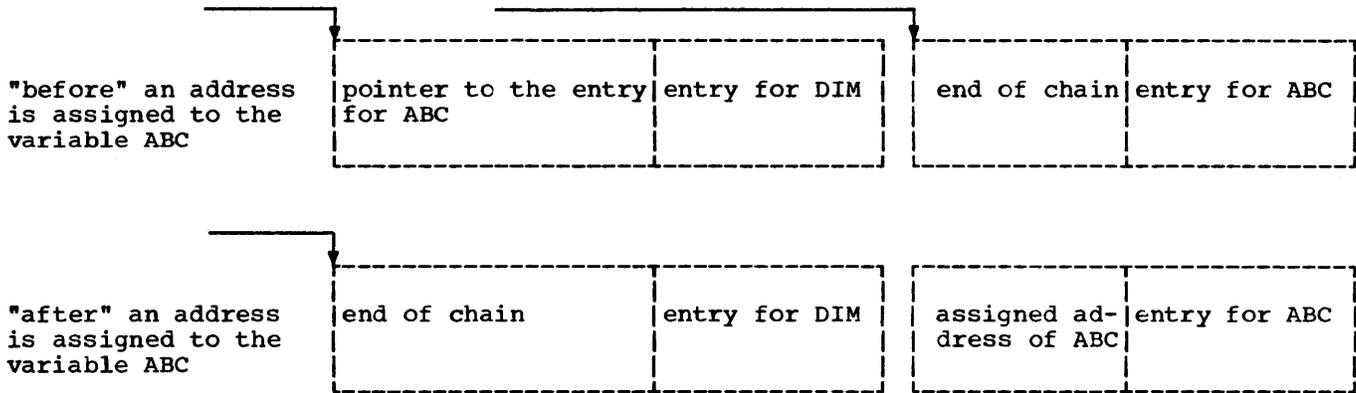


Figure 59. Removing an Entry From the End of a Dictionary Chain

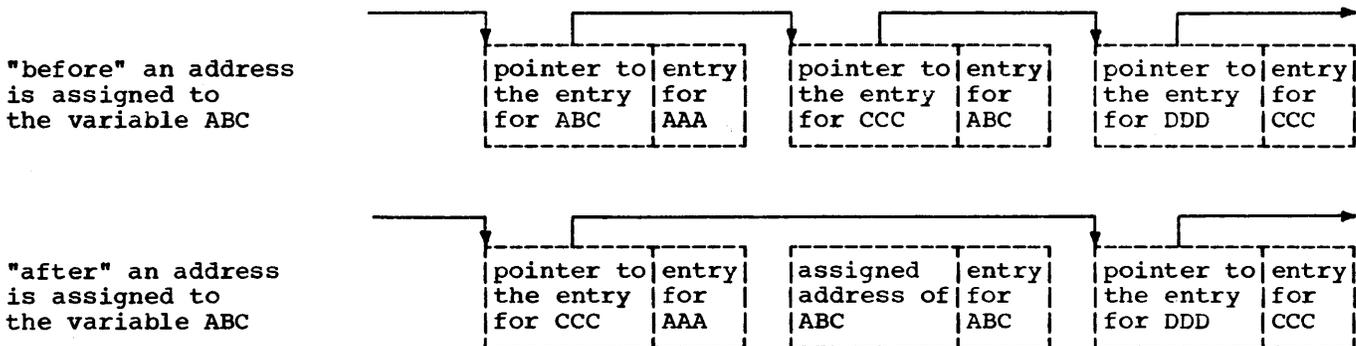


Figure 60. Removing an Entry From the Middle of a Dictionary Chain

Dictionary Entry Format

The entries to the dictionary may vary; however, they all have the same general format. Figure 61 indicates this general format.

chain field	usage field	mode/type field	image field	address field	size field
2 bytes	1 byte	1 byte	1-11 bytes	2 bytes	2 bytes

Figure 61. General Format of a Dictionary Entry

Each field contains specific information as indicated below:

CHAIN FIELD: The chain field is used to maintain the linkage between the various elements of the chain. It either contains the relative pointer to the next entry or indicates that its associated entry is the last entry in the chain.

USAGE FIELD: The usage field is divided into eight subfields. Each subfield is one bit long and is numbered from 0 through 7, inclusive. Figure 62 indicates the function of each subfield in the usage field.

MODE/TYPE FIELD: This field is divided into two parts (each four bits long). The first four bits are used to indicate the mode of an entry, while the last four bits are used to indicate the type. For example, a real quantity has the mode 7; therefore, the mode field for a real is 0111 (the bit configuration for 7). Similarly, a subscripted variable has the type C; therefore, the type field for a subscripted variable is 1100 (the bit configuration for C). The mode/type field for a real subscripted variable is 01111100. The various mode/type combinations possible are indicated in Figure 63.

IMAGE FIELD: The image field contains the appropriate image of the symbol. The length of the symbol determines the length of the field.

ADDRESS FIELD: The address field is present in dictionary entries for:

- Reserved words -- to indicate the position of the displacement of the processing routine for that reserved word in the Phase 10D or Phase 10E Routine Displacement Table (see Appendix I).
- In-line functions -- to indicate the code value used within the compilation for that in-line function.
- Arrays -- to indicate the displacement within the overflow table of the dimension information for that array.

SIZE FIELD: The size field is present for the dictionary entries that represent arrays. It indicates the size of the array.

All fields are present in each dictionary entry, except the address field and the size field. The fields and the phases that enter information into the fields are indicated in Figure 64.

Usage field subfield	Function of the subfield
Bit 0	Indicates if the mode of the entry has been defined
Bit 1	Indicates if the type of the entry has been defined
Bit 2	Indicates if the entry is in COMMON
Bit 3	Indicates if the entry is equated
Bit 4	Indicates if the entry is assigned an address
Bit 5	Indicates if this is the entry for the root of an EQUIVALENCE group (see Phase 12)
Bit 6	Indicates if the entry represents double-precision
Bit 7	Indicates if the entry is for an in-line function or an external reference.

Figure 62. Function of Each Subfield in the Dictionary Usage Field

THE OVERFLOW TABLE

Phase 5 allocates main storage for the overflow table. The overflow table is constructed by Phases 7, 10D, and 10E. The overflow table is used by:

- Phase 12 -- to modify subscript entries, and to reserve storage for the branch list table for referenced statement numbers.
- Phases 14 and 15 -- for verifying that labels are referenced correctly.
- Phase 20 -- for subscript optimization.
- Phase 25 -- for the construction of object module coding.

Organization of the Overflow Table

The overflow table is organized as a series of chains related by the overflow index. The overflow index indicates the displacement of the first entry in each chain relative to the beginning of the table. There are 11 chains, used for various entries, as follows:

- Three chains are organized for the dimension information of an array; that is, for 1-, 2-, and 3-dimensional arrays.
- Three chains are organized for subscript information; that is, for 1-, 2-, and 3-dimensional subscripts.
- Five chains are organized for statement number information. All statement numbers ending in 0 and 1 are entered in the first chain. The remaining chains handle statement numbers ending in 2 and 3, 4 and 5, 6 and 7, and 8 and 9, respectively.

Construction of the Overflow Table

Phase 5 allocates storage for the overflow table. Because there are no reserved words entered in the overflow table as in the dictionary, only the overflow index is actually constructed by Phase 7. The index contains the end-of-chain indicator for each chain, as no entries exist in any chain at this time. Figure 65 indicates the overflow table as it appears after it is constructed by Phase 7.

Phases 10D and 10E construct all entries to the overflow table. Each entry is entered in an overflow table chain; e.g., assume the 1-dimensional array ARRAY1 is the first array entered in Phase 10D. The first overflow index entry is modified to contain:

```
-----
| pointer to the dimension entry for ARRAY1 |
|-----|
```

The overflow table entry (in the first array chain) appears as:

```
-----
| end of chain | entry for ARRAY1 |
|-----|
```

When the next 1-dimensional array, ARRAY2, is entered in the overflow table, the entry for ARRAY1 is modified as follows:

```
-----
| pointer to the entry | entry for ARRAY1 |
| for ARRAY2          |-----|
```

and the entry for ARRAY2 appears as:

```
-----
| end of chain | entry for ARRAY2 |
|-----|
```

The entries to other chains are made in like manner during Phase 10D and the Phase 10E processing.

```
-----
| end of chain for information on |
| 1-dimensional arrays           |
|-----|
| end of chain for information on |
| 2-dimensional arrays           |
|-----|
| end of chain for information on |
| 3-dimensional arrays           |
|-----|
| end of chain for information on |
| 1-dimensional subscripts       |
|-----|
| end of chain for information on |
| 2-dimensional subscripts       |
|-----|
| end of chain for information on |
| 3-dimensional subscripts       |
|-----|
| end of chain for information on |
| statement numbers ending in 0  |
| or 1                            |
|-----|
| end of chain for information on |
| statement numbers ending in 2  |
| or 3                            |
|-----|
| end of chain for information on |
| statement numbers ending in 4  |
| or 5                            |
|-----|
| end of chain for information on |
| statement numbers ending in 6  |
| or 7                            |
|-----|
| end of chain for information on |
| statement numbers ending in 8  |
| or 9                            |
|-----|
```

Figure 65. The Overflow Table Index as Constructed by Phase 7

Use of the Overflow Table

Phase 12 modifies the statement number chains when the branch list table for statement numbers (refer to Appendix J) is prepared initially by Phase 12. The chain field is replaced by a number that indicates the position the statement number has in the branch list table. Phase 12 also replaces the chain field in each overflow table entry for a subscripted variable with the relative address assigned to that variable.

Phases 14 and 15 use the overflow table to verify that labels are referenced correctly.

Phase 20 uses the information about subscripted expressions in performing its function of subscript optimization. This information is obtained via a pointer, in the intermediate text, to the pertinent overflow table entry (in a subscript chain).

Phase 25 uses the branch list table number, assigned by Phase 12, to determine the position of a statement number in the branch table. (Phase 25 can then insert the object-time address, associated with the statement number, in the table.) The number is obtained via a pointer, in the statement number intermediate text entry, to the overflow table.

Overflow Table Entry

An entry in the overflow table has one of three formats:

1. Dimension.
2. Subscript.
3. Statement number.

DIMENSION ENTRY: A dimension entry is formed for each array. An array may be defined as:

- 1-dimensional, e.g., ARRAY (D1).
- 2-dimensional, e.g., ARRAY (D1,D2).
- 3-dimensional, e.g., ARRAY (D1,D2,D3).

One-dimensional arrays are entered in the first dimension chain of the overflow table, 2-dimensional arrays in the second, and 3-dimensional arrays in the third. The formats for the entries of 1-, 2-, and 3-dimensional arrays are indicated in Figure 66.

chain	1	length		
chain	2	length	D1*length	
chain	3	length	D1*length	D1*D2*length
2	2	2	2	2
bytes	bytes	bytes	bytes	bytes

Figure 66. Format of Dimension Information in the Overflow Table

The fields of a dimension entry contain the following information:

- The first field contains the displacement (relative to the beginning of the overflow table) of the next element in the chain.
- The second field is a digit, either 1, 2, or 3, to indicate whether one, two, or three fields will follow. This is the same as the number of dimensions.
- The next field is of the form:

L	D1*L	D1*D2*L
2 bytes	2 bytes	2 bytes

where:

D1*L and D1*D2*L are optional fields depending on the dimension.

L indicates the length of an element in words (e.g., 1 for integer or real quantities and 2 for double-precision quantities).

D1 represents the value of the first dimension of the array.

D2 represents the value of the second dimension of the array.

SUBSCRIPT ENTRY: A subscript entry is formed for each subscripted variable. A subscripted variable may be defined as:

- 1-dimensional, e.g., A(I)
- 2-dimensional, e.g., A(I,J)
- 3-dimensional, e.g., A(I,J,K)

One-dimensional subscripts are entered in the first subscript chain of the overflow table, 2-dimensional subscripts in the second, and 3-dimensional subscripts in the third. The formats for the entries of 1-, 2-, and 3-dimensional subscripts are illustrated in Figure 67.

chain	C1	pointer to V1 in the dictionary				
chain	C1	pointer to V1 in the dictionary	C2	pointer to V2 in the dictionary		
chain	C1	pointer to V1 in the dictionary	C2	pointer to V2 in the dictionary	C3	pointer to V3 in the dictionary
2 bytes	2 bytes	2 bytes	2 bytes	2 bytes	2 bytes	2 bytes

Figure 67. Format of Subscript Information in the Overflow Table

The fields of a subscript entry contain the following information:

- The first field contains the displacement (relative to the beginning of the overflow table) of the next element in the chain.
- The second and third, fourth and fifth, and sixth and seventh fields represent the first, second, and third dimensions of the subscript. The explanation and use of C1, V1, C2, V2, C3, and V3 are given in Appendix G.

STATEMENT NUMBER ENTRY: A statement number entry is constructed for each statement number encountered in the source statements. The format of an entry in the statement number chains is illustrated in Figure 68.

chain	usage	packed statement number
2 bytes	1 byte	3 bytes

Figure 68. Format of Statement Number Information in the Overflow Table

The fields of a statement number entry contain the following information:

- The first field contains the displacement (relative to the beginning of the overflow table) of the next element in the chain.

- The second field is a usage field. The usage field bits and their meanings are illustrated in Figure 69.
- The third field contains the actual statement number (as it appeared in the source statement) in packed form.

Usage Field Bit	Function of the Field
0	Indicates if the statement number is defined
1	Indicates if the statement number is referenced
2	Indicates if the statement number represents the end of a DO loop
3	Indicates if the statement number represents a specification statement
4	Indicates if the statement number represents a FORMAT statement
5	Indicates if the statement number indicates DO nesting errors
6	Not used
7	Not used

Figure 69. Statement Number Entry Usage Field Bit Functions

SEGMAL

SEGMAL, constructed by Phase 5, contains the beginning and ending address of each segment of main storage assigned to the dictionary and overflow table by Phase 5. This main storage is assigned to the compiler as a result of the GETMAIN macroinstruction issued by the compiler during Phase 5. SEGMAL resides at the beginning of the lowest segment assigned to the dictionary and overflow table.

Phase 1 Use

Phase 1, between compilations in a batch SPACE run, frees the overflow table and SEGMAL via SEGMAL. For all compilations, before returning control to the calling program, Phase 1 uses SEGMAL to free any remaining segments in the dictionary and overflow table.

Phase 5 Use

When SEGMAL is constructed by Phase 5, the various segments are put into ascending order; that is, the segment entries of main storage are sorted. Contiguous segments are then combined into a single segment.

The communication area contains fields that are used to indicate which segment is currently being used for the overflow table and which is currently being used for the dictionary.

Phase 7 Use

Phase 7 uses SEGMAL to load: (1) the dictionary index and the reserved word portion of the dictionary into the dictionary, and (2) the overflow index into the overflow table. In addition, Phase 7 uses SEGMAL to reinitialize the above-mentioned fields in the communication area.

Phases 10D, 10E, and 14 Use

Phases 10D and 10E use SEGMAL when new segments of the dictionary and overflow table are required. For SPACE compilations, Phase 14 uses SEGMAL to free the main storage areas allocated to the dictionary.

Format of SEGMAL

Figure 70 illustrates the format of SEGMAL for N segments, where each segment is entered in ascending sequence by address. The entry for each segment consists of the beginning address of the segment and the ending address of the segment plus 1. (The storage location containing the ending address of segment N is adjacent to the storage location containing the starting address of the overflow index. The starting address of the overflow index is an entry in the communication area.)

Note: The ending address of segment N minus the beginning address of segment 1 must be less than or equal to 65,536.

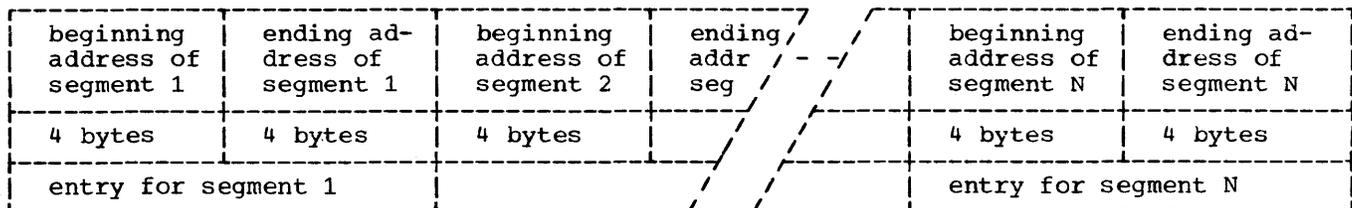


Figure 70. Format of SEGMAL

PATCH TABLE

The patch table (100 bytes) is a part of the interface module. It is used only if the patch facility has been enabled and if patch records precede the source statements of the FORTRAN source module being compiled. The patch table (constructed by

Phase 5) contains a converted form (for internal use) of the information contained in the patch records. When the patch table is full, any further patch records are ignored and are not placed onto the SYS-PRINT data set.

Figure 71 illustrates the format of the patch table.

Identifier for first module to be modified	2 bytes
Relative address of first patch for this module	2 bytes
Length (in bytes) of first patch for this module	2 bytes
First patch for this module	Variable
.	.
.	.
.	.
Relative address of last patch for this module	2 bytes
Length (in bytes) of last patch for this module	2 bytes
Last patch for this module	Variable
00000001 (Indicates last patch for this module)	4 bytes
.	.
.	.
.	.
Identifier for last module to be modified	2 bytes
Relative address of first patch for this module	2 bytes
Length (in bytes) of first patch for this module	2 bytes
First patch for this module	Variable
.	.
.	.
.	.
Relative address of last patch for this module	2 bytes
Length (in bytes) of last patch for this module	2 bytes
Last patch for this module	Variable
00000001 (Indicates last patch for this module)	4 bytes
ZZ (Indicates last module to be patched)	2 bytes

Figure 71. Format of the Patch Table

BLOCKING TABLE

The blocking table is constructed by Phase 5 only for PRFRM compilations. Phase 5 constructs a blocking table entry for each of the data control blocks for the compiler data sets. The blocking table contains the information required for deblocking compiler input and for blocking compiler output.

Each blocking table entry is 24 bytes in length. Figure 72 illustrates the format of a blocking table entry.

Logical record length ¹ (2 bytes)
Blocking factor (2 bytes)
Address of buffer 2 (next) (4 bytes)
Address of buffer 1 (current) (4 bytes)
Address of next logical record within the current buffer (4 bytes)
Address to or from which the next record is to be moved (4 bytes)
Number of logical records in current buffer that remain to be processed (2 bytes)
Indicates if priming is required (input data sets only) (1 byte)
Indicates the I/O activity for this data set (1 byte)
¹ 80 for SYSIN, SYSLIN, SYSUT2, and SYSPUNCH; 121 for SYSPRINT

Figure 72. Blocking Table Entry Format

BLDL TABLE

The BLDL table is constructed by Phase 5 only for PRFRM compilations. It is built using a BLDL macro-instruction. Phase 5 supplies, as a parameter of the BLDL macro-instruction, the address of a skeleton BLDL table. The skeleton BLDL table contains: (1) the names (8 bytes per name) of the compiler components to which control may be

transferred via an XCTL macro-instruction, and (2) a 36-byte field for each of the above names. The BLDL routine completes the skeleton BLDL table by placing information into these 36-byte fields. This information is obtained from the data set directory of the partitioned data set containing the FORTRAN IV (E) compiler. This information (such as the physical location of each compiler component in the partitioned data set) is used for transferring control from one component of the compiler to the next for PRFRM compilations.

The BLDL table allows more efficient phase-to-phase transition, through the use of the DE parameter in the XCTL macro-instruction, than is possible for a SPACE compilation in which the EPLOC parameter must be used. For a description of the XCTL macro-instruction and the DE and EPLOC parameters, refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: Control Program Services.

Each entry in the BLDL table is 44 bytes in length. Figure 73 illustrates the format of the BLDL table.

NOTE: Although entries for the interludes are included in the BLDL table, the interludes are never executed for a PRFRM compilation. When an interlude is specified in the linkage to the end-of-phase routine (PNEXT) in the performance module, the phase in the BLDL table that follows the specified interlude is automatically transferred to by modifying the XCTL macro-instruction to point to the directory entry for that phase.

RESET TABLE (RESETABL)

The reset table is a 39-byte index table that is used by the PNEXT routine in the performance module to determine which, if any, of the record counts for the chained buffer data sets (SYSUT1 and SYSUT2) must be reset. The record count of the data set that is to be used for output by the next phase is always reset.

The fifth character in the symbolic name of the phase to be executed next is used to reference the appropriate entry in the table. If the value of that entry is zero, no action is taken. If the value is two, the record count in the blocking table entry for SYSUT1 is reset. If the value is eight, the record count in the blocking table entry for SYSUT2 is reset. Resetting the record count is necessary in order to determine whether actual READS are required for the data set when it is used as input by a subsequent phase.

Compiler component (8 bytes)	Directory information for compiler component (36 bytes)
IEJFAAB0 (Phase 1) subsequent entries	Directory information for Phase 1 (subsequent entries)
IEJFCAA0 (Phase 5)	Directory information for Phase 5
IEJFEAA0 (Phase 7)	Directory information for Phase 7
IEJFFAA0 (Phase 8)	Directory information for Phase 8
IEJFGAA0 (Phase 10D)	Directory information for Phase 10D
IEJFJAA0 (Phase 10E)	Directory information for Phase 10E
IEJFJGA0 (Interlude 10E)	Directory information for Interlude 10E
IEJFLAA0 (Phase 12)	Directory information for Phase 12
IEJFNAA0 (Phase 14)	Directory information for Phase 14
IEJFNAA0 (Interlude 14)	Directory information for Interlude 14
IEJFPAA0 (Phase 15)	Directory information for Phase 15
IEJFPGA0 (Interlude 15)	Directory information for Interlude 15
IEJFRAA0 (Phase 20)	Directory information for Phase 20
IEJFVAA0 (Phase 25)	Directory information for Phase 25
IEJFXAA0 (Phase 30)	Directory information for Phase 30

Figure 73. BLDL Table Format

APPENDIX I: TABLES USED BY PHASE LOAD MODULES

During a compilation, the compiler uses the following tables:

- Allocation table.
- Routine displacement tables.
- EQUIVALENCE table.
- Forcing value table.
- Operations table.
- Subscript table.
- Index mapping table.
- Epilog table.
- Message length table.
- Message address table.
- Message text table.

Some tables are actual segments of the phase load modules; others are created during the compilation. Each table is used only by the phase that contains it (as a part of the phase load module) or creates it. The following discussions describe the use and format of each table.

ALLOCATION TABLE

The allocation table is a part of the Phase 5 load module. It is used to allocate the amount of main storage obtained among buffer areas and resident tables. Table 27 illustrates the format of the allocation table.

ROUTINE DISPLACEMENT TABLES

The routine displacement tables for reserved word processing routines are parts of the Phase 10D and Phase 10E load modules. Reserved words are those that indicate a specific FORTRAN statement. The Phase 10D and Phase 10E routine displacement tables are identical in structure and in purpose (locating the processing routine for a given reserved word). The Phase 10D table aids in the location of reserved word routines for declarative statements; the Phase 10E table aids in the location of reserved word routines for executable statements.

Each reserved word causes an entry to be made in the dictionary by Phase 7 (refer to Appendix H). The address field of these entries contains a displacement, used as an indexing value, relative to the start of the appropriate routine displacement table.

Table 27. Allocation Table

SIZE		Average number of source statements that can be compiled		Dictionary and Overflow Table Size (in bytes)		Internal Text Buffer Size (in bytes)		
						SPACE	PRFRM	Non-I/O Buffers
SPACE	PRFRM	SPACE	PRFRM	SPACE	PRFRM	I/O Buffers	I/O Buffers	Non-I/O Buffers
15K	19K	170	170	2216	2216	4x(104)	4x(96)	0
44K	48K	2500	1980	25512	20328	4x(1704)	4x(1696)	5184
86K	90K	6500	6500	65536	65536	4x(1704)	4x(1696)	8104
200K	204K	6500	6500	65536	65536	4x(1704)	4x(1696)	119720

¹If blocked I/O is specified, the value of the expression 2*(BLKSIZE) must be added, for each data set that contains blocked records, to the number shown under the PRFRM option.

This index is used to obtain the actual displacement, relative to a base register, of a specific reserved word routine located within the Phase 10D or Phase 10E load module. The effective address of the desired reserved word routine is obtained, by Phase 10D or Phase 10E, by adding this displacement to the value in the base register.

Figures 74 and 75 illustrate the format of the routine displacement tables.

Displacement from base register value of DEFINE FILE reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of REAL reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of COMMON reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of FORMAT reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of DOUBLE reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of INTGER reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of EXTERN reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of FUNCT reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of DIM reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of SUBRUT reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of EQUIV reserved word routine
2 bytes

Figure 74. Phase 10D Routine Displacement Table Format

Displacement from base register value of FIND reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of DO reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of GO reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of FORMAT reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of IF reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of END reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of CALL reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of GOTO reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of READ reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of STOP reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of PAUSE reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of WRITE reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of RETURN reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of REWIND reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of ENDFIL reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of CONT reserved word routine
Displacement from base register value of BKSP reserved word routine
2 bytes

Figure 75. Phase 10E Routine Displacement Table Format

Figure 76 illustrates how the DO reserved word routine is located in Phase 10E.

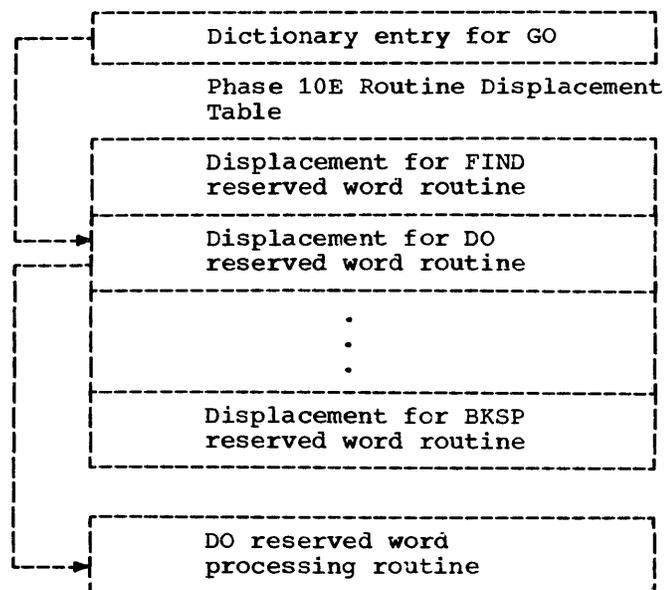


Figure 76. Locating the DO Reserved Word Routine

Each field in an entry is two bytes in length. The first field contains a pointer to the entry for the variable or array in the dictionary. The second field contains a pointer to the dictionary entry for the root to which the variable or array is equated. (If the variable or array is the root of the EQUIVALENCE group, the first two fields contain the same pointer.) The third field contains the displacement or address assigned to the variable or array in COMMON. (The addresses for variables and arrays are assigned before this table is constructed.) The fourth field is the size, in bytes, of the EQUIVALENCE group or class.

The maximum number of entries in the EQUIVALENCE table is the larger of:

- 100, or
- The largest unused segment of the dictionary and overflow table divided by eight (if this segment exceeds 800 bytes).

For example, if the compiler allocates 5500 contiguous bytes to the dictionary and the overflow table, and 3100 bytes are used, then the maximum number of entries in the EQUIVALENCE table is:

$$(5500 - 3100)/8 = 2400/8 = 300$$

EQUIVALENCE TABLE

The EQUIVALENCE table is constructed by Phase 12 for use by the Phase 12 storage allocation routines, which assign addresses to equated variables. This table is a serial list in which each member follows the preceding one.

The format of a typical entry in the EQUIVALENCE table is as follows:

p(variable) or p(array)	p(root)	displacement or address in COMMON	size
2 bytes	2 bytes	2 bytes	2 bytes

FORCING VALUE TABLE

The forcing value table is a part of the Phase 15 load module. The forcing value table is used by Phase 15 as an aid in the reordering of intermediate text entries in arithmetic expressions. This table defines the relative position of each operator in the hierarchy of operators.

Each entry in the forcing value table is five bytes in length. The forcing value table is illustrated in Figure 77.

Adjective Code	Left Forcing Value	Address of Associated Routine	Right Forcing Value
(	64	a(LFTPRN)	01
)	00	a(RTPRN)	69
=	70	a(EQUALS)	70
,	49	a(COMMA)	48
n	80	never forced out	01
+	09	a(ADD)	09
-	09	a(ADD)	09
*	05	a(MULT)	05
/	05	a(MULT)	05
**	04	a(EXPON)	03
F(	64	a(FUNC)	01
unary -	05	a(UMINUS)	01
end mark	00	never forced out	80
unary +	05	a(UPLUS)	01
SF Forcing	72	a(END)	70
ARITH Forcing	72	a(END)	70
CALL Forcing	72	a(CALL)	70
IF Forcing	72	a(END)	70
1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes	1 byte

Figure 77. Forcing Value Table

OPERATIONS TABLE

The operations table is a temporary storage area (part of the Phase 15 load module) used during the reordering of operations within statements that can contain arithmetic expressions. This table functions as a "pushdown table" (that is, a table in which the top entry is the most recently entered item) for storing intermediate text words that refer to the operation in question. An exception is made for subscript text, which is stored in the subscript table.

The operations table can contain no more than 50 entries. Entries are four bytes in length and are obtained by a pointer to the last entry in the table for the specific statement under consideration. The format of a typical entry in the operations table is shown in Figure 78.

adj code	mode/type	pointer
1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes

Figure 78. Operations Table Entry Format

SUBSCRIPT TABLE

The subscript table is a temporary storage area (part of the Phase 15 load module) used for subscript text encountered during the reordering of intermediate text words by Phase 15. This table functions as a "pushdown table" (that is, a table in which the top entry is the most recently entered item) for storing subscript intermediate text words that refer to the operation in question.

The subscript table can contain no more than 38 entries. Entries are eight bytes in length and are obtained by a pointer to the top entry in the table for the specific statement under consideration. The format of a typical entry in the subscript table is shown in Figure 79.

subscript adjective code	not used by Phase 15	offset
p(subscript)		p(dimension)
1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes

Figure 79. Subscript Table Entry Format

The subscript adjective code indicates to other phases of the compiler that subscript calculation is necessary. The offset is an index used to find the correct element in an array associated with a particular subscript expression. The second word of an entry in the subscript table contains two pointers to information in the overflow table. The first points to the subscript information for the subscripted variable; the second points to the dimension information for the array indicated by the subscripted variable.

INDEX MAPPING TABLE

The index mapping table (part of the Phase 20 load module) is used to aid the implementation of subscript optimization. This table maintains a record of all information pertinent to a subscript expression. Because the computation of any unique subscript expression is placed in a register, the number of entries in the table depends on the number of registers available for this purpose. The initial register assigned to a subscript expression is determined during the initialization process for Phase 20. Each entry in the index mapping table is eight bytes in length. The format of a typical entry in the index mapping table is shown in Figure 80.

regis- ter number	number of dimen- sions	status	offset
p(subscript)		p(dimension)	
1 byte		1 byte	2 bytes

Figure 80. Index Mapping Table Entry Format

The register number field contains the number of the register assigned to the subscript expression. The dimension number field contains the number 1, 2, or 3, depending on the number of dimensions. The status field indicates whether the register referenced by this entry is: (1) unassigned, (2) assigned to a normal subscript expression for indexing computation, or (3) assigned to the address of a dummy variable. The offset field contains the offset index used to obtain the correct element of the array associated with a particular subscript expression. The last two fields contain pointers to information in the overflow table.

EPILOG TABLE

The epilog table is created by Phase 25 when the FUNCTION or SUBROUTINE adjective code is encountered. An entry is made in the epilog table for each variable used as a parameter in the calling program. The instructions generated during Phase 25 for the RETURN entry in the intermediate text reference the epilog table to return the value of variables to the calling program.

Each entry in the epilog table is four bytes in length. The format of a typical entry in the epilog table is shown in Figure 81.

L	S	address
1 byte	1 byte	2 bytes

Figure 81. Epilog Table Entry Format

L is the field length of the variable in the subprogram, S is the relative position of the variable in the parameter list of the calling program, and address is the address of the variable in the subprogram.

MESSAGE LENGTH TABLE

The message length table is loaded into main storage as a part of the Phase 30 load module. It contains the lengths of all the messages capable of being generated by the compiler. The length of any message is obtained by using the number corresponding to that message as a displacement from the start of the message length table.

Figure 82 illustrates the format of the message length table.

Length of first message
Length of second message
.
.
.
Length of last message
1 byte

Figure 82. Message Length Table Format

MESSAGE ADDRESS TABLE

The message address table is loaded into main storage as a part of the Phase 30 load module. It contains the displacements from the start of the message text table of all the messages capable of being generated by the compiler. The displacement of any message is obtained by using the number corresponding to the message multiplied by two as a displacement from the start of the message address table.

Figure 83 illustrates the format of the message address table.

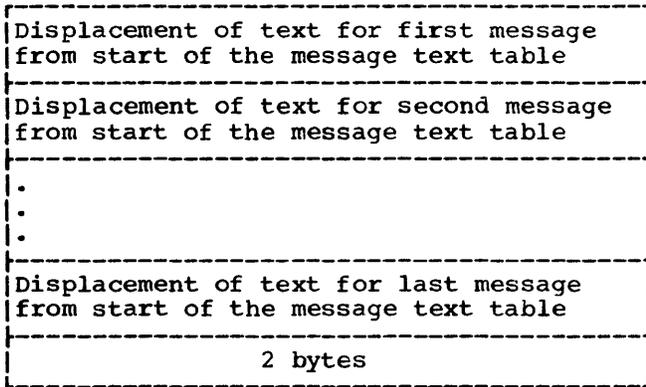


Figure 83. Message Address Table Format

MESSAGE TEXT TABLE

The message text table is loaded into main storage as a part of the Phase 30 load

module. It contains all the messages capable of being generated by the compiler. Each message is obtained by using the displacements contained in the message address table.

Figure 84 illustrates the format of the message text table.

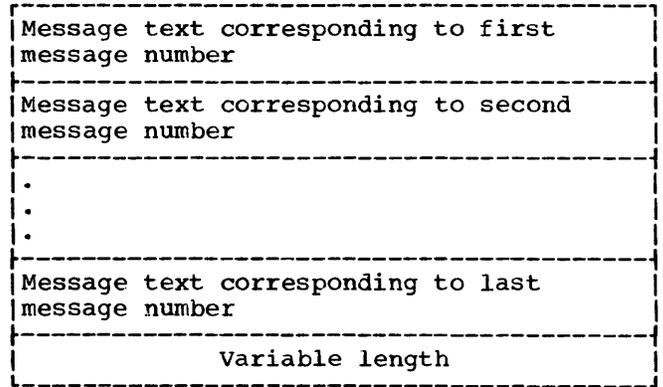


Figure 84. Message Text Table Format

APPENDIX J: TABLES USED BY THE OBJECT MODULE

The following tables are used by the object module to execute the instructions generated by the compiler:

- Branch list table for referenced statement numbers.
- Branch list table for SF expansions and DO statements.
- Argument list table for subprogram and SF calls.
- Base value table.

The following discussions describe the use and format of each table.

BRANCH LIST TABLE FOR REFERENCED STATEMENT NUMBERS

Phase 12 allocates storage for the branch list table for referenced statement numbers and assigns a relative position (relative to the start of the branch table) to each executable statement that is referenced by other statements. Phase 25 inserts the relative addresses, for these statements, into the positions dictated by Phase 12. The table is used, at object-time, by the instructions generated to branch to executable statements.

Each entry in the table is the address of a referenced statement number. The format of the branch list table for referenced statement numbers is illustrated in Figure 85.

address of first referenced statement number
address of second referenced statement number
.
.
.
address of last referenced statement number
4 bytes

Figure 85. Format of Branch List Table for Referenced Statement Numbers

BRANCH LIST TABLE FOR SF EXPANSIONS AND DO STATEMENTS

Phase 20 allocates storage for the branch list table for SF (statement function) expansions and DO statements. During Phase 25 processing, the relative addresses for the first executable instructions in the SF expansions and DO loops are inserted into locations relative to the start of the branch table. The locations for the SF expansions were determined by Phase 14; the locations for the DO loops are determined by Phase 25. The table is used, at object time, either by the instructions generated to reference SF expansions or by the instructions generated to control the iteration of DO loops.

Each entry in the table is either the address of the first instruction in an SF expansion or the address of the second instruction in a DO loop. (The first instruction of the DO loop initializes the DO counter.) The format and organization of the branch list table for SF expansions and DO statements is illustrated in Figure 86.

address of first instruction in SF expansion 1
address of first instruction in SF expansion 2
.
.
.
address of first instruction in SF expansion N
address of second instruction in DO loop 1
address of second instruction in DO loop 2
.
.
.
address of second instruction in DO loop M
4 bytes

Figure 86. Format of Branch List Table for SF Expansions and DO Loops

All SF definitions must appear prior to the executable statements (this includes DO statements) in a source module. Therefore, Phase 25 encounters all the SF adjective codes prior to the first DO statement adjective code. This accounts for the placement of all SF expansion addresses into the branch table before the first DO loop address.

ARGUMENT LIST TABLE FOR SUBPROGRAM AND SF CALLS

Phase 20 allocates storage for the argument list table for the arguments of subprogram and SF calls. During Phase 20 processing, the relative addresses of the above arguments are inserted into the argument list table. The starting address of the first argument of each argument list is passed as part of the intermediate text to Phase 25 (the total number of SFs is passed in the communication area).

Each entry in the argument list table is either the address of an argument used in a subprogram or the address of an argument used in an SF. Entries are made in the table as Phase 20 encounters each subprogram or SF reference. The format and organization of the argument list table is illustrated in Figure 87.

BASE VALUE TABLE

The base value table is generated by the various phases of the compiler as base registers are required by the object coding. The table is assembled in its final form by Phase 25. The compiler-generated instructions that load base registers, at object time, use the base value table in order to obtain the proper base register values.

Figure 88 illustrates the format and organization of the base value table.

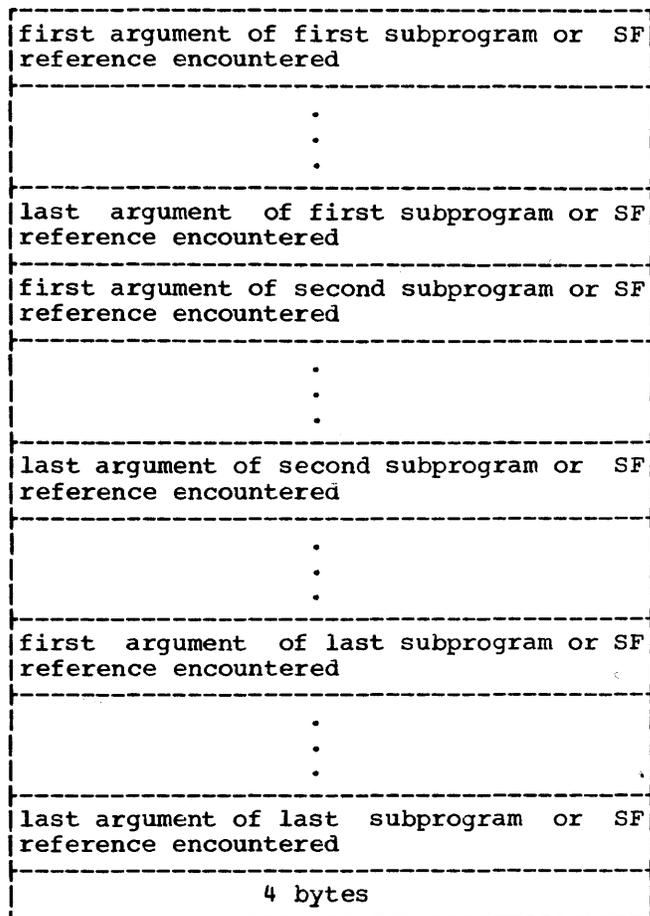


Figure 87. Format of Argument List Table for Subprogram and SF Calls

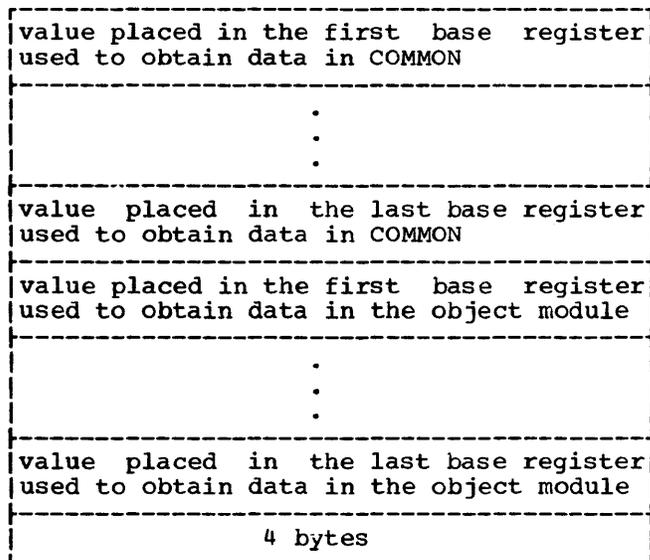


Figure 88. Format of Base Value Table

APPENDIX K: DIAGNOSTIC MESSAGES AND STATEMENT/EXPRESSION PROCESSING

This appendix contains the names of the phases and the routines within the phases that: (1) generate diagnostic messages, and (2) process the various FORTRAN statements and expressions.

DIAGNOSTIC MESSAGES

Two types of diagnostic messages are generated by the FORTRAN compiler - informative messages and error/warning messages. The messages produced by the compiler are explained in the IBM System/360 Operating System: FORTRAN IV (E) Programmer's Guide.

Informative Messages

Four informative messages are generated by the compiler to inform the programmer or operator of the status of the compilation. The messages and the phases and subroutines in which they are generated are illustrated in Table 28.

Table 28. Informative Messages

Message/number	Phase	Subrtn.
IEJ001I	5	MESSGOUT
LEVEL: rmthyr IBM OS/360 BASIC FORTRAN IV (E) COMPILATION DATE: yy.ddd	7	EJECTPRT
SIZE OF COMMON xxxxxx PROGRAM yyyyyy	30	ENDCRD
END OF COMPILATION zzzzzz	30	EOJOB

Error/Warning Messages

Each error/warning message produced by the compiler is identified by an associated number. Table 29 relates a message number with the phase(s) and subroutine(s) in which the corresponding message is generated.

Table 29. Error/Warning Messages

Message Number	Phase	Subroutine or Routine
IEJ002I	5	MESSGOUT
IEJ003I	5	MESSGOUT
IEJ004I	5	MESSGOUT
IEJ005I	5	MESSGOUT
IEJ006I	5	MESSGOUT
IEJ007I	5	MESSGOUT
IEJ008I	5	MESSGOUT
IEJ029I	10D	DIMSUB
IEJ030I	10D	COMMON, EQUIVP
IEJ031I	12	EQUIVP
IEJ032I	10D,10E	LITCON
IEJ033I	10D,10E	GETWD
IEJ034I	10D	FUNCT, SUBRUT
IEJ035I	10D	FUNCT, SUBRUT
IEJ036I	10E	ARITH
IEJ037I	10D,10E	CLASS, ARITH, ASF, IF
IEJ038I	10D	INTGER/REAL/DOUBLE, EXTERN, COMMON, EQUIV, DIM
IEJ039I	10D,10E	SYMTLU
IEJ041I	10D,10E	ASF, EXTERN, DIM
IEJ043I	10D,10E	INTGER/REAL/DOUBLE, GO
IEJ043I	12	ALOC
IEJ044I	10D,10E	LITCON
IEJ045I	10D,10E	LITCON
IEJ046I	10D,10E	LITCON
IEJ047I	10D,10E	CLASS, LIM
IEJ048I	10D	DIMSUB
IEJ049I	10D	DIM, DIM90

(Continued)

Table 29. Error/Warning Messages

(Continued)

Message Number	Phase	Subroutine or Routine
IEJ050I	10D	EQUIV
IEJ051I	10D	EQUIV, DIM
IEJ051I	14	FCOMACHK
IEJ052I	10D	SUBS, EQUIV
IEJ053I	10D	SUBS
IEJ054I	10E	ASF
IEJ055I	10D	FUNC, SUBRUT
IEJ056I	10E	GO
IEJ057I	10E	READ/WRITE
IEJ058I	10E	READ/WRITE
IEJ060I	10D	EQUIV
IEJ061I	10D,10E	EOSR
IEJ063I	10E	EQUIV
IEJ064I	10D,10E,	LABTLU, SYMTLU,
IEJ064I	30	TWNFIV
IEJ065I	10D,10E	CLASS, LABLU, PAKNUM
IEJ066I	10E	DO
IEJ067I	10D	DEFINE
IEJ068I	10D,10E	LITCON
IEJ069I	10E	ASF
IEJ070I	10D	FUNCT, SUBRUT
IEJ071I	10E	CALL
IEJ072I	10E	ARITH
IEJ073I	10D,10E	PUTX
IEJ074I	10D	COMMON
IEJ075I	14	FORMAT, CKLM
IEJ076I	14	READ/READWR, FORMAT
IEJ077I	10D,10E	ASF, READ/WRITE, EOSR, DO, SUBS, EQUIV, FUNCT, SUBRUT, DIMSUB, DIM, SKPBLK
IEJ077I	14	READ/READWR, DO, FILLEG, SKPBLK

Message Number	Phase	Subroutine or Routine
IEJ078I	14	CKENDO
IEJ079I	10E	GO
IEJ079I	14	READ/READWR, DO
IEJ080I	10E	GO
IEJ080I	14	READ/READWR
IEJ081I	10D,10E	ARITH, EQUIV
IEJ081I	14	READ/READWR, FMDCON, FMECON, FMFCON, FMTINT, FMACON, FORMAT
IEJ082I	10D,10E	LITCON
IEJ082I	14	NOFDCT, INTCON
IEJ083I	10D,10E	CSORN, INTCON
IEJ083I	14	INTCON
IEJ084I	10D,10E	WARN/ERRET
IEJ084I	14	ERROR, WARN
IEJ084I	15	ERROR, WARN
IEJ085I	12	DPALOC, SALO
IEJ085I	14	PRESCN
IEJ086I	14	BLANKZ
IEJ087I	14	FMDCON, FMECON, FMFCON, FMTINT, FMACON, FSUBST
IEJ088I	14	LPAREN
IEJ089I	14	UNITCK
IEJ090I	14	FQUOTE
IEJ091I	14	FMINUS, FPLUS
IEJ092I	14	FCOMMA
IEJ093I	14	READ/READWR
IEJ094I	14	FMDCON, FMECON, FMFCON, FMTINT, FMACON
IEJ095I	14	READ/READWR
IEJ096I	14	READ/READWR
IEJ097I	14	INSAV
IEJ098I	14	FQUOTE

(Continued)

Table 29. Error/Warning Messages

Message Number	Phase	Subroutine or Routine
IEJ099I	14	FQUOTE
IEJ100I	14	DO, READ/READWR
IEJ123I	15	MOPUP
IEJ124I	15	EQUALS
IEJ125I	15	DO, BEGIO
IEJ126I	15	CKARG
IEJ127I	12	COMALO, ALOC
IEJ127I	15	PRESCN, UMINUS, UPLUS, FOSCAN
IEJ128I	15	LFTPRN
IEJ129I	15	TYPE
IEJ130I	15	COMMA
IEJ131I	15	INLIN1
IEJ132I	15	LABEL
IEJ133I	15	EQUALS
IEJ135I	15	COMMA, TYPE
IEJ136I	15	LAB
IEJ137I	15	COMMA, TYPE, RTPRN, FOSCAN
IEJ139I	15	COMMA
IEJ140I	15	FOSCAN
IEJ141I	15	COMMA
IEJ142I	15	DO, BEGIO
IEJ143I	15	EQUALS
IEJ144I	15	ARTHIF
IEJ145I	20	PHEND
IEJ147I	12	EQUIVP
IEJ148I	12	RENTER/ENTER, SWROOT

(Continued)

Message Number	Phase	Subroutine or Routine
IEJ149I	12	COMALO
IEJ150I	12	ALOC
IEJ159I	15	MOPUP
IEJ160I	14	INTCON
IEJ160I	15	COMMA
IEJ161I	12	EXTCOM
IEJ162I	10D,10E	CLASS
IEJ163I	10D,10E	LITCON
IEJ164I	10E	CONT/RETURN
IEJ164I	14	FORMAT
IEJ166I	10D,10E	EOSR, DO, FUNCT, SUBRUT
IEJ166I	14	READ/READWR
IEJ167I	14	LINECK
IEJ168I	10D,10E	EOSR
IEJ169I	10D	DIMSUB
IEJ169I	15	COMMA
IEJ171I	10D,10E	EOSR
IEJ171I	14	RPAREN
IEJ172I	10E	ASF
IEJ173I	10E	ARITH
IEJ174I	15	EQUALS, LFTPRN, INARG, TYPE
IEJ175I	14	LABEL

STATEMENT/EXPRESSION PROCESSING

Table 30 indicates the routine/subroutine responsible for the processing of the statement/expression under consideration, and the phase in which it appears.

Table 30. Statement/Expression Processing

Statement/ Expression	Phase 10D/10E	Phase 12	Phase 14	Phase 15	Phase 20	Phase 25	Phase 30
Arithmetic Expression or Statement	ARITH (E)		PASSON	FOSCAN	ARITH	RXGEN	
FUNCTION Call	ARITH (E)	LDCN	PASSON	FOSCAN	CALSEQ	FUNGEN/ EREXIT	
Subscripted Variable	SUBS (E)	SSCK	PASSON	FOSCAN, MVSBBX/ MVSBRX	SUBVP	SAOP, AOP	
SF Definition and Expansion	ASF (E)	LDCN	ASF	FOSCAN	ARITH	ASFDEF, ASFEXP	
Statement Number Definitions	CLASS (E)	ASSNBL	LABEL	LABEL	LABEL	LABEL	
SF Call	ARITH (E)	LDCN	PASSON	FOSCAN	CALSEQ	ASFUSE	
BACKSPACE	BKSP/REWIND END/ENDFIL (E)		BSPREF	DO2	ESDRLD	RDWRT	
CALL	CALL (E)	LDCN	PASSON	FOSCAN	CALSEQ, IFCALL	FUNGEN/ EREXIT	
COMMON	COMMON (D)	COMAL	COMEQUIV				
Computed GOTO	GO (E)		CGOTO	CGOTO	COGOTO	CGOTO	
CONTINUE	CONT RETURN (E)		SKIP	SKIP			
DEFINE FILE	DEFINE (D)		PASSON	DEFNFL			
DIMENSION	DIM (D)						
DO	DO (E)		DO	DO	DO	DO1, ENDDO	
DOUBLE PRECISION	INTGER/ READ/DOUBLE (D)	DPALOC					
END	BKSP/REWIND/ END/ENDFIL (E)		END	MOPUP	PHEND	END	ENDCRD
ENDFILE	BKSP/REWIND/ END/ENDFIL (E)		BSPREF	DO2	ESDRLD	RDWRT	
EQUIVALENCE	EQUIV (D)	EQUIVP	COMEQUIV				
EXTERNAL	EXTERN (D)	LDCN					
FIND	READ/WRITE/ FIND (E)		READ	DO2		RDWRT	
FORMAT	FORMAT (D,E)		FORMAT				
FUNCTION	FUNCT/SUBRUT (D)	LDCN	SUBFUN	FHDR		SUBRUT	
GO	GO (E)		ENDOCK	GOTO		TRGEN	
IF	IF (E)		ENDOCK	FOSCAN	IFCALL	ARITHI	

(Continued)

Table 30. Statement/Expression Processing (Continued)

Statement/ Expression	Phase 10D/10E	Phase 12	Phase 14	Phase 15	Phase 20	Phase 25	Phase 30
In-line Functions	ARITH (E)	LDCN	PASSON	FOSCAN	CKOD	FUNGEN/ EREXIT	
INTEGER	INTGER/ REAL/DOUBLE (D)	SALO					
PAUSE	STOP/PAUSE (E)		PAUSE	DO2		STOP/PAUSE	
READ	READ/WRITE (E)		READ	DO2	READ, LIST	RDWRT/ IOLIST	
REAL	INTGER/ REAL/DOUBLE (D)	SALO					
RETURN	CONT RETURN (E)		RETURN	SKIP		RETURN	
REWIND	BKSP/REWIND/ END/ENDFIL (E)		BSPREF	DO2	ESDRLD	RDWRT	
STOP	STOP/PAUSE (E)		STOP	DO2		STOP/PAUSE	
SUBROUTINE	FUNCT/SUBRUT (D)	LDCN	SUBFUN	DO2		SUBRUT	
WRITE	READ/WRITE (E)		READWR	DO2	LIST	RDWRT/ IOLIST	

APPENDIX L: OBJECT-TIME LIBRARY SUBPROGRAMS

This appendix describes the logic of some of the object-time library subprograms that may be referenced by the FORTRAN load module. Included at the end of this appendix are flowcharts that describe the logic of the subprograms. (E is the first character in the chart identification for each flowchart associated with a library subprogram.)

Each object module, compiled from a FORTRAN source module, must be first processed by the linkage editor prior to execution on the IBM System/360. The linkage editor must combine certain FORTRAN library subprograms with the object module to form an executable load module. The library subprograms exist as separate load modules on the FORTRAN system library (SYS1.FORTLIB). Each library subprogram that is externally referenced by the object module is included in the load module by the linkage editor. Among the library subprograms that may be so referenced are:

- IHCFCOME (Object-time I/O source statement processor) - entry name IBCOM#.
- IHCFIOSH (Object-time sequential access I/O data management interface) - entry name FIOCS#.
- IHCDIOSE (Object-time direct access I/O data management interface) - entry name DIOCS#.
- IHCIBERR (Object-time source statement error processor) - entry name IBERR#.

IHCFCOME receives I/O requests from the FORTRAN load module via compiler-generated calling sequences. IHCFCOME, in turn, submits these requests to the appropriate data management interface (IHCFIOSH or IHCDIOSE).

IHCFIOSH receives sequential access input/output requests from IHCFCOME and, in turn, submits those requests to the appropriate BSAM (basic sequential access method) routines for execution.

IHCDIOSE receives direct access input/output requests from IHCFCOME and, in turn, submits those requests to the appropriate BDAM (basic direct access method) routines for execution.

If the LOAD option is specified, and if source statement errors are detected during compilation, the compiler generates a call-

ing sequence to the IHCIBERR subprogram. IHCIBERR processes object-time errors resulting from improperly coded source statements.

IHCFCOME

IHCFCOME performs object-time implementation of the following FORTRAN source statements.

- READ and WRITE (for sequential I/O).
- READ, FIND, and WRITE (for direct access I/O).
- BACKSPACE, REWIND, and ENDFILE (sequential I/O device manipulation).
- STOP and PAUSE (write-to-operator).

In addition, IHCFCOME: (1) processes object-time errors detected by various FORTRAN library subprograms, (2) processes arithmetic-type program interruptions, and (3) terminates load module execution.

All linkages from the load module to IHCFCOME are compiler generated. Each time one of the above-mentioned source statements is encountered during compilation, the appropriate calling sequence to IHCFCOME is generated and is included as part of the object module. At object-time, these calling sequences are executed, and control is passed to IHCFCOME to perform the specified operation.

Note: IHCFCOME itself does not perform the actual reading from or writing onto data sets. It submits requests for such operations to the appropriate I/O data management interface (IHCFIOSH or IHCDIOSE). The I/O interface, in turn, interprets and submits the requests to the appropriate access method (BSAM or BDAM) routines for execution. Figure 89 illustrates the relationship between IHCFCOME and the I/O data management interfaces.

Charts E0, E1, and E2 illustrate the overall logic and the relationship among the routines of IHCFCOME. Table 36, the IHCFCOME routine directory, lists the routines used in IHCFCOME and their functions.

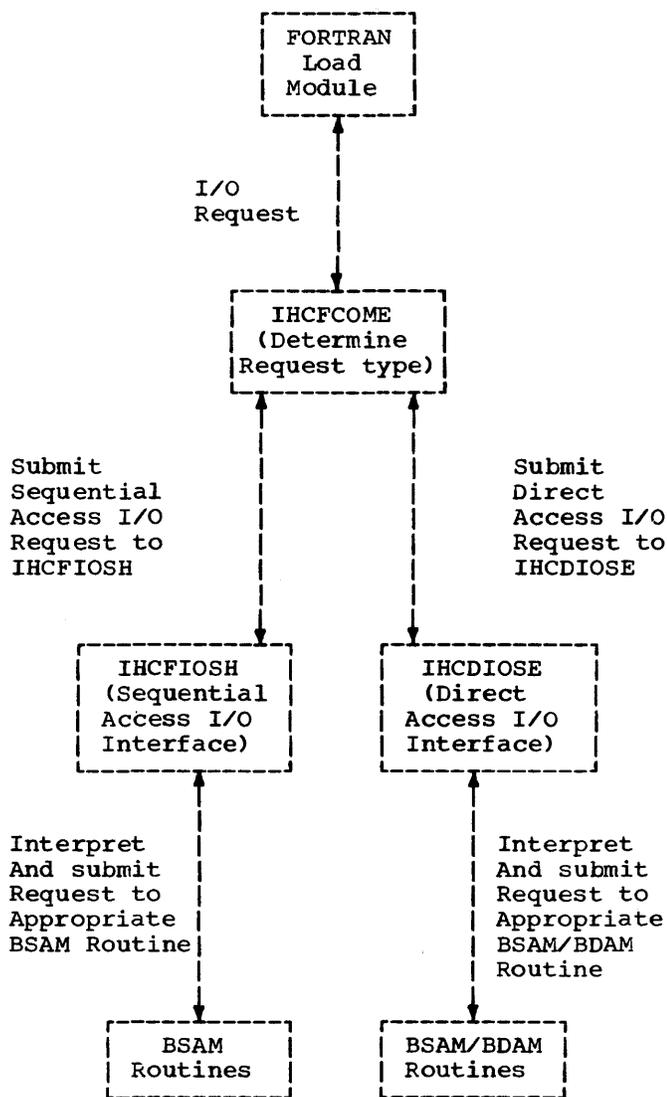


Figure 89. Relationship Between IHCFCOME and I/O Data Management Interfaces

OPERATION OF IHCFCOME ROUTINES

The routines of IHCFCOME are divided into the following categories:

- Read/write routines.
- I/O device manipulation routines.
- Write-to-operator routines.
- Utility routines.

The read/write routines implement both the sequential I/O statements (READ and WRITE) and the direct access I/O statements

(READ, FIND, and WRITE). (The direct access FIND statement is treated as a READ statement without format and list.)

The I/O device manipulation routines implement the BACKSPACE, REWIND, and END FILE source statements for sequential data sets. These statements are ignored for direct access data sets.

The write-to-operator routines implement the STOP and PAUSE source statements.

The utility routines: (1) process errors detected by FORTRAN library subprograms, (2) process arithmetic-type program interrupts, and (3) terminate load module execution.

Read/Write Routines

For the implementation of both sequential and direct access READ and WRITE statements, the read/write routines of IHCFCOME consist of the following three sections:

- An opening section, which initializes data sets for reading and writing.
- An I/O list section, which transfers data from an input buffer to the I/O list items or from the I/O list items to an output buffer.
- A closing section, which terminates the I/O operation.

Within the discussion of each section, a read/write operation is treated in one of two ways:

- As a read/write requiring a format.
- As a read/write not requiring a format.

Note: In the following discussion, the term "read operation" implies both the sequential access READ statement and the direct access READ and FIND statements. The term "write operation" implies both the sequential access WRITE statement and the direct access WRITE statement.

OPENING SECTION: The compiler generates a calling sequence to one of four entry points in the opening section of IHCFCOME each time it encounters a READ or WRITE statement in the FORTRAN source module. These entry points correspond to the operations of read or write, requiring or not requiring a format.

Read/Write Requiring a Format: If the operation is a read requiring a format, the opening section passes control to the appropriate I/O data management interface to initialize the unit number specified in the READ statement for reading. (The unit number is passed, as an argument, to the opening section via the calling sequence.) The I/O interface: (1) opens the data control block (via the OPEN macro-instruction) for the specified data set if it was not previously opened, and (2) reads a record (via the READ macro-instruction) containing data for the I/O list items into an I/O buffer that was obtained when the data control block was opened. The I/O interface then returns control to the opening section of IHCFCOME. The address of the buffer and the length of the record read are passed to IHCFCOME by the I/O interface. These values are saved for the I/O list section of IHCFCOME. The opening section then passes control to a portion of IHCFCOME that scans the FORMAT statement specified in the READ statement. (The address of the FORMAT statement is passed, as an argument, to the opening section via the calling sequence.) The first format code (either a control or conversion type) is then obtained.

For control type codes (e.g., an H format code or a group count), an I/O list item is not required. Control passes to the routine associated with the control code under consideration to perform the indicated operation. Control then returns to the scan portion, and the next format code is obtained. This process is repeated until either the end of the FORMAT statement or the first conversion code is encountered.

For conversion type codes (e.g., an I format code), an I/O list item is required. Upon the first encounter of a conversion code in the scan of the FORMAT statement, the opening section completes its processing of a read requiring a format and returns control to the next sequential instruction within the load module.

The action taken by IHCFCOME when the various format codes are encountered is illustrated in Table 31.

If the operation is a write requiring a format, the opening section passes control to the I/O interface to initialize the unit number specified in the WRITE statement for writing. (The unit number is passed, as an argument, to the opening section via the calling sequence.) The I/O interface opens the data control block (via the OPEN macro-instruction) for the specified data set if it was not previously opened. The

I/O interface then returns control to the opening section of IHCFCOME. The address of an I/O buffer that was obtained when the data control block was opened is saved for the I/O list section of IHCFCOME. Subsequent opening section processing, starting with the scan of the FORMAT statement, is the same as that described for a read requiring a format.

Read/Write Not Requiring a Format: If the operation is a read or write not requiring a format, the opening section processing except for the scan of the FORMAT statement is the same as that described for a read or write requiring a format. (For a read or write not requiring a format, there is no FORMAT statement.)

I/O LIST SECTION: The compiler generates a calling sequence to one of four entry points in the I/O list section of IHCFCOME each time it encounters an I/O list item associated with the READ or WRITE statement under consideration. These entry points correspond to a variable or an array list item for a read and write, requiring or not requiring a format. The I/O list section performs the actual transfer of data from: (1) an input buffer to the list items if a READ statement is being implemented, or (2) the list items to an output buffer if a WRITE statement is being implemented. In the case of a read or write requiring a format, the data must be converted before it is transferred.

Read/Write Requiring a Format: In processing a list item for a read requiring a format, the I/O list section passes control to the conversion routine associated with the conversion code for the list item. (The appropriate conversion routine is determined by the portion of IHCFCOME that scans the FORMAT statement associated with the READ statement. The selection of the conversion routine depends on the conversion code of the list item being processed.) The conversion routine obtains data from an input buffer and converts the data to the form dictated by the conversion code. The converted data is then moved into the main storage address assigned to the list item.

In general, after a conversion routine has processed a list item, the I/O list section determines if that routine can be applied to the next list item or array element (if an array is being processed). The I/O list section examines a field count that indicates the number of times a particular conversion code is to be applied to successive list items or successive elements of an array.

Table 31. IHCFCOME FORMAT Code Processing

FORMAT Code	Description	Type	Corresponding Action Upon Code by IHCFCOME
	beginning of statement	control	Save location for possible repetition of the format codes; clear counters.
n(	group count	control	Save n and location of left parenthesis for possible repetition of the format codes in the group.
n	field count	control	Save n for repetition of format code which follows.
nP	scaling factor	control	Save n for use by F, E, and D conversions.
Tn	column reset	control	Reset current position within record to nth column or byte.
nX	skip or blank	control	Skip n characters of an input record or insert n blanks in an output record.
'text' or nH	literal data	control	Move n characters from an input record to the FORMAT statement, or n characters from the FORMAT statement to an output record.
Fw.d Ew.d Dw.d Iw Aw	conversions	conversion	Exit to the load module to return control to subroutine FIOLF or FIOAF. Using information passed to the I/O list section, the address and length of the current list item are obtained and passed to the proper conversion routine together with the current position in the I/O buffer, the scale factor, and the values of w and d. Upon return from the conversion routine the current field count is tested. If it is greater than 1, another exit is made to the load module to obtain the address of the next list item.
)	group end	control	Test group count. If greater than 1, repeat format codes in group; otherwise continue to process FORMAT statement from current position.
/	record end	control	Input or output one record via I/O Interface and READ/WRITE macro-instruction.
	end of statement	control	If no I/O list items remain to be transmitted, return control to the load module to link to the closing section; if list items remain, input or output one record using I/O interface and READ/WRITE macro-instruction. Repeat format codes from last parenthesis.

If the conversion code is to be repeated and if the previous list item was a variable, the I/O list section returns control to the load module. The load module again branches to the I/O list section and passes, as an argument, the main storage address assigned to the next list item.

The conversion routine that processed the previous list item is then given control. This procedure is repeated until either the field count is exhausted or the input data for the READ statement is exhausted.

If the conversion code is to be repeated and if an array is being processed, the I/O list section computes the main storage address of the next element in the array. The conversion routine that processed the previous element is then given control. This procedure is repeated until either all the array elements associated with a specific conversion code are processed or the input data for the READ statement is exhausted.

If the conversion code is not to be repeated, control is passed to the scan portion of IHCFCOME to continue the scan of the FORMAT statement. If the scan portion determines that a group of conversion codes is to be repeated, the conversion routines corresponding to those codes are applied to the next portion of the input data. This procedure is repeated until either the group count is exhausted or the input data for the READ statement is exhausted.

If a group of conversion codes is not to be repeated and if the end of the FORMAT statement is not encountered, the next format code is obtained. For a control type code, control is passed to the associated control routine to perform the indicated operation. For a conversion type code, control is returned to the load module if the previous list item was a variable. The load module again branches to the I/O list section and passes, as an argument, the main storage address assigned to the next list item. Control is then passed to the conversion routine associated with the new conversion code. The conversion routine then processes the data for this list item. If the data that was just converted was placed into an element of an array and if the entire array has not been filled, the I/O list section computes the main storage address of the next element in the array and passes control to the conversion routine associated with the new conversion code. The conversion routine then

processes the data for this array element. Subsequent I/O list processing for a READ requiring a format proceeds at the point where the field count is examined.

If the scan portion encounters the end of the FORMAT statement and if all the list items are satisfied, control returns to the next sequential instruction within the load module. This instruction (part of the calling sequence to IHCFCOME) branches to the closing section. If all the list items are not satisfied, control is passed to the I/O interface to read (via the READ macro-instruction) the next input record. The conversion codes starting from the last left parenthesis are then repeated for the remaining list items.

If the operation is a write requiring a format, the I/O list section processing is similar to that for a read requiring a format. The main difference is that the conversion routines obtain data from the main storage addresses assigned to the list items rather than from an input buffer. The converted data is then transferred to an output buffer. If all the list items have not been converted and transferred prior to the encounter of the end-of-the FORMAT statement, control is passed to the I/O interface. The I/O interface writes (via the WRITE macro-instruction) the contents of the current output buffer onto the output data set. The conversion codes starting from the last left parenthesis are then repeated for the remaining list items.

Read/Write Not Requiring a Format: In processing a list item for a read not requiring a format, the I/O list section must know the main storage address assigned to the list item and the size of the list item. Their values are passed, as arguments, via the calling sequence to the I/O list section. The list item may be either a variable or an array. In either case, the number of bytes specified by the size of the list item is moved from the input buffer to the main storage address assigned to the list item. The I/O list section then returns control to the load module. The load module again branches to the I/O list section and passes, as arguments, the main storage address assigned to the next list item and the size of the list item. The I/O list section moves the number of bytes specified by the size of the list item into the main storage address assigned to this list item. This procedure is repeated either until all the list items are satisfied or until the input data is exhausted. Control is then returned to the load module.

If the operation is a write not requiring a format, the I/O list section processing is similar to that described for a read not requiring a format. The main difference is that the data is obtained from the main storage addresses assigned to the list items and is then moved to an output buffer.

CLOSING SECTION: The compiler generates a calling sequence to one of two entry points in the closing section of IHCFCOME each time it encounters the end of a READ or WRITE statement in the FORTRAN source module. The entry points correspond to the operations of read and write, requiring or not requiring a format.

Read/Write Requiring a Format: If the operation is a read requiring a format, the closing section simply returns control to the load module to continue load module execution. If the operation is a write requiring a format, the closing section branches to the I/O interface. The I/O interface writes (via the WRITE macro-instruction) the contents of the current I/O buffer (the final record) onto the output data set. The I/O interface then returns control to the closing section. The closing section, in turn, returns control to the load module to continue load module execution.

Read/Write Not Requiring a Format: If the operation is a read not requiring a format, the closing section branches to the I/O interface. The I/O interface reads (via the READ macro-instruction) successive records until the end of the logical record being read is encountered. (A FORTRAN logical record consists of all the records necessary to contain the I/O list items for a WRITE statement not requiring a format.) When the I/O interface recognizes the end-

of-logical-record indicator, control is returned to the closing section. The closing section, in turn, returns control to the load module to continue load module execution.

If the operation is a write not requiring a format, the closing section inserts: (1) the record count (i.e., the number of records in the logical record) into the control word of the I/O buffer to be written, and (2) an end-of-logical-record indicator into the last record of the I/O buffer being written. The closing section then branches to the I/O interface. The I/O interface writes (via the WRITE macro-instruction) the contents of this I/O buffer onto the output data set. The I/O interface then returns control to the closing section. The closing section, in turn, returns control to the load module to continue load module execution.

Examples of IHCFCOME READ/WRITE Statement Processing

The following examples illustrate the opening section, I/O list section, and closing section processing performed by IHCFCOME for sequential access READ and WRITE statements, requiring or not requiring a format.

Note: IHCFCOME processing for the direct access READ, FIND, and WRITE statements is essentially the same as that described for the sequential access READ and WRITE statements. The main difference is that for direct access statements, IHCFCOME branches to the direct access I/O interface (IHCADIOSE) instead of to the sequential access I/O interface (IHCFIOSH).

READ REQUIRING A FORMAT: The processing performed by IHCFCOME for the following READ statement and FORMAT statement is illustrated in Table 32.

```
READ (1,2) A,B,C
2 FORMAT (3F12.6)
```

WRITE REQUIRING A FORMAT: The processing performed by IHCFCOME for the following WRITE statement and FORMAT statement is illustrated in Table 33.

```
WRITE (3,2) (D(I),I=1,3)
2 FORMAT (3F12.6)
```

Table 32. IHCFCOME Processing for a READ Requiring a Format

Opening Section	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Receives control from load module and branches to IHCFIOSH to initialize data set for reading. 2. Passes control to scan portion of IHCFCOME. 3. Returns control to load module.
I/O List Section	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Receives control from load module, converts input data for A, and moves converted data to A. 2. Returns control to load module. 3. Receives control from load module, converts input data for B, and moves converted data to B. 4. Returns control to load module. 5. Receives control from load module, converts input data for C, and moves converted data to C. 6. Returns control to load module.
Closing Section	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Receives control from load module and closes out I/O operation. 2. Returns control to load module to continue load module execution.

Table 33. IHCFCOME Processing for a WRITE Requiring a Format

Opening Section	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Receives control from load module and branches to IHCFIOSH to initialize data set for writing. 2. Passes control to scan portion of IHCFCOME. 3. Returns control to load module.
I/O List Section	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Receives control from load module, converts D(1), and moves D(1) to output buffer. 2. Returns control to load module. 3. Receives control from load module, converts D(2), and moves D(2) to output buffer. 4. Returns control to load module. 5. Receives control from load module, converts D(3), and moves D(3) to output buffer. 6. Returns control to load module.
Closing Section	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Receives control from load module and branches to IHCFIOSH to write contents of output buffer. 2. Returns control to load module to continue load module execution.

READ NOT REQUIRING A FORMAT: The processing performed by IHCFCOME for the following READ statement is illustrated in Table 34.

READ (5) X,Y,Z

Table 34. IHCFCOME Processing for a READ Not Requiring a Format

Opening Section	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Receives control from load module and branches to IHCFIOSH to initialize data set for reading. 2. Returns control to load module.
I/O List Section	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Receives control from load module and moves input data to X. 2. Returns control to load module. 3. Receives control from load module and moves input data to Y. 4. Returns control to load module. 5. Receives control from load module and moves input data to Z. 6. Returns control to load module.
Closing Section	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Receives control from load module and branches to IHCFIOSH to read successive records until the end-of-logical-record indicator is encountered. 2. Returns control to load module to continue load module execution.

WRITE NOT REQUIRING A FORMAT: The processing performed by IHCFCOME for the following WRITE statement is illustrated in Table 35.

WRITE (6) (W(J),J=1,10)

Table 35. IHCFCOME Processing for a WRITE Not Requiring a Format

Opening Section	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Receives control from load module and branches to IHCFIOSH to initialize data for writing. 2. Returns control to load module.
I/O List Section	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Receives control from load module and moves W(1) to output buffer. 2. Returns control to load module. 3. Receives control from load module and moves W(2) to output buffer. 4. Returns control to load module. . . 5. Receives control from load module and moves W(10) to output buffer. 6. Returns control to load module.
Closing Section	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Receives control from load module and branches to IHCFIOSH to write contents of output buffer. 2. Returns control to load module to continue load module execution.

I/O Device Manipulation Routines

The I/O device manipulation routines of IHCFCOME implement the BACKSPACE, REWIND, and END FILE source statements. These routines receive control from within the load module via calling sequences that are generated by the compiler when these statements are encountered.

Note: The I/O device manipulation routines apply only to sequential access I/O devices (e.g., tape units). BACKSPACE, REWIND, and ENDFILE requests for direct access data sets are ignored.

The implementation of REWIND and END FILE statements is straightforward. The I/O device manipulation routines submit the appropriate control request to IHCFIOSH, the I/O interface module. After the request is executed, control is returned to the calling routine within the load module.

The BACKSPACE statement is processed in a similar fashion. However, before control is returned to the calling routine, it is determined whether the record backspaced over is an element of a data set that does not require a format. If the record is an element of such a data set, that record is read into an I/O buffer and the record count is obtained from its control word. Backspace control requests, equal in number to the record count, are then issued and control is returned to the calling routine. If the record is not an element of such a data set, control is returned directly to the calling routine.

Write-to-Operator Routines

The write-to-operator routines of IHCFCOME implement the STOP and PAUSE source statements. These routines receive control from within the load module via calling sequences generated by the compiler upon recognition of the STOP and PAUSE statements.

STOP: A write-to-operator (WTO) macro-instruction is issued to display the message associated with the STOP statement on the console. Load module execution is then terminated by passing control to the program termination routine of IHCFCOME.

PAUSE: A write-to-operator-with-reply (WTOR) macro-instruction is issued to display the message associated with the PAUSE statement on the console and to enable the operator's reply to be transmitted. A WAIT macro-instruction is then issued to determine when the operator's reply has been

transmitted. After the reply has been received, control is returned to the calling routine within the load module.

Utility Routines

The utility routines of IHCFCOME perform the following functions:

- Process object-time error messages.
- Process arithmetic-type program interruptions.
- Terminate load module execution.

PROCESSING OF ERROR MESSAGES: The error message processing routine (IBFERR) receives control from various FORTRAN library subprograms when they detect object-time errors.

Error message processing consists of initializing the data set upon which the message is to be written and also of writing the message. If the type of error requires load module termination, control is passed to the termination routine of IHCFCOME; if not, control is returned to the calling routine.

PROCESSING OF ARITHMETIC INTERRUPTIONS: The arithmetic-interrupt routine (IBFINT) of IHCFCOME initially receives control from within the load module via a compiler-generated calling sequence. The call is placed at the start of the executable coding of the load module so that the interrupt routine can set up the program interrupt mask. Subsequent entries into the interrupt routine are made through arithmetic-type interruptions.

The interrupt routine sets up the program interrupt mask by means of a SPIE macro-instruction. This instruction specifies the type of arithmetic interruptions that are to cause control to be passed to the interrupt routine, and the location within the routine to which control is to be passed if the specified interruptions occur. After the mask has been set, control is returned to the calling routine within the load module.

In processing an arithmetic interruption, the first step taken by the interrupt routine is to determine its type. If exponential overflow or underflow has occurred, the appropriate indicators, which are referenced by OVERFL (a library subprogram), are set. If any type of divide check caused the interruption, the indicator referenced by DVCHK (also a library subprogram) is set.

Regardless of the type of interruption that caused control to be given to the interrupt routine, the old program PSW is written out for diagnostic purposes.

After the interruption has been processed, control is returned to the interrupted routine at the point of interruption.

PROGRAM TERMINATION: The load module termination routine (IBEXIT) of IHCFCOME receives control from various library sub-programs (e.g., DUMP and EXIT) and from other IHCFCOME routines (e.g., the routine that processes the STOP statement).

This routine terminates execution of the load module by the following means:

- Calling the appropriate I/O interface(s) to check (via the CHECK macro-instruction) outstanding write requests.
- Issuing a SPIE macro-instruction with no parameters indicating that the FORTRAN object module no longer desires to give special treatment to program interruptions and does not want maskable interruptions to occur.
- Returning to the operating system supervisor.

IHCFIOSH

IHCFIOSH, the object-time FORTRAN sequential access input/output data management interface, receives I/O requests from IHCFCOME and submits them to the appropriate BSAM (basic sequential access method) routines and/or open and close routines for execution.

Chart E3 illustrates the overall logic and the relationship among the routines of IHCFIOSH. Table 37, the IHCFIOSH routine directory, lists the routines used in IHCFIOSH and their functions.

BLOCKS AND TABLE USED

IHCFIOSH uses the following blocks and table during its processing of sequential access input/output requests: (1) unit blocks, and (2) unit assignment table. The unit blocks are used to indicate I/O activity for each unit number (i.e., data set reference number) and to indicate the type of operation requested. In addition, the

unit blocks contain skeletons of the data event control blocks (DECB) and the data control blocks (DCB) that are required for I/O operations. The unit assignment table is used as an index to the unit blocks.

Unit Blocks

The first reference to each unit number (data set reference number) by an input/output operation within the FORTRAN load module causes IHCFIOSH to construct a unit block for each unit number. The main storage for the unit blocks is obtained by IHCFIOSH via the GETMAIN macro-instruction. The addresses of the unit blocks are placed in the unit assignment table as the unit blocks are constructed. All subsequent references to the unit numbers are then made through the unit assignment table. Figure 90 illustrates the format of a unit block for a unit that is defined as a sequential access data set.

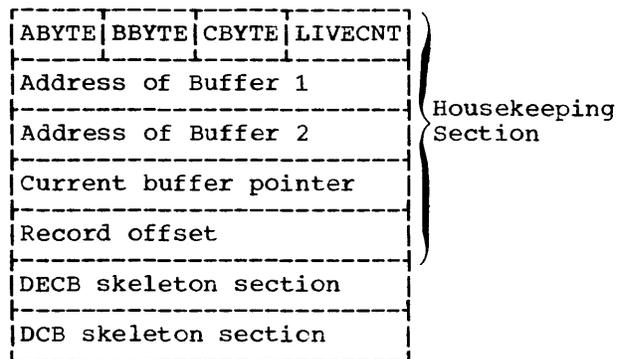


Figure 90. Format of a Unit Block for a Sequential Access Data Set

Each unit block is divided into three sections: a housekeeping section, a DECB skeleton section, and a DCB skeleton section.

HOUSEKEEPING SECTION: The housekeeping section is maintained by IHCFIOSH. The information contained in it is used to indicate data set type, to keep track of I/O buffer locations, and to keep track of addresses internal to the I/O buffers to enable the processing of blocked records. The fields of this section are:

- ABYTE. This field, containing the data set type passed to IHCFIOSH by IHCFCOME, can be set to one of the following:

F0 - Input data set requiring a format.
 FF - Output data set requiring a format.
 00 - Input data set not requiring a format.
 0F - Output data set not requiring a format.

- BBYTE. This field contains bits that are set and examined by IHCFIOSH during its processing. The bits and their meanings are as follows:

Bit on

0 - exit to IHCFCOME on I/O error
 1 - I/O error occurred
 2 - current buffer indicator
 3 - not used
 4 - end-of-current buffer indicator
 5 - blocked data set indicator
 6 - variable record format switch
 7 - not used

- CBYTE. This field also contains bits that are set and examined by IHCFIOSH. The bits and their meanings are as follows:

Bit on

0 - data control block opened
 1 - data control block not TCLOSED
 2 - data control block not previously opened
 3 - buffer pool attached
 4 - data set not previously rewound
 5 - data set not previously backspaced
 6 - concatenation occurring -- reissue READ
 7 - not used

- LIVECNT. This field indicates whether any I/O operation performed for this data set is unchecked. (A value of 1 indicates that a previous read or write has not been checked; a value of 0 indicates that all previous read and write operations for this data set have been checked.)

- Address of Buffer 1 and Address of Buffer 2. These fields contain pointers to the two I/O buffers obtained during the opening of the data control block for this data set.

- Current Buffer Pointer. This field contains a pointer to the I/O buffer currently being used.

- Record Offset. This field contains a pointer to the current logical record within the current buffer.

DECB SKELETON SECTION: The DECB (data event control block) skeleton section is a block of main storage within the unit

block. It is of the same form as the DECB constructed by the control program for an L form of an S-type READ or WRITE macro-instruction (refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: Control Program Services). The various fields of the DECB skeleton are filled in by IHCFIOSH; the completed block is referred to when IHCFIOSH issues a read/write request to BSAM. The read/write field is filled in at open time. For each I/O operation, IHCFIOSH supplies IHCFCOME with: (1) an indication of the type of operation (read or write), and (2) the length of and a pointer to the I/O buffer to be used for the operation.

DCB SKELETON SECTION: The DCB (data control block) skeleton section is a block of main storage within the unit block. It is of the same form as the DCB constructed by the control program for a DCB macro-instruction under BSAM (refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: Control Program Services). The various fields of the DCB skeleton are filled in by the control program when the DCB for the data set is opened (refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: Concepts and Facilities). (Standard default values may also be inserted in the DCB skeleton by IHCFIOSH. Refer to "Unit Assignment Table" for a discussion of when default values are inserted into the DCB skeleton.)

Unit Assignment Table

The unit assignment table (IHCUTABL) resides on the FORTRAN system library (SYS1.FORTLIB). Its size depends on the maximum number of units that can be referred to during execution of any FORTRAN load module. This number (≤ 99) is specified by the user during the system generation process via the FORTLIB macro-instruction.

The unit assignment table is designed to be used by both IHCFIOSH and IHCDSIOE. It is included once, by the linkage editor, in the FORTRAN load module as a result of an external reference to it within IHCFIOSH and/or IHCDSIOE.

The unit assignment table contains a 16 byte entry for each of the unit numbers that can be referred to by the user. These entries differ in format depending on whether the unit has been defined as a sequential access or a direct access data set.

Figure 91 illustrates the format of the unit assignment table.

Unit number (DSRN) being used for current operation	¹ n x 16	4 bytes
Unit number (DSRN) of error output device	not used	4 bytes
UBLOCK01 field		4 bytes
DSRN01 default values		8 bytes
LIST01 field		4 bytes
.	.	.
.	.	.
.	.	.
UBLOCKn field ²		4 bytes
DSRNN default values ³		8 bytes
LISTn field ⁴		4 bytes
¹ n is the maximum number of units that can be referred to by the FORTRAN load module. The size of the unit table is equal to (8 + n x 16) bytes.		
² The UBLOCKn field contains either a pointer to the unit block constructed for unit number n if the unit is being used at object-time, or a value of 1 if the unit is not being used.		
³ The default values for the various unit numbers are specified by the user and are assembled into the unit assignment table entries during the system generation process. The default values are used only by IHCFIOSH; they are ignored by IHCADIOSE.		
⁴ If the unit is defined as a direct access data set, the LISTn field contains a pointer to the parameter list that defines the direct access data set. Otherwise, this field contains a value of 1.		

Figure 91. Unit Assignment Table Format

Because IHCFIOSH deals only with sequential access data sets, the remainder of the discussion on the unit assignment table is devoted to unit assignment table entries for sequential access data sets. If IHCFIOSH encounters a reference to a direct access data set, it is considered as an error, and control is passed to the load module termination routine of IHCFCOME.

The pointers to the unit blocks created for sequential data sets are inserted into the unit assignment table entries by IHCFIOSH when the unit blocks are constructed.

Note: Default values are standard values that IHCFIOSH inserts into the appropriate fields (e.g., BUFNO) of the DCB skeleton section of the unit blocks if the user either:

- Causes the load module to be executed via a cataloged procedure, or
- Fails, in stating his own procedure for execution, to include in the DCB parameter of his DD statements those subparameters (e.g., BUFNO) he is permitted to include (refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: FORTRAN IV (E) Programmer's Guide).

Control is returned to IHCFIOSH during data control block opening so that it can determine if the user has included the subparameters in the DCB parameter of his DD statements. IHCFIOSH examines the DCB skeleton fields corresponding to user-permitted subparameters, and upon encountering a null field (indicating that the user has not specified the subparameter), inserts the standard value (i.e., the default value) for the subparameter into the DCB skeleton. (If the user has included these subparameters in his DD statement, the control program routine performing data control block opening inserts the subparameter values, before giving control to IHCFIOSH, into the DCB skeleton fields reserved for those values.)

BUFFERING

All input/output operations are double buffered. (The double buffering scheme can be overridden by the user if he specifies in a DD statement: BUFNO=1.) This implies that during data control block opening, two buffers will be obtained. The addresses of these buffers are given alternately to IHCFCOME as pointers to:

- Buffers to be filled (in the case of output).
- Information that has been read in and is to be processed (in the case of input).

COMMUNICATION WITH THE CONTROL PROGRAM

In requesting services of the control program, IHCFIOSH uses L and E forms of S-type macro-instructions (refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: Control Program Services).

OPERATION

The processing of IHCFIOSH is divided into five sections: initialization, read, write, device manipulation, and closing. When called by IHCFCOME, a section of IHCFIOSH performs its function and then returns control to IHCFCOME.

Initialization

The initialization action taken by IHCFIOSH depends upon the nature of the previous I/O operation requested for the data set. The previous operation possibilities are:

- No previous operation.
- Previous operation read or write.
- Previous operation backspace.
- Previous operation write end-of-data set.
- Previous operation rewind.

NO PREVIOUS OPERATION: If no previous operation has been performed on the unit specified in the I/O request, the initialization section generates a unit block for the unit number. The data set to be created is then opened (if the current operation is not rewind or backspace) via the OPEN macro-instruction. The addresses of the I/O buffers, which are obtained during the opening process and placed into the DCB skeleton, are placed into the appropriate fields of the housekeeping section of the unit block. The DECB skeleton is then set to reflect the nature of the operation (read or write), the format of the records to be read or written, and the address of the I/O buffer to be used in the operation.

If the requested operation is a write, a pointer to the buffer position, at which IHCFCOME is to place the record to be written, and the block size or logical record length (to accommodate blocked logical records) are placed into registers, and control is returned to IHCFCOME.

If the requested operation is a read, a record is read, via a READ macro-instruction, into the I/O buffer, and the operation is checked for completion via the CHECK macro-instruction. A pointer to the location of the record within the buffer, along with the number of bytes read or the logical record length, are placed into registers, and control is returned to IHCFCOME.

Note: During the opening process, control is returned to the IHCDXB routine in IHCFIOSH. This routine determines if the data set being opened is a 1403 printer. If it is, the RECFM field in the DCB for the data set is altered to machine carriage control (FM). The value 144 is inserted into both the block size and record length fields in the DCB. In addition, a pointer to the unit block generated for the printer, and the physical address of the printer are placed into a control block area (CTLBLK) for the printer within IHCFIOSH. CTLBLK also contains a third print buffer. This buffer is used in conjunction with the two buffers already obtained for the printer.

Figure 92 illustrates the format of CTLBLK.

CTLBLK	a(BUF 3)	4 bytes
	a(unit block)	4 bytes
	a(printer) | record length	4 bytes
	1 FT00	4 bytes
	1 F001	4 bytes
	BUF3	third print buffer | 144 bytes
1Used in the task input/output table (TIOT) search.		

Figure 92. CTLBLK Format

PREVIOUS OPERATION READ OR WRITE: If the previous operation performed on the unit specified in the present I/O request was either a read or write, the initialization section determines the nature of the present I/O request. If it is a write, a pointer to the buffer position, at which IHCFCOME is to place the record to be written, and the block size or logical record length are placed into registers, and control is returned to IHCFCOME.

If the operation to be performed is a read, a pointer to the buffer location of the record to be processed, along with the number of bytes read or logical record length, are placed into registers, and control is returned to IHCFCOME.

PREVIOUS OPERATION BACKSPACE: If the previous operation performed on the unit specified in the present I/O request was a backspace, the initialization section determines the type of the present operation (read or write) and modifies the DECB skeleton, if necessary, to reflect the operation type. (If the operation type is

the same as that of the operation that preceded the backspace request, the DECB skeleton need not be modified.) Subsequent processing steps are the same as those described for "No Previous Operation," starting at the point after the DECB skeleton is set to reflect operation type.

PREVIOUS OPERATION WRITE END-OF-DATA SET:

If the previous operation performed on the unit specified in the present I/O request was a write end-of-data set, a new data set using the same unit number is to be created. In this case, the initialization section closes the data set. Then, in order to establish a correspondence between the new data set and the DD statement describing that data set, IHCFIOSH increments the unit sequence number of the ddname. (The ddname is placed into the appropriate field of the DCB skeleton prior to the opening of the initial data set associated with the unit number.) During the opening of the data set, the ddname will be used to merge with the appropriate DD statement. The data set is then opened. Subsequent processing steps are the same as those described for "No Previous Operation," starting at the point after the data set is opened.

PREVIOUS OPERATION REWIND: If the previous operation performed on the unit specified in the present I/O request was a rewind, the ddname is initialized (set to FTxxF001) in order to establish a correspondence between the initial data set associated with the unit number and the DD statement describing that data set. The data set is then opened. Subsequent processing steps are the same as those described for "No Previous Operation," starting at the point after the data set is opened.

Read

The read section of IHCFIOSH performs two functions: (1) reads physical records into the buffers obtained during data set opening, and (2) makes the contents of these buffers available to IHCFCOME for processing.

If the records being processed are blocked, the read section does not read a physical record each time it is given control. IHCFIOSH only reads a physical record when all of the logical records of the blocked record under consideration have been processed by IHCFCOME. However, if the records being processed are either unblocked or of U-format, the read section of IHCFIOSH issues a READ macro-instruction each time it receives control.

The reading of records by this section is overlapped. That is, while the contents of one buffer are being processed, a physical record is being read into the other buffer. When the contents of one buffer have been processed, the read into the other buffer is checked for completion. Upon completion of the read operation, processing of that buffer's contents is initiated. In addition, a read into the second buffer is initiated.

Each time the read section is given control it makes the next record available to IHCFCOME for processing. (In the case of blocked records, the record presented to IHCFCOME is logical.) The read section of IHCFIOSH places: (1) a pointer to the record's location in the current I/O buffer, and (2) the number of bytes read or logical record length into registers, and then returns control to IHCFCOME.

Write

The write section of IHCFIOSH performs two functions: (1) writes physical records, and (2) provides IHCFCOME with buffer space in which to place the records to be written.

If the records being written are blocked, the write section does not write a physical record each time it is given control. IHCFIOSH only writes a physical record when all of the logical records that comprise the blocked record under consideration have been placed into the I/O buffer by IHCFCOME. However, if the records being written are either unblocked or of U-format, the write section of IHCFIOSH issues a WRITE macro-instruction each time it receives control.

The writing of records by this section is overlapped. That is, while IHCFCOME is filling one buffer, the contents of the other buffer are being written. When an entire buffer has been filled, the write from the other buffer is checked for completion. Upon completion of the write operation, IHCFCOME starts placing records into that buffer. In addition, a write from the second buffer is initiated.

Each time the write section is given control, it provides IHCFCOME with buffer space in which to place the record to be written. IHCFIOSH places: (1) a pointer to the location within the current buffer at which IHCFCOME is to place the record, and (2) the block size or logical record length into registers, and then returns control to IHCFCOME.

Note: The write section checks to see if the data set being written on is a 1403 printer. If it is, the carriage control character is changed to machine code, and three buffers, instead of the normal two, are used when writing on the printer.

ERROR PROCESSING: If an end-of-data set or an I/O error is encountered during reading or writing, the control program returns control to the location within IHCFIOSH that was specified during data set initialization. In the case of an I/O error, IHCFIOSH sets a switch to indicate that the error has occurred. Control is then returned to the control program. The control program completes its processing and returns control to IHCFIOSH, which interrogates the switch, finds it to be set, and passes control to the I/O error routine of IHCFCOME.

In the case of an end-of-data set, IHCFIOSH simply passes control to the end-of-data set routine of IHCFCOME.

Chart E4 illustrates the execution-time I/O recovery procedure for any I/O errors detected by the I/O supervisor.

Device Manipulation

The device manipulation section of IHCFIOSH processes backspace, rewind, and write end-of-data set requests.

BACKSPACE: IHCFIOSH processes the backspace request by issuing a BSP (physical backspace) macro-instruction. It then places the data set type, which indicates the format requirement, into a register and returns control to IHCFCOME. (IHCFCOME needs the data set type to determine its subsequent processing.)

REWIND: IHCFIOSH processes the rewind request by issuing a CLOSE macro-instruction, using the REREAD option. This option has the same effect as a rewind. Control is then returned to IHCFCOME.

WRITE END-OF-DATA SET: IHCFIOSH processes this request by issuing a CLOSE macro-instruction, type = T. It then frees the I/O buffers by issuing a FREEPOOL macro-instruction, and returns control to IHCFCOME.

Closing

The closing section of IHCFIOSH examines the entries in the unit assignment table to determine which data control blocks are

open. In addition, this section ensures that all write operations for a data set are completed before the data control block for that data set is closed. This is done by issuing a CHECK macro-instruction for all double-buffered output data sets. Control is then returned to IHCFCOME.

Note: If a 1403 printer is being used, a write from the last print buffer is issued to insure that the last line of output is written.

IHCADIOSE

IHCADIOSE, the object-time FORTRAN direct access input/output data management interface, receives I/O requests from IHCFCOME and submits them to the appropriate BDAM (basic direct access method) routines and/or open and close routines for execution. (For the first I/O request involving a nonexistent data set, the appropriate BSAM routines must be executed prior to linking to the BDAM routines. The BSAM routines format and create a new data set consisting of blank records.)

IHCADIOSE receives control from: (1) the initialization section of the FORTRAN load module if a DEFINE FILE statement is included in the source module, and (2) IHCFCOME whenever a READ, WRITE, or FIND direct access statement is encountered in the load module.

Charts E5 and E6 illustrate the overall logic and the relationship among the routines of IHCADIOSE. Table 38, the IHCADIOSE routine directory, lists the routines used in IHCADIOSE and their functions.

BLOCKS AND TABLE USED

IHCADIOSE uses the following blocks and table during its processing of direct access input/output requests: (1) unit blocks, and (2) unit assignment table. The unit blocks are used to indicate I/O activity for each unit number (i.e., data set reference number) and to indicate the type of operation requested. In addition, each unit block contains skeletons of the data event control blocks (DECB) and the data control block (DCB) that are required for I/O operations. The unit assignment table is used as an index to the unit blocks.

Unit Blocks

The first reference to each unit number (i.e., data set reference number) by a direct access input/output operation within the FORTRAN load module causes IHCDIOSE to construct a unit block for each of the referenced unit numbers. The main storage for the unit blocks is obtained by IHCDIOSE via the GETMAIN macro-instruction. The addresses of the unit blocks are inserted into the corresponding unit assignment table entries as the unit blocks are constructed. Subsequent references to the unit numbers are then made through the unit assignment table.

Figure 93 illustrates the format of a unit block for a unit that has been defined as a direct access data set.

IOTYPE	STATUSU	not used	not used	4 bytes
RECNUM				4 bytes
STATUSA	CURBUF			4 bytes
BLKREFA				4 bytes
STATUSB	NXTBUF			4 bytes
BLKREFB				4 bytes
DECBA				28 bytes
DECBB				28 bytes
DCB				104 bytes

Figure 93. Format of a Unit Block for a Direct Access Data Set

The meanings of the various unit block fields are outlined below.

IOTYPE: This field, containing the data set type passed to IHCDIOSE by IHCFCOME, can be set to one of the following:

- FO - input data set requiring a format
- FF - output data set requiring a format
- 00 - input data set not requiring a format
- 0F - output data set not requiring a format

STATUSU: This field specifies the status of the associated unit number. The bits and their meanings are as follows:

Bit on

- 0 - not used
- 1 - error occurred
- 2 - two buffers are being used
- 3 - data control block for data set is open
- 4-5 10 - U form specified in DEFINE FILE statement
- 01 - E form specified in DEFINE FILE statement
- 11 - L form specified in DEFINE FILE statement
- 6-7 not used

Note: IHCDIOSE references only bits 1, 2, and 3.

RECNUM: This field contains the number of records in the data set as specified in the parameter list for the data set in a DEFINE FILE statement. It is filled in by the file initialization section after the data control block for the data set is opened.

STATUSA: This field specifies the status of the buffer currently being used. The bits and their meanings are as follows:

Bit on

- 0 - READ macro-instruction has been issued
- 1 - WRITE macro-instruction has been issued
- 2 - CHECK macro-instruction has been issued
- 3-7 Not used

CURBUF: This field contains the address of the DECBA skeleton currently being used. It is initialized to contain the address of the DECBA skeleton by the file initialization section of IHCDIOSE after the data control block for the data set is opened.

BLKREFA: This field contains an integer that indicates either the relative position within the data set of the record to be read, or the relative position within the data set at which the record is to be written. It is filled in by either the read or write section of IHCDIOSE prior to any reading or writing. In addition, the address of this field is inserted into the DECBA skeleton by the file initialization section of IHCDIOSE after the data control block for the data set is opened.

STATUSB: This field specifies the status of the next buffer to be used if two buffers are obtained for this data set during data control block opening. The bits and their meanings are the same as described for the STATUSA field. However, if only one buffer is obtained during data control block opening, this field is not used.

NXTBUF: This field contains the address of the DECB skeleton to be used next if two buffers are obtained during data control block opening. It is initialized to contain the address of the DECEB skeleton by the file initialization section of IHCDIOSE after the data control block for the data set is opened. However, if only one buffer is obtained during data control block opening, this field is not used.

BLKREFB: The contents of this field are the same as described for the BLKREFA field. It is filled in either by the read or the write section of IHCDIOSE prior to any reading or writing. In addition, the address of this field is inserted into the DECB skeleton by the file initialization section of IHCDIOSE after the data control block for the data set is opened. However, if only one buffer is obtained during data control block opening, this field is not used.

DECBA SKELETON: This field contains the DECB (data event control block) skeleton to be used when reading into or writing from the current buffer. It is of the same form as the DECB constructed by the control program for an L form of an S-type READ or WRITE macro-instruction under BDAM (refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: Control Program Services).

The various fields of the DECBA skeleton are filled in by the file initialization section of IHCDIOSE after the data control block for the data set is opened. The completed DECB is referred to when IHCDIOSE issues a read or a write request to BDAM. For each I/O operation, IHCFOME supplies IHCFOME with the address of and the size of the buffer to be used for the operation.

DECBB SKELETON: The DECBB skeleton is used when reading into or writing from the next buffer. Its contents are the same as described for the DECBA skeleton. The DECBB skeleton is completed in the same manner as described for the DECBA skeleton. However, if only one buffer is obtained during data control block opening, this field is not used.

DCB SKELETON: This field contains the DCB (data control block) skeleton for the associated data set. It is of the same form as the DCB constructed by the control program for a DCB macro-instruction under BDAM (refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: Control Program Services).

The various fields of the DCB skeleton are filled in by the control program when the DCB for the data set is opened (refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: Concepts and Facilities).

Unit Assignment Table

The unit assignment table (IHCUATBL) resides on the FORTRAN system library (SYS1.FORTLIB). Its size depends on the maximum number of units that can be referred to during execution of any FORTRAN load module. This number (≤ 99) is specified by the user during the system generation process via the FORTLIB macro-instruction.

The unit assignment table is designed to be used by both IHCFIOSE and IHCDIOSE. It is included once, by the linkage editor, in the FORTRAN load module as a result of an external reference to it within IHCFIOSE and/or IHCDIOSE.

The unit assignment table contains a 16-byte entry for each of the unit numbers that can be referred to by either IHCDIOSE or IHCFIOSE. These entries differ in format depending on whether the unit has been defined as a direct access or as a sequential access data set. Because IHCDIOSE deals only with direct access data sets, only the entry for a direct access unit is shown here. (Refer to the IHCFIOSE section "Table and Blocks Used", for the format of the unit assignment table as a whole.) If IHCDIOSE encounters a reference to a sequential access data set, it is considered as an error, and control is passed to the load module termination routine of IHCFOME.

Figure 94 illustrates the unit assignment table entry format for a direct access data set.

Pointer to unit block xx (UBLOCKxx)	4 bytes
Default values for DSRNxx (only applies to sequential access data sets -- not used by IHCDIOSE)	8 bytes
Pointer to parameter listxx (LISTxx)	4 bytes
UBLOCKxx is the unit block generated for unit number xx.	
DSRNxx is the unit number for the direct access data set (xx \leq 99).	
LISTxx is the parameter list that defines the direct access data set associated with unit number xx.	

Figure 94. Unit Assignment Table Entry for a Direct Access Data Set

The pointers to the unit blocks are inserted into the unit assignment table entries by IHCDIOSE when the unit blocks are constructed.

The pointers to the parameter lists are inserted into the unit assignment table entries by IHCDIOSE when IHCDIOSE receives control from the initialization section of the FORTRAN load module being executed.

BUFFERING

All direct access input/output operations are double-buffered. (The double buffering scheme may be overridden by the user if he specifies in his DD statements: BUFNO=1.) This implies that during data control block opening, two buffers will be obtained for each data set. The addresses of these buffers are given alternately to IHCFCOME as pointers to:

- Buffers to be filled in the case of output.
- Data that has been read in and is to be processed in the case of input.

Each buffer has its own DECB. This increases I/O efficiency by overlapping of I/O operations.

COMMUNICATION WITH THE CONTROL PROGRAM

In requesting services of the control program BSAM and BDAM routines, IHCDIOSE uses L and E forms of S-type macro-instructions (refer to the publication IBM System/360 Operating System: Control Program Services).

OPERATION

The processing of IHCDIOSE is divided into five sections: file definition, file initialization, read, write, and termination. When a section receives control, it performs its functions and then returns control to the caller (either the FORTRAN load module or IHCFCOME).

File Definition Section

The file definition section is entered from the FORTRAN load module, via a

compiler-generated calling sequence, if a DEFINE FILE statement is included in the FORTRAN source module. The file definition section performs the following functions:

- Checks for the redefinition of each direct access unit number.
- Enters the address of each direct access unit number's parameter list into the appropriate unit assignment table entry.
- Establishes addressability for IHCDIOSE within IHCFCOME.

Each direct access unit number appearing in a DEFINE FILE statement is checked to see if it has been defined previously. If it has been defined previously, the current definition is ignored. If it has not been defined previously, the address of its parameter list (i.e., the definition of the unit number) is inserted into the proper entry in the unit assignment table. The next unit number if any is then obtained.

When the last unit number has been processed in the above manner, the file definition section stores the address of IHCDIOSE into the FDIOCS field within IHCFCOME. This enables IHCFCOME to link to IHCDIOSE when IHCFCOME encounters a direct access I/O statement. Control is then returned to the FORTRAN load module to continue normal processing.

File Initialization Section

The file initialization section receives control from IHCFCOME whenever input or output is requested for a direct access data set. The processing performed by the initialization section depends on whether an I/O operation was previously requested for the data set.

NO PREVIOUS OPERATION: If no operation was previously requested for the data set specified in the current I/O request, the file initialization section first constructs a unit block for the data set. (The GETMAIN macro-instruction is used to obtain the main storage for the unit block.) The address of the unit block is inserted into the appropriate entry in the unit assignment table.

The file initialization section then reads the JFCB (job file control block) via the RDJFCB macro-instruction. The value in the BUFNO field of the JFCB is inserted into the DCB skeleton in the unit block. This value indicates the number of buffers that are obtained for this data set when

its data control block is opened. If the BUFNO field is null (i.e., if the user did not include the BUFNO subparameter in the DD statement for this data set), or other than 1 or 2, the file initialization section inserts a value of two into the DCB skeleton.

The file initialization section next examines the JFCBIND2 field in the JFCB to determine if the data set specified in the current I/O request exists. If the JFCBIND2 field indicates that the specified data set does not exist, and if the current request is a write, a new data set is created. (If the current request is a read, an error is indicated and control is returned to IHCFCOME to terminate load module execution. If the current request is a find, the request is ignored, and control is returned to IHCFCOME.) If the JFCBIND2 field indicates that the specified data set already exists, a new data set is not created. The file initialization section processing for a data set to be created, and for a data set that already exists is discussed in the following paragraphs.

Data Set to be Created: The data control block for the new data set is first opened for the BSAM, load mode, WRITE macro-instruction. The BSAM WRITE macro-instruction is used to create a new data set according to the format specified in the parameter list for the data set in a DEFINE FILE statement. The data control block is then closed. Subsequent file initialization section processing after creating the new data set is the same as that described for a data set that already exists (refer to the section "Data Set Already Exists").

Data Set Already Exists: The data control block for the data set is opened for direct access processing by the BDAM routines. After the data control block is opened, the file initialization section fills in various fields in the unit block:

- The number of records in the data set is inserted into the RECNUM field.
- The address of the DECB skeletons (DECBA and DECBB) are inserted into the CURBUF and the NXTBUF fields, respectively.
- The addresses of the I/O buffers obtained during data control block opening are inserted into the appropriate DECB skeletons.
- The address of the BLKREFA and the BLKREFB fields in the unit block are inserted into the appropriate DECB skeletons.

Note: If the user specifies BUFNO=1 in the DD statement for this data set, only one I/O buffer is obtained during data control block opening. In this case, the NXTBUF field, the BLKREFB field, and the DECBB skeleton are not used.

Subsequent file initialization section processing for the case of no previous operation depends upon the nature of the I/O request (find, read, or write). This processing is the same as that described for the case of a previous operation (refer to the section "Previous Operation").

PREVIOUS OPERATION: If an operation was previously requested for the data set specified in the current I/O request, the file initialization section processing depends upon the nature of the current I/O request.

If the current request is either a find or a read, control is passed to the read section.

If the current request is a write, control is passed to the secondary entry in the write section.

Read Section

The read section of IHCDIOSE processes read and find requests. The read section may be entered either from the file initialization section of IHCDIOSE, or from IHCFCOME. In either case, the processing performed is the same. In processing read and find requests, the read section performs the following functions:

- Reads physical records into the buffer(s) obtained during data control block opening.
- Makes the contents of these buffers available to IHCFCOME for processing.
- Updates the associated variable that is defined in the DEFINE FILE statement for the data set.

The read section, upon receiving control, first checks to see if the record to be found or read is already in an I/O buffer. Subsequent read section processing depends upon whether the record is in the buffer.

RECORD IN BUFFER: If a record is in the buffer, the read section determines whether the current request is a find or a read.

If the current request is a find, the associated variable for the data set is updated so that it points to the relative

position within the direct access data set of the record that is in the buffer. Control is then returned to IHCFCOME.

If the current request is a read, the read operation that read the record into the buffer is checked for completion. The read section then places the address of the buffer and the size of the buffer into registers for use by IHCFCOME. The associated variable for the data set is updated so that it points to the relative position within the direct access data set of the record following the record just read. Control is then returned to IHCFCOME.

RECORD NOT IN BUFFER: If a record is not in the buffer, the read section first obtains the address of the buffer to be used for the current request. The relative record number of the record to be read is then inserted into the appropriate BLKREF field in the unit block (i.e., BLKREFA or BLKREFB). The proper record is then read from the specified data set into the buffer. Subsequent read section processing for the case of a record not in the buffer is the same as that described for a record in the buffer (refer to the section "Record In Buffer").

Note 1: Record retrieval can proceed concurrently with CPU processing only if the user alternates FIND statements with READ statements in his program.

Note 2: If an I/O error occurs during reading, the control program returns control to the synchronous exit routine (SYNADR) within IHCDIOSE. The SYNADR routine sets a switch to indicate that an I/O error has occurred, and then returns control to the control program. The control program completes its processing and returns control to IHCDIOSE. IHCDIOSE interrogates the switch, finds it to be set, and passes control to the I/O error routine of IHCFCOME.

Write Section

The write section of IHCDIOSE processes write requests. The write section may be entered either from the file initialization section of IHCDIOSE, or from IHCFCOME. The processing performed by the write section depends upon where it is entered from.

PROCESSING IF ENTERED FROM FILE INITIALIZATION SECTION: If the write section is entered from the file initialization section of IHCDIOSE, no writing is performed. The write section only provides IHCFCOME with buffer space in which to place the record to be written. The relative record

number of the record to be written is inserted into the appropriate BLKREF field (i.e., BLKREFA or BLKREFB). (The record is written the next time the write section is entered.) For a formatted write, the buffer is filled with blanks. For a nonformatted write, the buffer is filled with zeros. The write section then places the address of the buffer and the size of the buffer into registers for use by IHCFCOME. Control is then returned to IHCFCOME.

PROCESSING IF ENTERED FROM IHCFCOME: Each time the write section is entered from IHCFCOME, it writes the contents of the buffer onto the specified data set. Subsequent write section processing for entrances from IHCFCOME is the same as that described for entrances from the file initialization section of IHCDIOSE (refer to "Processing If Entered From File Initialization Section"). In addition, the associated variable is modified prior to returning to IHCFCOME. The associated variable for the data set is updated so that it points to the relative position within the direct access data set of the record following the record just written.

Note 1: The writing of physical records by this section is overlapped. That is, while IHCFCOME is filling buffer A, buffer B is being written onto the output data set. When buffer A has been filled, the write from buffer B is checked for completion. Upon completion of the write operation, IHCFCOME starts placing data into buffer B. In addition, a write from buffer A is initiated.

Note 2: If an I/O error occurs during writing, the control program returns control to the synchronous exit routine (SYNADR) within IHCDIOSE. The SYNADR routine sets a switch to indicate that an I/O error has occurred, and then returns control to the control program. The control program completes its processing and returns control to IHCDIOSE. IHCDIOSE interrogates the switch, finds it to be set, and passes control to the I/O error routine of IHCFCOME.

Termination Section

The termination section of IHCDIOSE receives control from the load module termination routine of IHCFCOME. The function of this section is to terminate any pending I/O operations involving direct access data sets. The unit blocks associated with the direct access data sets are examined by IHCDIOSE to determine if any I/O is pending. CHECK macro-instructions are issued for all pending I/O operations to insure their completion.

The data control blocks for the direct access data sets are closed, and the main storage occupied by the unit blocks is freed via the FREEMAIN macro-instruction. Control is then returned to the load module termination routine of IHCFCOME to complete the termination process.

IHCIBERR

IHCIBERR, a member of the FORTRAN system library (SYS1.FORTLIB), processes object-time source statement errors if the LOAD option is specified. IHCIBERR is entered (via a compiler-generated calling sequence) when an internal sequence number (ISN) cannot be executed because of a source statement error.

The ISN of the invalid source statement is obtained (from information in the calling sequence) and is then converted to decimal form. IHCIBERR then links to IHCFCOME to implement the writing of the following error message:

```
IHC230I - SOURCE ERROR AT ISN
          XXXX - EXECUTION FAILED
```

After the error message is written on the user-designated error output data set, IHCIBERR passes control to the IBEXIT routine of IHCFCOME to terminate execution.

Chart E7 illustrates the overall logic of IHCIBERR.

Chart E0. IHCFCOME Overall Logic and Utility Routines

NOTE -- IHCFCOME IS ENTERED VIA CALLING SEQUENCES GENERATED AT COMPILE TIME.

```

*****A3*****
*   FORTRAN   *
*   LOAD MODULE *
*   (SEE NOTE) *
*****
    
```

SEE TABLE 36 FOR A BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FUNCTION OF EACH IHCFCOME ROUTINE/SUBROUTINE.

```

*****B3*****
*   DETERMINE *
*   REQUEST TYPE *
*****
    
```

REQUEST TYPE	CHART ID.	MAJOR PROCESSING ROUTINES	SUBROUTINES CALLED
SEQUENTIAL ACCESS AND DIRECT ACCESS READ REQUIRING A FORMAT	E1A2	FRDWF, FIOAF, FIOAF, FENDF	FCVII, FCVEI, FCVDI, FCVFI, FCVAI
SEQUENTIAL ACCESS AND DIRECT ACCESS WRITE REQUIRING A FORMAT	E1A2	FWRWF, FIOAF, FIOAF, FENDF	FCVID, FCVEO, FCVDO, FCVFO, FCVAO
SEQUENTIAL ACCESS AND DIRECT ACCESS READ NOT REQUIRING A FORMAT	E1F2	FRDNF, FIOAN, FIOAN, FENDN	NONE
SEQUENTIAL ACCESS AND DIRECT ACCESS WRITE NOT REQUIRING A FORMAT	E1F2	FWRNF, FIOAN, FIOAN, FENDN	NONE
DIRECT ACCESS FIND	E1F2	FRDNF, FENDN	NONE
DEVICE MANIPULATION	E2B3	FBKSP, FRWND, FEOFM	NONE
WRITE TO OPERATOR	E2G3	FSTOP, FPAUS	NONE

UTILITY ROUTINES

IBEXIT

```

*****G1*****
*   FSTOP,   *
*   IHCIBERR, OR *
*   IBFERR   *
*****
    
```

```

*****H1*****
*   IBEXIT   *
*   ----- *
*   CLOSE ALL DCBS *
*   AND TERMINATE *
*   EXECUTION   *
*****
    
```

```

*****J1*****
*   JOB     *
*   SCHEDULER *
*****
    
```

IBFERR

```

*****G2*****
*   FORTRAN   *
*   LIB.     *
*   SUBPRS.  *
*****
    
```

```

*****H2*****
*   IBFERR   *
*   ----- *
*   PROCESS  *
*   OBJECT-TIME *
*   ERRORS   *
*****
    
```

```

*****J2*****
*   IBEXIT   *
*****
    
```

IBFINT

```

*****G4*****
*   FORTRAN   *
*   LOAD     *
*   MODULE   *
*****
    
```

```

*****H4*****
*   IBFINT   *
*   ----- *
*   PROCESS  *
*   ARITHMETIC *
*   INTERRUPTIONS *
*****
    
```

```

*****J4*****
*   FORTRAN   *
*   LOAD     *
*   MODULE   *
*****
    
```

Chart E1. Implementation of READ/WRITE/FIND Source Statements

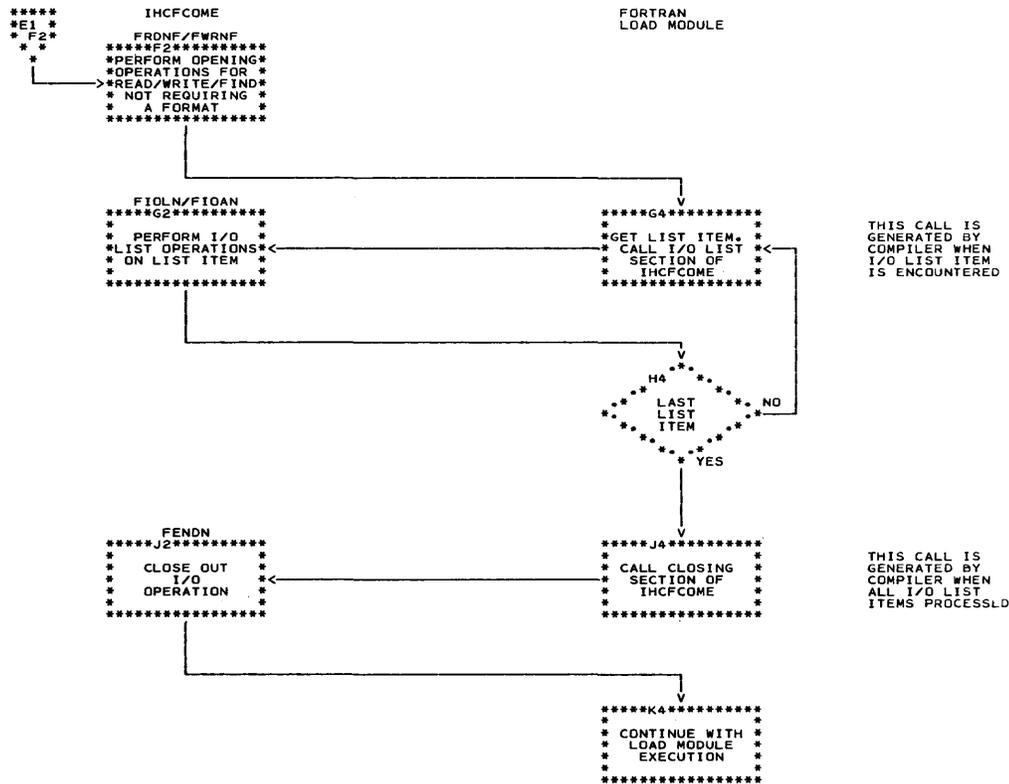
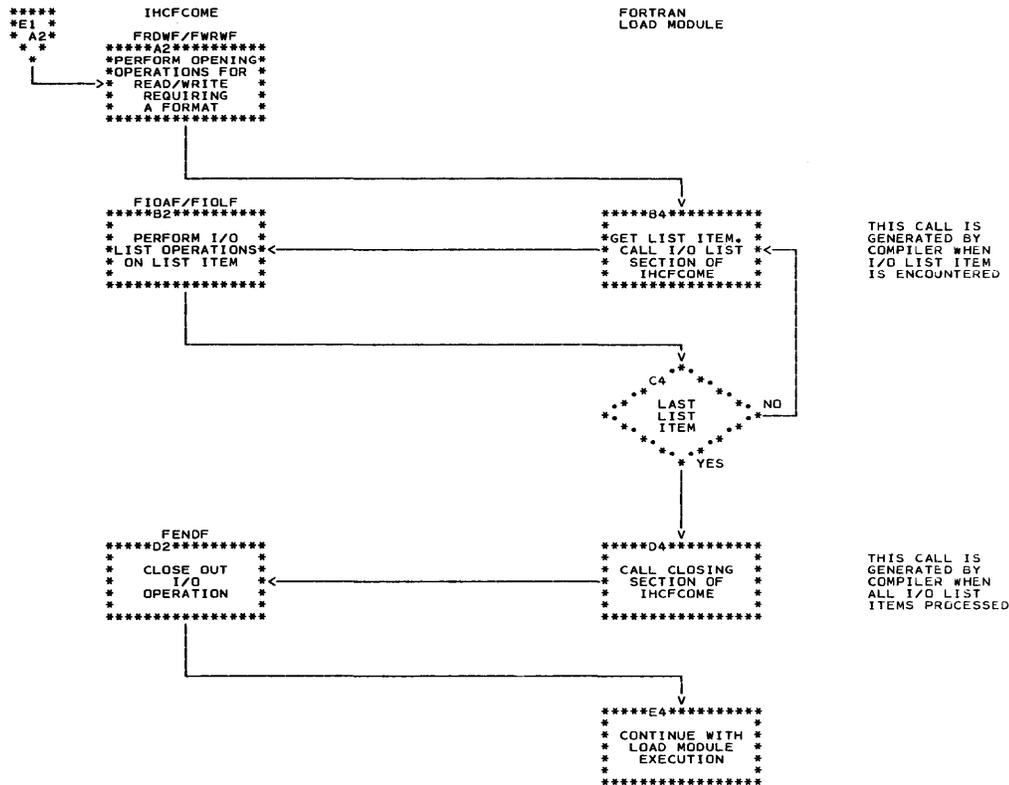


Table 36. IHCFCOME Routine/Subroutine Directory

Routine/Subroutine	Function
FBKSP	Implements the BACKSPACE source statement.
FCVAI	Reads alphameric data.
FCVAO	Writes alphameric data.
FCVDI	Reads double-precision data with an external exponent.
FCVDO	Writes double-precision data with an external exponent.
FCVEI	Reads real data with an external exponent.
FCVEO	Writes real data with an external exponent.
FCVFI	Reads real data without an external exponent.
FCVFO	Writes real data without an external exponent.
FCVII	Reads integer data.
FCVIO	Writes integer data.
FENDF	Closing section for a READ or WRITE requiring a format.
FENDN	Closing section for a READ or WRITE not requiring a format.
FEOFM	Implements the ENDFILE source statement.
FIOAF	I/O list section for list array of a READ or WRITE requiring a format.
FIOAN	I/O list section for list array of a READ or WRITE not requiring a format.
FIOLF	I/O list section for list variable of a READ or WRITE requiring a format.
FIOLN	I/O list section for list variable of a READ or WRITE not requiring a format.
FPAUS	Implements the PAUSE source statement.
FRDNF	Opening section of a READ not requiring a format.
FRDWF	Opening section of a READ requiring a format.
FRWND	Implements the REWIND source statement.
FSTOP	Implements the STOP source statement.
FWRNF	Opening section for a WRITE not requiring a format.
FWRWF	Opening section for a WRITE requiring a format.
IBEXIT	Closes the data control blocks for all FORTRAN data sets that are still open and terminates the execution.
IBFERR	Processes object-time errors.
IBFINT	Processes arithmetic-type program interruptions.

Chart E3. IHCFIOSH Overall Logic

SEE TABLE 37 FOR A BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FUNCTION OF EACH IHCFIOSH ROUTINE.

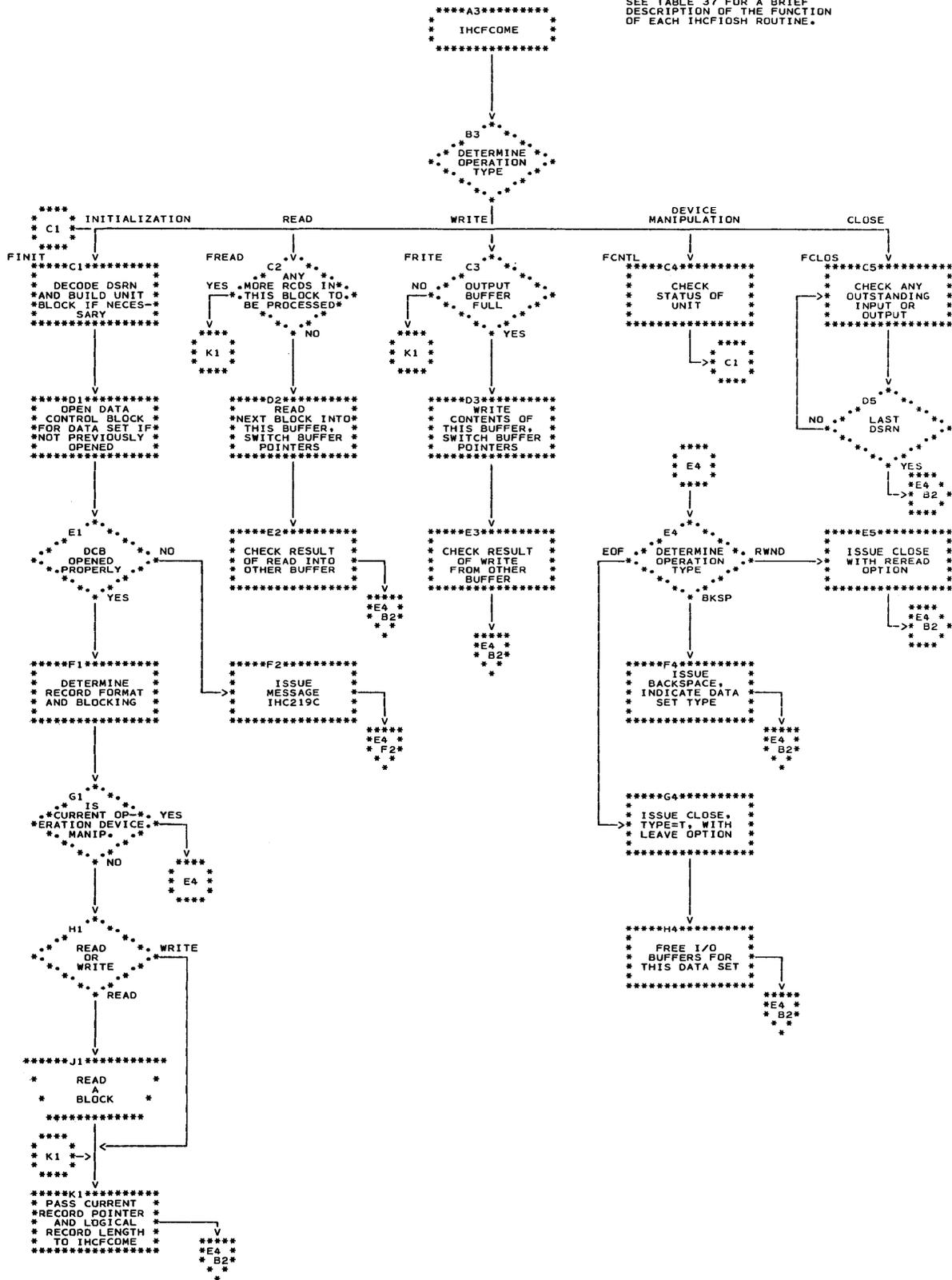


Chart E4. Execution-Time I/O Recovery Procedure

THE I/O SUPERVISOR IS ENTERED
VIA DATA MANAGEMENT ROUTINE
WHEN IHCFIO5H OR IHCDIO5E
ISSUES A MACRO-INSTRUCTION.

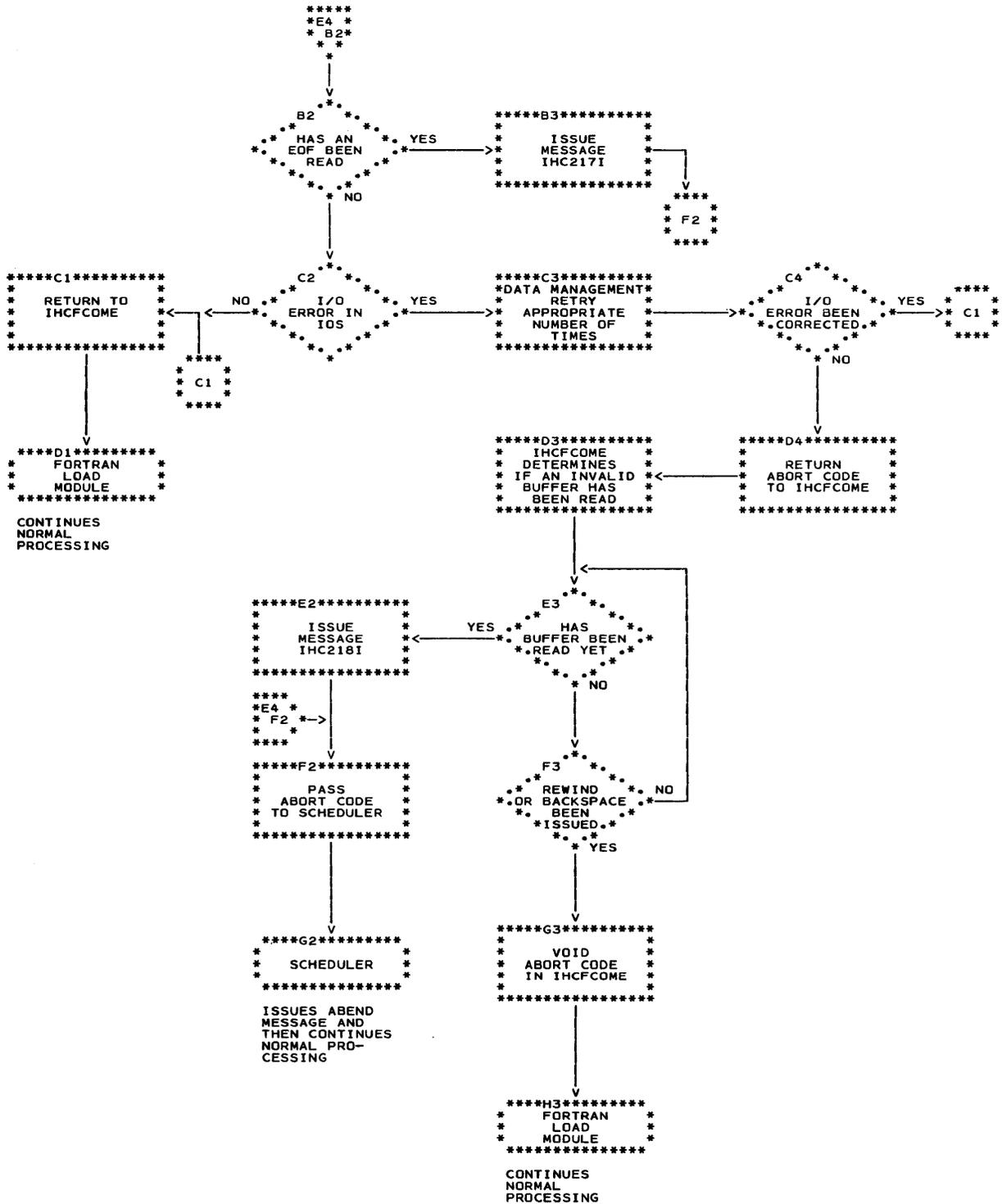


Chart E5. IHCDIOSE Overall Logic - File Definition Section

NOTE--

THE FILE DEFINITION SECTION IS ENTERED FROM THE FORTRAN LOAD MODULE VIA A COMPILER-GENERATED CALLING SEQUENCE.

SEE TABLE 38 FOR A BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FUNCTION OF EACH IHCDIOSE ROUTINE.

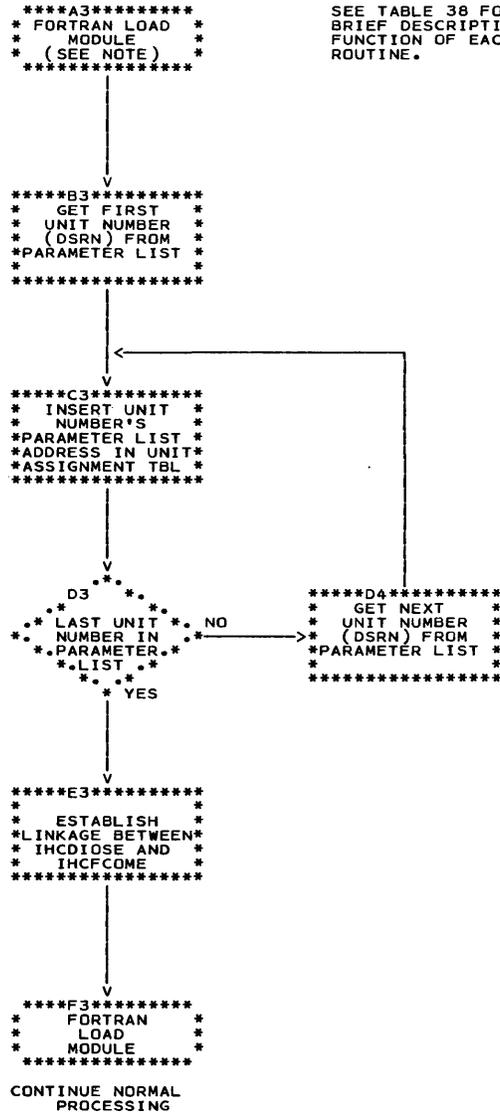


Chart E6. IHCDIOSE Overall Logic - File Initialization, Read, Write and Termination Sections

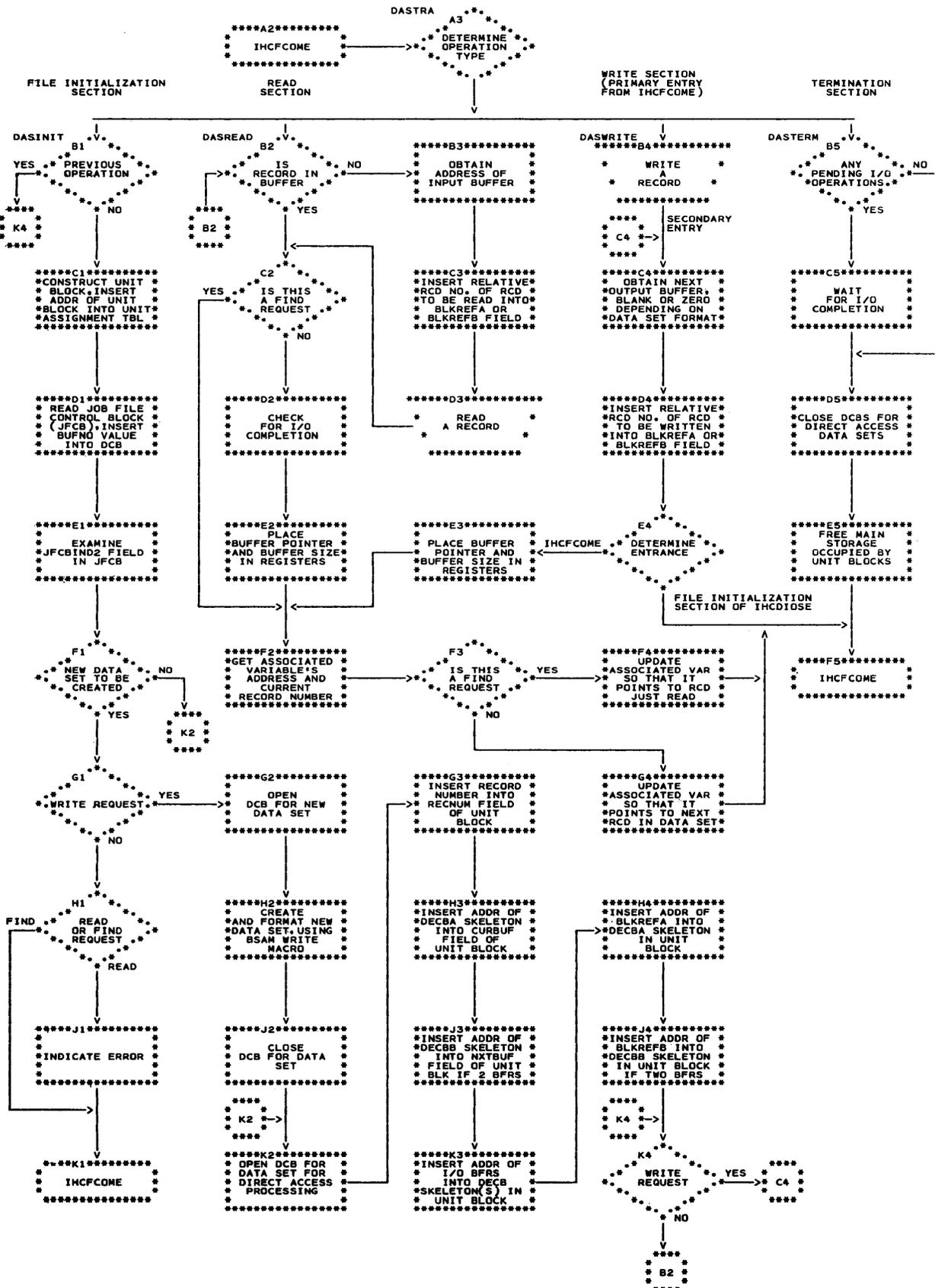


Table 37. IHCFIOSH Routine Directory

Routine	Function
FCLOS	CHECKS double-buffered output data sets.
FCNTL	Services device manipulation requests.
FINIT	Initializes unit and data set.
FREAD	Services read requests.
FRITE	Services write requests.

Table 38. IHCDIOSE Routine Directory

Routine	Function
DASDEF	Processes DEFINE FILE statements: enters address of parameter lists into unit assignment table, checks for redefinition of direct access unit numbers, and establishes addressability for IHCDIOSE within IHCFCOME.
DASINIT	Constructs unit blocks for nonopened direct access data sets, creates and formats new direct access data sets, and opens data control blocks for direct access data sets.
DASREAD	Reads physical records, passes buffer pointers and buffer size to IHCFCOME, and updates the associated variable.
DASTERM	Checks pending I/O operations, closes direct access data sets, and frees main storage occupied by unit blocks.
DASTRA	Determines operation type and transfers control to appropriate routine.
DASWRITE	Writes physical records, provides IHCFCOME with buffer space, and updates the associated variable.

Chart E7. IHCIBERR Overall Logic

IHCIBERR IS
 ENTERED VIA
 CALLING SE-
 QUENCES GEN-
 ERATED BY
 PHASE 20 AT
 COMPILE-TIME.

```

*****A3*****
*   FORTRAN   *
*   LOAD     *
*   MODULE   *
*****
  
```



```

*****B3*****
*   *
*OBTAIN INTERNAL*
*SEQUENCE NUMBER*
*   (ISN)   *
*   *
*****
  
```



```

*****C3*****
*   *
*   CONVERT ISN *
*   TO DECIMAL *
*   FORMAT     *
*   *
*****
  
```



```

*****D3*****
*   BRANCH TO *
*   IHCFCOME TO *
*   HANDLE THE *
*   WRITING OF *
*   ERROR MESSAGE *
*****
  
```



```

*****E3*****
*   IBEXIT RTN *
*   OF         *
*   IHCFCOME   *
*****
  
```


a(xxxx): Indicates the address of the symbol within parentheses.

adjective code field: A field of an intermediate text entry that contains either an adjective code assigned by the compiler or an actual machine operation code.

allocation table: Used in Phase 5 to determine the amount of main storage to be allocated to the dictionary and the overflow table, and the internal text buffers.

argument list: A list containing the addresses of arguments constructed when an adjective code indicating a call to a subprogram or statement function is detected.

argument list table: Used at object-time to provide the starting address of the argument list for each subprogram or statement function called.

base value table: Used at object-time to obtain base register values.

BLDL table: Provides information necessary for transferring control from one phase to the next for PRFRM compilations.

blocking table: Provides information necessary to deblock compiler input and to block compiler output for PRFRM compilations.

bound variable: An integer variable in a subscript expression that is redefined.

branch list table for SFs and DOs: Used at object-time either by the instructions generated to reference SF expansions or by the instructions generated to control the iteration of DO loops.

branch list table for referenced statement numbers: Used at object-time by the instructions generated to branch to executable statements.

CDL: A portion of the array displacement for subscripted variables.

COMMON text: An internal format used to transmit the information in a COMMON source statement to Phase 12.

communication area: A central gathering area used to communicate information between the various phases of the compiler.

declarative statement: Any one of the following statements: COMMON, DEFINE FILE,

DIMENSION, EQUIVALENCE, INTEGER, REAL, DOUBLE PRECISION, EXTERNAL, FORMAT, and SUBROUTINE or FUNCTION.

dictionary: A resident table of the compiler used to store information about symbols used in the source statements. For PRFRM compilations, the dictionary resides in main storage throughout the compilation; for SPACE compilations, the dictionary resides in main storage only through Phase 14.

dictionary index: Consists of pointers to the first entries in the various chains that constitute the dictionary.

end-of-statement indicator: An adjective code that signals the end of a particular statement to a processing phase.

epilog table: Used during Phase 25 when generating the instructions that return the value of variables used as parameters to the calling program.

EQUIVALENCE table: Used by the routines that assign addresses for EQUIVALENCE entries.

EQUIVALENCE text: An internal format used to transmit the information in an EQUIVALENCE source statement to Phase 12. that may force the end of compilation.

ESD card image: A card image containing an external symbol that is defined or referred to in the source module.

executable statement: A statement that causes the compiler to generate machine instructions.

flush: A compile-time I/O request that forces the current output buffer being used for a blocked output data set to be written.

forcing value: A value that indicates an operator's relative position in the hierarchy of operators.

forcing value table: Used during Phase 15 processing to aid in the reordering of intermediate text entries for arithmetic expressions.

hierarchy of operators: Defines the order in which operations must be performed in an arithmetic expression.

interface module: The communications link between the compiler and the operating system.

index mapping table: Used during Phase 20 processing of subscript expressions to maintain a record of all information pertinent to the subscript expression.

interlude: A compiler component that closes and then reopens the various data sets used by the compiler for SPACE compilations. (Interludes do not perform source statement processing.)

intermediate text: An internal representation of the source statements that may eventually be converted to machine-language instructions.

internal statement number: A number assigned to each FORTRAN statement by the compiler.

internal text buffer chain: A series of buffers that are chained together by means of pointers. Constructed for the SYSUT1 and SYSUT2 data sets if the PRFRM option is specified.

list item: A variable used in a READ or WRITE statement.

load module: The output of the linkage editor; a program in a format suitable for loading into main storage for execution.

location counter: A counter used to assign addresses.

message address table: Used during Phase 30 to aid in the generation of error and warning messages.

message length table: Used during Phase 30 to aid in the generation of error and warning messages.

message text table: Used during Phase 30 to aid in the generation of error and warning messages.

mode/type field: A field used in the dictionary and intermediate text denoting the mode (real, integer, or double precision) and type (variable, array, function or constant) of a symbol.

object module: The output of a single execution of an assembler or compiler, which constitutes input to the linkage editor.

offset: A calculated indexing factor used to find the correct element in an array for a particular subscript expression.

operations table: A temporary storage area used during Phase 15 processing in the

reordering of intermediate text entries for arithmetic expressions.

overflow table: A resident table that contains all dimension, subscript, and statement number information within the source module being compiled.

overflow table index: Consists of pointers to the first entries in the various chains that constitute the overflow table.

p(xxxx): Indicates a pointer to the information (within the parentheses) as represented in the dictionary or the overflow table.

patch table: Used to contain patch records if the patch facility has been enabled and if patch records precede the FORTRAN source module to be compiled.

performance module: Processes compiler I/O requests and end-of-phase requests for PRFRM compilations. The performance module also contains the blocking table, the BLDL table, and the reset table.

phase: Performs compiler initialization or actual source statement processing.

pointer field: The last two bytes of an intermediate text word. It normally contains a relative pointer to a dictionary or overflow table entry.

reset table: Used by the performance module to determine which, if any, of the record counts for the SYSUT1 and SYSUT2 data sets must be reset.

resident table: A table that remains in main storage throughout an entire compilation or throughout a part of a compilation. (The dictionary is resident only up to the end of Phase 14 for SPACE compilations.)

RLD card image: Contains information about an address constant used in the object module.

routine displacement tables: Aid in the location of reserved word processing routines in Phases 10D and 10E.

SEGMAL: A resident table that contains the beginning and ending address of each segment of main storage assigned to the dictionary and overflow table by Phase 5.

SF number: Assigned to each SF definition encountered by Phase 14.

source module: A series of statements in the symbolic language of an assembler or compiler, which constitutes the entire input to a single execution of an assembler or compiler.

subscript table: Temporary storage area used for subscript text encountered during the reordering of intermediate text words by Phase 15.

subscript optimization: The process of replacing the computation of a subscript expression at each recurrence with a reference to its initial computation (that is, to the register assigned to contain the result of its initial computation).

SYSIN data set: The source module, which is used as input to the compiler.

SYSLIN data set: The object module in card image form (if the LOAD option is specified).

SYSUT1 data set: Used as a work data set by the compiler to contain intermediate text.

SYSUT2 data set: Used as a work data set by the compiler to contain intermediate text, and the output of Phase 8 if the ADJUST option is specified.

SYSPRINT data set: Contains list of patch records if any, compiler informative messages, the source module listing if the SOURCE option is in effect, the storage map

if the MAP option is in effect, the object module listing if the object listing option is in effect, and error and warning messages if any.

SYSPUNCH data set: The object module in card image form (if the DECK option was specified).

SYS1.FORTLIB: A partitioned data set that contains FORTRAN subprograms (including IHCFCOME, IHCFIOSH, IHCDIOSE, and IHCIBERR in the form of load modules.

SYS1.LINKLIB: A partitioned data set that contains executable load modules, which can be reached via the XCTL, ATTACH, LINK, and LOAD macro-instructions. The FORTRAN IV (E) compiler resides on the SYS1.LINKLIB.

TXT card image: A card image containing either an instruction of the object module or data used in the object module.

unit assignment table: Used by IHCFIOSH and IHCDIOSE during processing of execution-time I/O requests.

unit blocks: Used by IHCFIOSH and IHCDIOSE during processing of execution time I/O requests.

INDEX

- ABS in-line function
 - compile-time processing of 44
- Address assignment 36-37
- Adjective code
 - definition of 105
 - forcing values 42,43,141
 - replacement of 42-43,118
- Adjective code field
 - in intermediate text 105
- ADJUST option
 - compiler processing for 31-32
- Adjusting source statements 31-32
- Allocation of storage
 - for argument list table 48
 - for branch list tables 38-39,46
 - for compiler 25-26,89-90
- Allocation table 138
- AOP adjective code
 - in intermediate text 122
- Argument list count 44,48
- Argument list table
 - format of 145
 - generation of 48
 - use of 145
- Argument list table entry
 - generation of RLD and TXT card images for 48
- Argument lists
 - creation of 44
- Arithmetic expressions
 - generation of instructions for 49
 - processing of 42-44,149
 - reordering of 42-44,119-120
- Arithmetic scan
 - of source statements 102-103
- Arithmetic-type interruptions
 - object-time processing of 159
- Array displacement
 - computation of 123-125
 - definition of 123
- Array element 123-125
- Array I/O list items
 - object-time processing of 153-156
- Arrays
 - compile-time processing of 36-37,123-125
 - maximum sizes of 125
- Assignment
 - of registers 44,118-119
 - of relative addresses 36-37
 - of storage to the compiler 25-26,89-90
- ATTACH macro-instruction
 - specifying substitute DDNAMES for compiler data sets via 22
- BACKSPACE statement
 - compile-time processing of 41,149
 - object-time implementation of 159,165
- Base value table
 - format of 145
 - generation of 50
- generation of RLD and TXT card images
 - for 51
 - object-time use of 50,145
- Base-displacement address
 - definition of 37
- Basic direct access method
 - object-time use of 151,152
- Basic sequential access method
 - compile-time use of 9
 - object-time use of 151,152
- BDAM
 - (see basic direct access method)
- BLDL macro-instruction
 - compile-time use of 29,136
- BLDL table
 - construction of 29,136
 - format of 137
 - in performance module 23
 - use of 136
- Block/deblock I/O buffers 26
- Blocking table
 - construction of 29,136
 - format of 136
 - in performance module 23
 - use of 136
- Bound variable
 - definition of 47
 - subscript optimization processing for 47
- Branch list table for referenced statement numbers
 - allocation of storage for 38-39
 - format of 144
 - generation of 38-39
 - object-time use of 144
- Branch list table for statement function expansions and DO statements
 - allocation of storage for 46
 - format of 144
 - generation of 50
 - object-time use of 144
- BSAM
 - (see basic sequential access method)
- BSP macro-instruction
 - object-time use of 165
- Buffers
 - chained text 26-28
 - for blocked I/O 26
 - in interface module 22
 - object-time use of 162-165,168-170
- Build table
 - (see BLDL table)
- CALL statement
 - compile-time processing of 42,149
- Card image generation 17,39-40,45,48,51
- Card images
 - END 17,51
 - ESD 17,39,45
 - RLD 17,39,45,48,51
 - TXT 17,39-40,45,48,51

CDL
 calculation of 125
 definition of 125
 generation of literals for 47
 Chain field
 in dictionary 129
 in overflow table 132-133
 Chaining
 in dictionary 126-128
 in overflow table 131-133
 text buffers 26-28
 CHECK macro-instruction
 compile-time use of 56
 object-time use of 160,163,165,170
 Classification scan
 of source statements 101-102
 CLOSE macro-instruction
 compile-time use of 24,98-100
 object-time use of 165,171
 CLOSE macro-instruction, type=T
 compile-time use of 21,23,56,58
 Comments card image
 scanning of 101
 COMMON intermediate text
 creation of 34
 deletion of 41
 format of 109
 COMMON statement
 compile-time processing of
 33-34,36-38,149
 generation of intermediate text for
 nonsyntactical errors encountered in
 38
 Communication area
 definition of 92
 format of 92-94
 in interface module 20-21
 initialization of 30-31
 Compilation
 data sets used for 10-11
 Compilation input
 deblocking of 23
 Compilation output
 blocking of 23
 Compiler
 components of 9,18-19
 control flow in 11-12,15
 data sets used by 10-11
 input to 10
 input/output requests of 9,21,95,97
 main storage allocation to 25,26,89-91
 organization of 9
 output from 11,16-17
 overall operation 11-14
 relation to operating system 9
 system macro-instructions used by 9
 tables used by 126-143
 Compile-time I/O errors
 processing of 20,56
 Computation
 array displacement 123-125
 subscript 45-47
 Computed GO TO statement
 compile-time processing of
 41,45,50,117,149
 Constants
 assignment of relative addresses to
 36-37
 dictionary chains for 126-127
 Construction of resident tables
 BLDL table 29,136
 blocking table 29,136
 dictionary 30,34,36,126
 overflow table 30,34,36,131
 patch table 29,135
 SEGMAL 29,134
 Continuation card image
 scanning of 101
 CONTINUE statement
 compile-time processing of 149
 Control codes
 (see format codes)
 Control flow
 for PRFRM compilations 11-12,15
 for SPACE compilations 11,15
 Control operations routine
 definition of 21
 in interface module 21,56
 Conversion codes
 (see format codes)
 Conversion routines
 in IHCFCOME 153,155
 Counter, location
 relative address assignment use of 37

 DABS in-line function
 compile-time processing of 44
 Data control block skeleton section
 in unit blocks 160-161,166-167
 Data control blocks
 compile-time manipulation of
 23-24,96,98-100
 object-time use of
 161,163,165,167,169,171
 Data definition (DD) statement 9,98,162
 Data event control block
 compile-time use of 21
 object-time use of 161,167
 Data event control block skeleton section
 in unit blocks 160-161,166-170
 Data flow
 compiler overall 16-17
 Phase 8 31
 Phase 10D 33
 Phase 10E 35
 Phase 12 37
 Phase 14 40
 Phase 15 42
 Phase 20 46
 Phase 25 49
 Phase 30 51
 Data set reference numbers
 compile-time processing of
 34,36,39-40,115,126
 object-time creation of unit blocks for
 160,166
 Data sets
 for compiler input 10-11
 for compiler output 10-11
 manipulation of data control blocks for
 98-100
 object-time initialization of
 163-164,168-169
 DBLE in-line function
 compile-time processing of 44

DCB
 (see data control block)

DCB skeleton section
 (see data control block skeleton section)

DDNAMES, new
 substituting for compiler data set DDNAMES 22

DECB
 (see data event control block)

DECB skeleton section
 (see data event control block skeleton section)

DECK option
 compiler output for 17

Declarative statements
 definition of 32-33
 intermediate text for 34

Default values
 for compiler options 20
 object-time insertion of into DCB skeletons 162
 system generation specification of 20

DEFINE FILE statement
 compile-time processing of 34,43,45,48,120-121,149
 object-time processing of 168,178

DELETE macro-instruction
 compile-time use of 24-25,31,48

Deleting load modules
 interface module 25
 object listing module 48
 performance module 25
 Phase 5 31
 source symbol module 25

Device manipulation
 object-time routines for 159,165

DFLOAT in-line function
 compile-time processing of 44

Diagnostic messages
 compiler informative 146
 error/warning 146-148
 generation of 51

Dictionary
 chaining in 126-127
 entry format 129
 freeing of main storage for 39
 index 127
 initialization of 30
 organization of 126
 use of 126

Dictionary pointers
 replacement of 41,115

Dimension entry
 in overflow table 132

Dimension information
 array displacement use of 123-125

Dimension part 123-125

Dimension section 123-125

DIMENSION statement
 compile-time processing of 33,149

Direct access I/O data management interface
 (see IHCDIOSE library subprogram)

Displacement
 base 37
 in arrays 123-125

Displacement tables
 (see routine displacement tables)

DO statement
 compile-time processing of 41,45,47,50,149

Double argument in-line functions
 compile-time processing of 44

DOUBLE PRECISION statement
 compile-time processing of 33-34,149

Double-precision constants
 assignment of relative addresses for 36-37
 dictionary chain for 126

DSRN
 (see data set reference number)

Dummy subscripted variables
 subscript optimization processing of 47

Dynamic text buffer chains
 (see text buffer chains)

Editor
 (see linkage editor)

Element
 in arrays 123-125

Embedded blanks
 elimination of in source statements 32

END card image
 generation of 51
 in object module 17

End DO adjective code
 insertion of into intermediate text 41,116

End mark
 in intermediate text 43,105

END statement
 compile-time processing of 51,149

End-of-FORMAT statement indicator
 object-time encounter of 153,155

End-of-logical record indicator
 object-time encounter of 156

End-of-object module indicator
 generation of 51
 in object module 17

End-of-phase requests
 compile-time processing of 21,23,56,58

End-of-phase routine
 in interface module 21,56
 in performance module 23,58

End-of-statement indicator
 (see end mark)

ENDFILE statement
 compile-time processing of 41,149
 object-time implementation of 159

Epilog table
 format of 142
 generation of 49
 use of 142

EQUIVALENCE class 38

EQUIVALENCE group 38

EQUIVALENCE intermediate text
 creation of 34
 deletion of 41
 format of 110-111

EQUIVALENCE root 38

EQUIVALENCE statement
 compile-time processing of 34,38,149
 generation of intermediate text for nonsyntactical errors encountered in 38

EQUIVALENCE table 140

Error intermediate text entry
 generation of 35,45,102-103
 Error messages
 compile-time generation of 51,146-148
 object-time generation of 159
 Error recovery procedure, I/O
 compile-time 56
 object-time 177
 Errors, source statement
 intermediate text for 35,45,102-103
 messages for 51,146-148
 ESD
 (see external symbol dictionary)
 ESD card images
 generation of 17,39,45
 in object module 17
 Executable statements
 generation of intermediate text for
 34-35,105
 Execute (EXEC) statement 9,20,22
 External functions
 (see library subprograms)
 External references
 generation of ESD and RLD card images
 for 39,45
 EXTERNAL statement
 compile-time processing of 33,149
 External symbol dictionary 13

 Files
 (see data sets)
 FIND statement
 compile-time processing of
 35,40,114,149
 object-time processing of
 151-152,169-170
 FLOAT in-line function
 compile-time processing of 44
 Flush requests
 definition of 23
 performance module processing of 23,57
 Forcing value
 definition of 42
 use of 42-43
 Forcing value table 141
 Format codes
 compile-time processing of 40,74
 object-time processing of 153-155
 FORMAT intermediate text
 format of 108
 generation of 34,105
 FORMAT statement
 compile-time processing of 34,40,74,149
 object-time processing of 153-155
 FREEMAIN macro-instruction
 compile-time use of 24-26
 object-time use of 171
 FREEPOOL macro-instruction
 object-time use of 165
 Function calls
 compile-time processing of 42-44,149
 FUNCTION statement
 compile-time processing of 34,49,149

 GETMAIN macro-instruction
 compile-time use of 25,29
 object-time use of 160,166

 GO TO statement
 compile-time processing of 41,47,50,149

 Heading
 printing of 29
 Hierarchy of operators 42,119-120,140

 IABS in-line function
 compile-time processing of 44
 IF statement
 compile-time processing of
 42,45-46,50,149
 IFIX in-line function
 compile-time processing of 44
 IHCCGOTO library subprogram 45
 IHCDIOSE library subprogram
 buffering scheme of 168
 communication with control program 168
 file definition section of 168
 file initialization section of 168-169
 functions of 165
 I/O error processing of 170,177
 overall logic of 178-179
 read section of 169-170
 table and blocks used in 165-168
 termination section 170-171
 write section 170
 IHCFCOME library subprogram
 closing section of 156
 format scan of 153-155
 functions of 151
 generation of calling sequences to 151
 I/O device manipulation routines of 159
 I/O list section of 153,155-156
 opening section of 152-153
 overall logic of 172
 read/write routines of 152-156
 utility routines of 159-160
 write-to-operator routines of 159
 IHCFIOSH library subprogram
 buffering scheme of 162
 closing section of 165
 communication with control program 162
 device manipulation section of 165
 functions of 160
 initialization section of 163-164
 I/O error processing of 165,177
 overall logic of 176
 processing for 1403 printer 163,165
 read section of 164
 table and blocks used in 160-162
 write section of 164-165
 IHCIBERR library subprogram
 functions of 171
 generation of calling sequences to 45
 overall logic of 181
 Images
 (see card images)
 Immediate DO parameter
 insertion of into intermediate text
 104,116
 Implied DOs
 checking of READ/WRITE statements for
 41,116

 Index
 in dictionary 30,127
 in overflow table 30,131

Index mapping table 142
 In-line functions
 compile-time processing of 44,119,150
 Input/output buffers
 (see buffers)
 Input/output data sets
 (see data sets)
 Instruction generation 48-49
 Integer constants
 assignment of relative addresses to
 36-37
 dictionary chain for 126
 INTEGER statement
 compile-time processing of 33,150
 Interface module
 components of 20-22
 functions of 9
 I/O buffers in 22
 linkages to 95-96
 loaded into main storage 20
 returns from 95-96
 Interface module routines 21-22,56
 Interlude 10E
 functions of 18
 Interlude 14
 functions of 19
 Interlude 15
 functions of 19
 Intermediate text
 adjective code field 105
 COMMON intermediate text 109
 definition of 105
 EQUIVALENCE intermediate text 110-111
 FORMAT intermediate text 108
 generation of 13,34-35
 mode/type field 107
 modification of 13,115-122
 pointer field 107
 READ/WRITE/FIND intermediate text
 111-114
 reordering of 41-43,119-121
 subscript intermediate text
 108-109,121-122
 Internal statement number
 compiler assigning of 101,107
 Internal text
 (see intermediate text)
 Internal text buffer chains
 (see text buffer chains)
 Interruptions, arithmetic
 object-time processing of 159-160
 I/O error recovery procedure
 compile-time 56
 object-time 177
 I/O list items
 object-time processing of 153-155
 I/O requests
 compile-time processing of
 9,21-23,56,57
 I/O routine
 in interface module 21,56
 in performance module 22-23,57
 I/O statements
 object-time implementation of 151-171
 ISN
 (see internal statement number)
 Job (JOB) statement 9

Keywords
 processing for if used as variables,
 arrays, or external names in source
 statements 32
 Library exponentiation subprograms
 assignment of registers for 44
 generation of ESD card images for 45
 Library subprograms
 exponentiation 45
 generation of ESD card images for 39,45
 IHCCGOTO 45
 IHCDIOSE 165-171,178-180
 IHCFCOME 151-160,172-175
 IHCFIOSH 160-165,176,180
 IHCIBERR 171,181
 LINK macro-instruction
 specifying substitute DDNAMES for
 compiler data sets via 22
 Linkage editor
 processing of the object module 13-14
 Linkages to interface module 95-96
 Linkages to performance module 97
 List items
 (see I/O list items)
 Literals
 assignment of relative addresses for 37
 generation of 47
 generation of TXT and RLD card images
 for 45
 LOAD macro-instruction
 compile-time use of 20,22,24,48
 LOAD option
 compiler output for 17
 Loading modules
 interface module 20
 object listing module 48
 performance module 22
 Phase 5 24
 source symbol module 22
 Location counter
 used in assigning relative addresses 37
 Machine-language instructions
 generation of 48-49
 Macro-instructions
 (see system macro-instructions)
 Main storage allocation
 for branch list tables 38-39,46
 for compiler 25-26,89-91
 Manipulation
 of compile-time data sets 21,23,98-100
 of object-time I/O devices 159,165
 of text buffer chains 22,28,57
 MAP option
 compiler output for 16
 Mask, program interrupt
 object-time setting of 159
 Meaningful blanks
 insertion into source statements 32
 Message address table 142-143
 Message length table 142
 Message text table 143
 Messages
 compile-time generation of 51,146-148
 object-time generation of 159

Mode/type field
 in dictionary 129
 in intermediate text 107
 Modification of compiler modules 21-22
 Modification of intermediate text
 for arithmetic expressions
 42-43,118-120
 for computed GO TO statements 117
 for DEFINE FILE statements 120-121
 for I/O statements 116
 for RETURN statements 117

 NOADJUST option 12,31-34
 NOLOAD option 46,51
 Nonexecutable statements
 (see declarative statements)

 Object listing facility
 enabling of 22
 Object listing module 19,48
 Object listing option
 compiler output for 16
 compiler processing for 22,36,48
 Object module
 components of 13,17
 generation of 13
 Object module instructions
 generation of 48-49
 Object module tables 144-145
 Object program
 (see object module)
 Object-time error messages
 generation of 159
 Object-time I/O errors
 processing of 165,170,177
 Offset
 computation of 123-125
 generation of literal for 47
 1-dimensional array
 array displacement computation of
 123-125
 overflow table entry for 132
 Opening
 of data control blocks at compile-time
 23-24,98-100
 of data control blocks at object-time
 163-164,168-169
 OPEN macro-instruction
 compile-time use of 23-24,98-100
 object-time use of 153,163,169
 Operands
 source statement scan of 102-103
 Operations table 141
 Operators
 source statement scan of 102-103
 Optimization, subscript 45-47
 Overflow table
 chaining in 131
 entry formats in 132-133
 index for 131
 initialization of 30
 organization of 131
 use of 132

 Parameter lists
 in DEFINE FILE statements 43
 generation of TXT card images for 45

 Patch facility
 enabling of 29
 Patch requests
 compile-time processing of 21-22,56
 Patch routine
 functions of 21-22
 in interface module 21-22,56
 Patch table 135
 PAUSE statement
 compile-time processing of 41,150
 object-time implementation of 159
 Performance module
 components of 22-23
 functions of 22
 linkages to 97
 loaded into main storage 22
 manipulating of text buffer chains
 22,28,57
 returns from 97
 Performance module routines 22-23,57-58
 Performance module tables 23,136-137
 Pointer field
 in intermediate text 107
 Preliminary scan
 of source statements 101
 PRFRM compilations
 blocking compiler output for 22-23,57
 constructing text buffer chains for
 26-28
 control flow for 11-12
 data control block manipulation for
 98,100
 dunlocking compiler input for 22-23,57
 linkages to performance module for 97
 main storage allocation for 26,91
 obtaining main storage for 25
 opening data control blocks for 24
 restart condition for 24,26
 Print control operation requests
 compile-time processing of 21,56

 READ macro-instruction
 compile-time use of 9,56,98-100
 object-time use of 153-156,163-164,169
 READ statement, direct access
 compile-time processing of
 35,40-41,43-44,47,111-114,150
 object-time implementation of
 151-156,168-170,179
 READ statement, sequential access
 compile-time processing of
 40-41,43-44,47,111-114,150
 object-time implementation of
 151-156,163-164,176
 Real constants
 assignment of relative addresses for
 36-37
 dictionary chain for 126
 REAL statement
 compile-time processing of 33,150
 Recovery procedure, I/O error
 compile-time 56
 object-time 177
 Redefinition of integer variables
 in subscript expressions 47
 Referenced statement numbers
 branch list table for 144

References, external
 generation of ESD card images for 39,45

Registers
 assignment of 44,118-119
 base 37,50

Relative addresses
 assignment of 36-37

Relocation dictionary 13

Removing entries from chains
 in dictionary 128

Reordering of intermediate text
 for arithmetic expressions
 42-43,119-120
 for computed GO TO statements 41,117
 for DEFINE FILE statements 43,120,121
 for READ/WRITE statements 41

Replacement of dictionary pointers 41,115

Reserved word
 dictionary section 30,126-127

Reserved word scan
 of source statements 102-103

Reset table
 format of 136
 in performance module 23
 use of 136

RESETABL
 (see reset table)

Resident tables
 BLDL table 23,29,136-137
 blocking table 23,29,136
 dictionary 126-130
 overflow table 130-133
 patch table 135
 reset table 23,136
 SEGMAL 134

Resident table construction
 BLDL table 29,136
 blocking table 29,136
 dictionary 30,34,36,126
 overflow table 30,34,36,131
 patch table 29,135
 SEGMAL 29,134

Restart condition
 definition of 24
 processing for 24,26

RETURN macro-instruction
 compile-time use of 9

RETURN statement
 compile-time processing of
 41,49,117,150

REWIND statement
 compile-time processing of 41,150
 object-time implementation 159,165

RLD
 (see relocation dictionary)

RLD card images
 generation of 17,39,45,48,51

Routine displacement tables
 format of 139
 use of 138

SAOP adjective code
 in intermediate text 122

Scan
 of source statements 101-104

SEGMAL
 construction of 29

format of 134
 use of 134

Sequential access I/O data management
 interface
 (see IHCFIOSH library subprogram)

SF
 (see statement functions)

Single-argument in-line functions
 compile-time processing of 44

SIZE option 23-26

SNGL in-line function
 compile-time processing of 44

Source module
 input to compiler 10-11

Source module listing 16,31,33-34

SOURCE option
 compiler output for 16

Source program
 (see source module)

Source statement adjustment 12,31-32

Source statement scan 101-104

Source symbol module 19,22,36

Source symbol table
 creation of 17,36

SPACE compilations
 control flow for 11
 data control block manipulation for
 98-99
 linkages to interface module for 95-96
 main storage allocation for 25,89-90
 obtaining main storage for 25-26
 opening data control blocks for 23-24

SPIE macro-instruction
 object-time use of 159

Statement function numbers
 assignment of 41

Statement functions
 compile-time processing of
 35,41,42,50,145,149

Statement number definitions
 compile-time processing of 50,144,149

Statement numbers
 overflow table entries for 34,36,133

Statement processing, compile-time
 BACKSPACE 41,149
 CALL 42,149
 COMMON 33-34,36-38,149
 CONTINUE 149
 DEFINE FILE 34,43,45,48,120-121,149
 DIMENSION 33,149
 direct access READ
 35,40-41,43-44,47,111-114,150
 direct access WRITE
 35,40-41,43-44,111-114,150
 DO 41,45,47,50,149
 DOUBLE PRECISION 33-34,149
 END 51,149
 ENDFILE 41,149
 EQUIVALENCE 34,38,110-111,149
 EXTERNAL 33,149
 FIND 35,40,114,149
 FORMAT 34,40,74,149
 FUNCTION 34,49,149
 GO TO 41,47,50,149
 IF 42,45-46,50,149
 INTEGER 33,150
 PAUSE 41,150
 REAL 33,150

RETURN 41,49,117,150
 REWIND 41,150
 sequential access READ
 40-41,43-44,47,111-114,150
 sequential access WRITE
 40-41,43-44,111-114,150
 STOP 41,150
 SUBROUTINE 34,49,150
 Statement processing, object-time
 BACKSPACE 159,165
 DEFINE FILE 168,178
 direct access READ 151-156,168-170,179
 direct access WRITE 151-156,168-170,179
 ENDFILE 159
 FIND 151-152,169-170
 FORMAT 153-155
 PAUSE 159
 REWIND 159,165
 sequential access READ
 151-156,163-164,176
 sequential access WRITE
 151-156,163-165,176
 STOP 159
 STOP statement
 compile-time processing of 41,150
 object-time implementation of 159
 Storage allocation
 (see main storage allocation)
 Storage allocation schematics
 for PRFRM compilations 91
 for SPACE compilations 89-90
 Storage map
 for assigned relative addresses 36
 for generated literals 46
 for implied external references 46
 for referenced statement numbers 48
 generation of 14
 Subprograms
 argument lists for 48
 epilog table for 49,142
 ESD card images for 39,45
 SUBROUTINE statement
 compile-time processing of 34,49,150
 Subscript expressions
 computation of 123-125
 optimization of 47-48
 overflow table entries for 132-133
 Subscript intermediate text
 108-109,121-122
 Subscript optimization
 statements subject to 46,82
 statements that affect 47,82
 Subscript table 141
 SYSIN
 input data set for compiler 10-11
 manipulation of 98-100
 opening of data control block for
 23,98-100
 SYSLIN
 manipulation of 98-100
 output data set for compiler 10-11,17
 SYSPRINT
 manipulation of 98-100
 opening of data control block for
 23,98-100
 output data set for compiler 10-11,17
 SYSPUNCH
 manipulation of 98-100
 output data set for compiler 10-11,17
 System macro-instructions
 used by compiler 9
 SYSUT1
 constructing text buffer chains for
 26-28
 manipulation of 98-100
 opening of data control block for
 23,98-100
 overlying of DCB block size for 21
 work data set for compiler 10-11,16-17
 SYSUT2
 constructing text buffer chains for
 26-28
 manipulation of 98-100
 opening of data control block for
 23,98-100
 overlying of DCB block size for 21
 work data set for compiler 10-11,16-17
 Tables
 allocation 139
 argument list 145
 base value 145
 BLDL 136-137
 blocking 136
 branch list 144
 dictionary 126-130
 epilog 142
 equivalence 140
 forcing value 140-141
 index mapping 142
 message address 142-143
 message length 142
 message text 143
 operations 141
 overflow 131-133
 patch 135
 reset 136
 resident 126-137
 routine displacement 138-139
 SEGMAL 134
 subscript 141
 unit assignment 161-162,167-168
 used by compiler 138-143
 used by object module 144-145
 Termination of compilation
 abnormal 25,56
 normal 24-25,56
 Termination of load module execution
 160,171,177
 Text
 (see intermediate text)
 Text buffer chains
 construction of for SYSUT1 and SYSUT2
 data sets 26-28
 format of 27
 manipulation of by performance module
 22,28,57
 use of 28
 3-dimensional array
 array displacement computation of
 123-125
 overflow table entry for 132
 Transient work area
 required for control program 25

2-dimensional array
array displacement computation of
123-125
overflow table entry for 132
TXT card image
generation of 17,39-40,45,48,51
in object module 17
Unit assignment table 161-162,167-168
Unit blocks
for direct access data sets 165-167
for sequential access data sets 160-161
Unit number
(see data set reference number)
Unit tables
(see unit blocks)
Variables
assignment of relative addresses for
36-37
dictionary entries for 34-36
Warning
definition of 103
Warning messages
generation of 51,103

Work data sets
for compiler 10-11,16-17
WRITE macro-instruction
compile-time use of 9,56,98-100
object-time use of 154-156,170
WRITE statement, direct access
compile-time processing of
35,40-41,43-44,111-114,150
object-time implementaion of
151-156,168-170,179
WRITE statement, sequential access
compile-time processing of
40-41,43-44,111-114,150
object-time implementation of
151-156,163-165,176
Write-to-operator routines 159
WTO macro-instruction
object-time use of 159
XCTL macro-instruction
compile-time use of
11-12,15,21,23-24,56,58
XOP adjective code
in intermediate text 122
Zero-addressing scheme
used in array displacement computation
123-125



International Business Machines Corporation
Data Processing Division
112 East Post Road, White Plains, N.Y. 10601
[USA Only]

IBM World Trade Corporation
821 United Nations Plaza, New York, New York 10017
[International]

READER'S COMMENTS

Title: IBM System/360 Operating System
FORTRAN IV (E)
Program Logic Manual

Form: Y28-6601-2

Is the material:	Yes	No
Easy to Read?	___	___
Well organized?	___	___
Complete?	___	___
Well illustrated?	___	___
Accurate?	___	___
Suitable for its intended audience?	___	___

How did you use this publication?

___ As an introduction to the subject ___ For additional knowledge
 Other _____

fold

Please check the items that describe your position:

___ Customer personnel	___ Operator	___ Sales Representative
___ IBM personnel	___ Programmer	___ Systems Engineer
___ Manager	___ Customer Engineer	___ Trainee
___ Systems Analyst	___ Instructor	Other _____

Please check specific criticism(s), give page number(s), and explain below:

___ Clarification on page(s)
 ___ Addition on page(s)
 ___ Deletion on page(s)
 ___ Error on page(s)

Explanation:

CUT ALONG LINE

fold

staple

staple

fold

fold

FIRST CLASS
 PERMIT NO. 81
 POUGHKEEPSIE, N.Y.

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL
 NO POSTAGE STAMP NECESSARY IF MAILED IN U.S.A.

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY
 IBM CORPORATION
 P.O. BOX 390
 POUGHKEEPSIE, N. Y. 12602

ATTN: PROGRAMMING SYSTEMS PUBLICATIONS
 DEPT. D58

Printed in U.S.A.
 Y28-6601-2

fold

fold



International Business Machines Corporation
 Data Processing Division
 112 East Post Road, White Plains, N.Y. 10601
 [USA Only]

IBM World Trade Corporation
 821 United Nations Plaza, New York, New York 10017
 [International]

staple